ARMA PACIS FVLCRA
Printed for T. Basset and H: Brome. 1668.

ARMA PACIS FVLCRA
Printed for T. Basset and H: Brome. 1668.

THE COMPLEAT BODY OF The Art Military.

In THREE BOOKS.

I. The Poſtures of the Pike and Musket, with their Conformities, and the Dignities of Ranks and Files: their manner of joyning to the compleating of a Body: their ſeveral Diſtances, Facings, Doublings, Counter-marches, Wheelings, and Firings.

II. Twelve Exerciſes, *viz.* Three with 24, three with 32, three with 64, and three with 144 Men.

III. The Drawing up and Exerciſing of Regiments after the manner of Private Companies; with the forming Brigades and Armies, and the placing of Cannon and Artillery according to the practice of ſeveral Nations.

ALSO,

The Duties of all *Souldiers* and *Officers*: Of *Military Watches*; and the ordering of *Regiments* and *Private Companies* to *Funeral-Occaſions*.

With the *Poſtures* of the *Musket* performed without the *Reſt*.

By *RICHARD ELTON*, Lieutenant-Col.

To which is added

A SUPPLEMENT

Comprehending theſe Particulars:

1. The *Duties* and *Qualifications* of all *Officers* belonging to an *Army*.
2. The *Enrolling*, *Arming* and *Exerciſing* of the CAVALRY both in *Poſture* and *Motion*.
3. The *Marching* of an Army both *Horſe* and *Foot*, with *Train* of *Artillery*, &c.
4. The *Deſigning* and laying out of the QUARTERS for the *Encamping* of an *Army* both *Horſe* and *Foot*, with the *Train* of *Artillery*, &c.
5. The manner of ſecuring the *Quarters* by *Intrenchments* and FORTIFICATION.
6. Some of the practick part of the Art of GUNNERY.

Formerly written by Capt. *Tho. Rudd*, chief Engineer to *K. Charls* the Firſt.

LONDON, Printed for *W. L.* and are to be ſold by *Henry Brome* at the Star in *Little-Britain*, and *Thomas Baſſet* under St. *Dunſtans* Church in *Fleet-ſtreet*. 1668.

BODLEIAN LIBRARY
15
JUN
1926
OXFORD

TO

THE RIGHT HONORABLE

Sir John Robinson,

Knight and Baronet,

PRESIDENT;

Sir Joseph Sheldon,

Knight,

VICE-PRESIDENT;

Colonel John Mew,

TREASURER;

And the rest of the COURT of

ASSISTANTS

Of the Ancient and Honorable

ARTILLERY-COMPANY

OF

LONDON.

TO

THE RIGHT HONORABLE

Sir John Robinſon,

Knight and Baronet,

PRESIDENT:

Sir Joſeph Sheldon,

Knight,

VICE-PRESIDENT:

Colonel John Mew,

TREASURER:

And the reſt of the COURT of

ASSISTANTS

Of the Artillery and Honorable

ARTILLERY-COMPANY

of

LONDON.

THE COMPLEAT BODY OF The Art Military.

The First Book.

CHAP. I.

A discourse of the Postures, *and handling of* Arms.

HE that will be a compleat Souldier, must first begin to learn the use of his *Arms*, laying that down in his thoughts for his first foundation. But this hath been the neglect of many in our times, who have strived to know high thoughts in the *Art Military*, before they can well perform their *Postures*. Therefore, my advice shall be unto all such that desire to thrive in this Art, that they will not *soar* too high: but first learn the *A, B, C* thereof, after which they may proceed by degrees to pronounce to the Souldier with boldness their proficiency therein. He therefore that with safety, ease, and delight desireth to handle his Arms, must set times apart frequently to practise himself therein. And here I cannot but much blame the Officers of our *Trained Bands in London*, of two great neglects: The first, in making men *File-leaders* either out of respect or favour they bear unto them, or else because one man hath a better *Buff-coat* than another: I speak not this to encourage any man to come slovenly habited when he shall march forth with his *Captain*, but rather advise all Souldiers to fit themselves with the best array they can; and could wish all the *Serjeants* in drawing up their *Files*, to pitch upon such Gentlemen to be *File-leaders*, as may take charge of his *File*, and shall be able, willing, and ready upon all convenient times, to instruct and teach his *File* in all their *Postures*, and neat handling of their *Arms*; which if carefully observed, they would reap the benefit of much ease to themselves and the private Souldiers: readiness in the performance of the *Postures*, would much redound to the honour of the Captain that shall lead them. But for the farther satisfaction of the ingenious Souldier that shall enquire what *Posture* is, I shall briefly resolve them thus:

Posture, as I conceive, is a *garbe* or *figure* that a man stands in, in the handling of his *Arms*; which he useth for the better grace and becoming of them.

There are several motions belonging to each *Posture*, which some call *Postures*, but they much deceive themselves, as shall appear clearly unto them (by the survey) as they shall be set down in order. And first, we will begin to set down the *Postures* of the *Pike*.

CHAP. II.

Several Reasons why the Pike *is the more honourable Arms.*

FIrst I shall begin to set down the *postures* of the *Pike*, before the *postures* of the *Musket*, for these reasons following, as conceiving, First, They are the more honourable *Arms*, in respect the *Colours* flying upon the head of them, and upon the drawing up of the Company there is the most propereſt place for the *Captain* to be, either upon a Stand or upon a March, provided he have ground sufficient to March them all abreſt. If upon a Stand the Captain shall have occasion to engage against an Enemy, thither his Officers may repair unto him upon the head of the *Pikes*,

there to receive directions. And if the Captain shall cause the *Serjeants* to draw off part, or all the *Muskettiers* from the Body of *Pikes* to fire against the enemy, the Gentlemen of the *Pikes* in the mean time stand undauntedly to undergo the cruel shot of the Cannon from the contrary part for to preserve their Colours, who are likewise a place of *Randezvous* for the *Muskettiers* to repair unto when they shall retreat from fight. Farther, it hath been the ambition of many Gentlemen, both in *Holland*, *France*, and in these our late unhappy Wars in *England*, to *trail Pikes* with several Commanders whom they shall think fit. And lastly, to conclude all, that the *Pike* is the more honourable *Arms*, it is so in respect of antiquity; for there hath been the use of the *Pike* and *Spear* many hundred years before there was any knowledge of the *Musket*, as in many Histories you shall find. And so for present I will conclude this discourse of the *Pike*, desiring the *Muskettiers* to have a favourable censure of me: for I intend not by it to perswade all Souldiers to the handling of the *Pike*, and none to be *Muskettiers*, for that cannot be; I should rather advise all *Captains* that have occasion to raise their Companies, to have two thirds of *Muskettiers*, and but one of *Pikes*: that is to say, if they should have 18 *Files*, to cause twelve of them to carry *Muskets*, and the other six *files Pikes*. And in my judgment they shall perform the better service unto any Nation where they shall be employ'd: and I shall farther desire the Souldiers (especially those that be of *low* stature) to handle and take delight in the use of the *Musket*; for it is an exceeding great honour to him so to handle his *Musket*, as that he doth it with ease, and in a comely manner; and he that shall become expert therein, I have often observed this commendation to follow him, by the report of others; Such a one is a good *Muskettier*, and an able Souldier: concluding thereby, he that will take the pains to be a good *Muskettier*, certainly cannot be idle, but hath gained something more to make him capable of such praise. To conclude, I shall desire the Gentlemen of the *Pikes* and the Gentlemen of the *Muskettiers* to go hand in hand in love like dear Brothers, and neither of them to envy each other; and in so doing, God will give a blessing to their undertakings. But now fearing I have dwelt too long upon this discourse of the *Arms*, I shall next proceed to set down, first the *postures* of the *Pike*, then the *postures* of the *Musket*, with all the words of *command* tending to their Motions; after collect them in order in a *brief* way, and then set forth unto you the equality of *number* that the one *Arms* hath with the other in the *postures*, as followeth.

CHAP. III.

The Postures of the Pike.

THE *Pike* lying on the ground, the first word of Command will be, Stand to your *Arms*.

Handle your *Pike* } to your { Open Order,
Raise up your *Pike* } { Close Order.

Charge with the *But*-end of the *Pike*, at the inside of the right foot; your *Pike* in the left hand, drawing your *Sword* over your left *arm*.

Charge to the { Front, Right, Left, Rear } { Flank } Order your *Pikes*, and put up your Swords.

This way of charging to the *Horse*, I have set down, as being practised sometimes amongst us in our private Meetings; but I conceive it to be of little use to receive a desperate charge of the *Horse*, for by these charges the Souldiers are in so lame and weak a *posture*, that the *Horse* cannot choose if they come on with a full *carier*, but beat the *Pikes* and *Pike-men* down to the ground. Therefore in my opinion, the best way of opposing the *Horse-charge*, is that which we learned of our ever-honoured *Captain*, *Major Henry Tilier*, in the *Military Gardens*; which was, *Pike* closing to the midst, to their closest *Order*, insomuch that there was not above half a foot *interval* of ground between *File* and *File*, the *Pikes Porting*, and after closing their *Ranks* forwards so close, that they locked themselves one within another, and then

charged on. Which in my judgment is so secure a way from *routing*, that it is impossible for any Body of *Horse* to enter therein: and farther, to my best remembrance, I never could meet with any Souldier that hath been abroad upon any service, that ever saw any charging of the *Pikes* at the *Foot*; therefore I will further proceed.

From Order { Advance / Shoulder / Port / Comport / Cheek / Trail } Your Pike. { Order as you were.

From your Order charge to the { Front, / Right, / Left, / Reer. } Order as you were.

Advance your Pike. { Shoulder / Port / Comport / Cheek / Trail } Your Pike. { Advance as you were.

From your Advance charge to the { Front, / Right, / Left, / Reer, } Advance as you were.

Shoulder your Pike. { Port / Comport / Cheek / Trail } Your Pike. { Shoulder as you were.

From the Shoulder charge to the { Front, / Right, / Left, / Reer, } Shoulder as you were.

Port your Pikes, / Comport your Pikes, { Cheek / Trail } your pikes { Comp. as you were.

From the Comport charge to the { Front, / Right. / Left, / Reer, } comport as you were.

Cheek your Pikes, { Trail your Pikes, } Cheek as you were.

From the Cheek charge to the { Front, / Right, / Left: / Reer, } Cheek as you were.

Trail your Pikes, from your Trail charge to the { Front, / Right, / Left, / Reer, } Trail as you were.

{ Order your Pikes, / Lay down your Pikes. }

Here is to be observed by this *Method* an endeavouring to perform all the *postures* of the *Pike*, from each particular *posture*, only shortning it by degrees, leaving out what was before commanded until we come unto the *Trial*. Yet notwithstanding I spared not the charges, but have shewn them from every *posture*, in their due order. Next followeth the *postures* of the *Musket*, wherein, in answerableness to the *Pike*, I shall lay them down in full, and afterwards contract them in a shorter way.

CHAP. IV.

The Postures *of the* Musket.

THE *Musket* lying on the ground, the first word of Command will be, as to the *Pike*.

Stand to your *Arms*, / Take up your *Bandiliers*, / Put on your *Bandiliers*, { Take up your *Rest*, / Put the string of your Rest about your left wrist,

Take up your *Match*, / Place your *Match*, { Take up your *Musket*, / *Rest* your *Musket*.

Here the Souldier may perform the *saluting posture*, if he shall find any occasion so to do, for the honouring of a friend, or any Gentleman of worth.

{ Poyse your Musket, / Shoulder your Musket,

{ Un-shoulder your *Musket* and *Poyse*, / Joyn your *Rest* to the outside of your *Musket*,

{ Open / Cleer / Prime / Shut } your pan.

{ Cast off your loose *corns*, / Blow off your loose *corns*, and bring about your *Musket* to the left side.

{ *Trail* your *Rest*, / *Ballance* your *Musket* in your *left hand*.

{ Find out your *charge*, / Open your *charge*, / Charge with *powder*,

Draw forth your *Scouring-stick*,
Turn and shorten him to an *Inch*,
Charge with *Buller*,
Put your *scouring-stick* into your *muket*
Ram home your *charge*,
With-draw your *scouring-stick*,
Turn, and shorten him to a *handful*,
Return your *scouring-stick*,
Bring forward your *Muket* and *Rest*,
Poise your *Muket* & recover your *Rest*,
Joyn your *Rest* to the outside of your *Muket*,
Draw forth your *Match*,
Blow your *Coal*,
Cock / Fit — Your *Match*,
Guard your *Pan*,
Blow the *ashes* from your *Coal*,
Open your *Pan*,
Present upon your *Rest*,
Give fire breast-high,

Dismount your *Muket*, joyning the *Rest* to the outside of your *Muket*.
Un-cock and return your *Match*,
Cleer / Shut — Your *Pan*,
Poise / *Rest* — Your *Muket*,
Take your *Muket* off the *Rest*, and set the *Butt*-end to the ground.
Lay down your *Muket*,
Lay down your *Match*,
Take your *Rest* into your right *hand*, cleering the string from your left *wrist*,
Lay down your *Rest*,
Take off / Lay down — Your *Bandiliers*.

Here endeth the *postures* of the *Muket*, from the taking of them up from the ground, to make ready, and the proceeding in them to the laying of them down again. Now if the Souldier will take his *Rest* into his right hand, for to be a support and help to him in his *march*, he must observe the following words of command.

The Muket being shouldered, you may proceed in these words of command, to recover the Rest into the right hand.

Lay your right hand upon the *Butt*-end of your *muket*,
Lay your left arm over your *muket*,
Shift your *match* between the fingers of your right hand,
Take your *Rest* into your right hand, cleering the string from your left *wrist*,
Return your *match*, and take your *Rest* into your right hand, 'twill cause you to be in a fit capacity for to march.

CHAP. V.

The Postures *and* Charges *of the* Pike, *to be performed in a shorter way, all things acted in order, and nothing done twice.*

THE *Pike* lying on the ground, the first word of Command will be,

Stand to your *Arms*,
Handle your *Arms*,
Raise up your *Pikes* to your — Open Order / Order / Close Order,
From your close Order charge to the Horse, — Front / Right / Left / Rear — Recover your *Pikes*, and put up your *Swords*,
Advance / Port your *Pikes*, — Charge to the Front.
Shoulder your *Pikes*, — *Charge* to the right,
Comport your *Pikes*, — *Charge* to the left,
Cheeke / Trail your *Pikes*, — *Charge* to the Reer.

After

After lay the narrow end of the *Pike* to the ground, face about to the left to your first Front, and move forward with the *butt-end* of your *Pike* on your right side in your *Funeral posture*. After face about to the right, raise up your *Pike*, face then again to your first Front, you may lay down the *Pike* to the ground, and march from your *arms*, having ended all the *postures* & *charges* in their due course. And here Fellow-Souldier, whoever thou art, thou maist perceive that there are no more then *eight Postures* of the *Pike*, and *four Charges*, that is to say, to the *Front*, *Rear*, and *both Flanks*. There are some would fain have another *posture* added to these, which they call the *Lazie posture*, which sometimes I have perceived upon a *Stand*, that then the *Pike-man* lets *slip* his *Pike* from the *shoulder*, until the *butt-end* rest upon the ground; then laying his right arm over it, he stands in an ill favour'd *lazie way*. Such *postures* as these are not fit to be ranged among the former, but rather to be condemned, in regard the Souldier will be apt enough to find out such *postures* as these of himself, if not prevented by the discretion of the careful Officers; for upon a *Stand*, the Souldiers properest *posture* is to *Order* his *Pike*. And thus much in *brief* concerning the *postures* of the *Pike*.

CHAP. VI.

The Postures *of the* Musket *collected in a* brief *way.*

ACcording to my former promise, I shall endeavour to give the best satisfaction I can to the *Musketiers*, as well as to the *Pikes*, that there is an answerableness of *number* in the proper *postures* of the *Musket* to them of the *Pike*: and they are *eight* (as I conceive) and may be proceeded on in order, from the taking up, to the laying down of the *Musket*, and nothing acted twice: The words of Command for the *postures* followeth,

{Stand to your *Arms*,
{Handle your *Arms*.

Now you are to take notice, that in taking up the *Bandiliers*, putting them on, taking up the *Rest*, putting the *string* about the *left wrist*, the taking up of the *match*, placing of it, the taking up of the *musket*; these, or the like, are no *postures*, but *motions* to the first *posture*. Therefore I will proceed upon them all in order as they lie, leaving out the words of command tending to the Motions.

1 Order your *musket*,
2 Rest your *musket*,
3 Poyse your *musket*,
4 Shoulder your *musket*,
5 Ballance your *musket* and *Rest* on the right side, with the *barrel* upwards,
6 *Trail* your *Rest*, and *ballance* your *musket* on the left side with the *barrel* downwards,
7 Recover your *musket*, and perform your *Sentinel-posture*.
8 From this perform your *funeral-posture*.

This being ended, a man may recover his *musket* and *rest*, that knows how to perform this last *posture*, without bringing him again upon the *Rest*; and may lay down his *Arms* again, observing the former Rule, where the *postures* of the *musket* are set down at large.

CHAP. VII.

There is also a conformity of Posture *with the* Musket *to those of the* Pike, *and Words of Command to be given, as may in many things be received by both* Arms.

THe *musket* and *pike* lying on the ground, these words of Command may properly be imployed to both; That is to say,

{Stand to your *Arms*,
{Handle your *Armes*.

The *butt-end* of the *musket* standing, or resting on the ground, at the outside of right foot, is conformable to the *Pike ordered*.

The *musket poysed*; to the *pike advanced*.
The *musket shouldered*; to the *Pike shouldered*.
The *musket porting*; to the *pike porting*.
The *musket reversed*; (as in the *funeral-posture*) to the *Pike trailing*.
The *musket rested*, to the *pike checked*; which is his proper *sentinel-posture*.
The *musket presented*; to the *pike charged*.

As for the *motions* of *posture*, which conduce to the *lading* and *priming* of the *musket*;

musket, as to *east about*, *trail*, *recover*, and the like; they are all included in that general word of Command, properly to the *musketiers* belonging, which is to *make ready*.

Now, methinks, I hear some ingenious Souldier begin to ask me, What are the use of these *postures* so fully laid down by you? To whom I shall be so courteous, as to satisfie them, according to my former Method, beginning with the *Pike*, as followeth.

CHAP. VIII.

The use of the Postures *of the* Pike.

The use of Ordering the Pike. THe *Pike* being ordered is the proper *posture* of a Souldier upon a *stand*, which he ought ever to mind upon any such occasion, so to make use of it. And I have likewise seen in many places, in the day-time, this *posture* to be used by the Souldier standing *sentinel*.

The use of Advancing the Pike. The *Pike advanced*, is useful for the Souldier upon a *Troop*, when they are to *march* swiftly, either for the relieving of some *Court of Guard*, or to repair to their place of *Randezvous*, or upon some sudden approaching to an Enemy to make a *Charge*; for then he will be in a fit capacity to *clap* down quickly his *pike* upon the breast of the Enemy. It is likewise very useful in the time of exercise to the *half-files* and *bringers up*, upon any *doubling* to the Front, for then they are always to be *advanced* in respect of a longer *march* in their *doublings*, then those that *double ranks* and *files*; but having *doubled*, they must always conform in *posture* to the part *doubled*.

The use of Porting. The use of *Porting* was invented for the ease of the *rear half-files*, upon a *charge*; for the *front half-files* are only for to *charge*; the *rear half-files* in the mean time are to *port*. It is likewise very useful at such times when the souldiers are marching through a *gate* or *sally-port*, from whence I conceive it doth derive its name *porting*.

The use of Shouldering. The use of *shouldering* the *pike* is only propereſt upon the *march*, & in some kind very useful upon a *stand* in time of Fight, provided they are at convenient *distance* from the Enemy. For it much preserveth the *pikes* and *pike-men* from the danger of the *shot*, the *bullets* then *gliding* off from their *Arms*; which if they stood at such times, either *ordered*, or *advanced*, the *bullets* would make such a *clattering* amongst the *Pikes*, that what with breaking of them, and the *shivers* flying from them, may much endanger the souldiers which carry them.

The use of Comporting. The *comporting* of the *Pike* is only useful to the souldier marching up a *hill*; for if then he should be *shouldered*, the *butt-end* of the *Pike* would always be touching of the *ground*, to hinder him in his *march*, and much endanger his fellow-souldiers that shall come after him. Neither can he *march advanced*; for if there should be any *wind*, it would be ready to blow him down. Therefore as above, that which is most commodious for the souldiers marching up a *hill*, is to *comport his pike*.

The use of Trailing. The *Trailing of the Pike* is seldom used, but when the souldier shall *march* straight forward through a *Wood*, the *File-leader* before he enters in, *trails* his *pike*, and consequently all the rest in his *file*: then *stooping down*, they take up the *butt-end* of their *leaders pikes*, which they may easily gripe with their own in their right hands, and after *march* forward through the *busling leaves* in a straight *line*, every *file* single by himself, but as neer each other as possible they can *march*, for more security sake; that when they are clear, they may find each other, and be in a condition to *rally* up again, as occasion shall require. The *trailing* of the *Pike* may also be of excellent use in a *Trench*, that at such time when they shall have intelligence where the Enemy are preparing to make a *breach*, they may then move forwards unto that place undiscovered, and may defend the same.

The use of Checking The *checking of the Pike* is the proper *sentinel-posture*, and then to be used.

CHAP. IX.

The use of the Postures *of the* Musket.

I Conceive it will not be material to go over every *posture* of the *musket*, to describe the use of them, in respect the greater part of them have conformity to the *Pike*. Those that shall remain, and of the chiefest consequence, I shall not be wanting to satisfie the souldier in.

The

The *ballancing* the *musket*, and *rest*, on the right side, with the *barrel* upward, is one of the chiefest *postures* belonging to the *musket*; from thence he begins to make ready, as to *open*, *clear*, and *prime* the *pan*, all being *motions* to this *posture*.

The use of ballancing the Musket on the right side.

To *traile* the *rest*, and *ballance* the *musket* on the left side with the *barrel* downward, is a *posture* likewise of as great consequence; for there are several *motions* belonging also to this *posture*, as to find out the *charge*, to *open it*, to *charge with powder*, to take *bullet* out of the *bag* and to *charge* with *bullet*; with divers other *motions* before you can recover your *musket* and *rest* again.

The use of ballancing the Musket on the left side.

How a Muskettier *shall perform the* Sentinel-posture.

THe *Sentinel-posture* is to be performed after this manner; first, the *musket* is to be laded with powder and bullet; afterwards he is to *cock his match*, and to stand with his *pan* guarded, his *musket* being upon his *rest*, until such time he is relieved: but as concerning him, I shall more fully set forth his duty, treating upon the duty of the *Sentinel*.

CHAP. X.

The manner and way to do the Funeral-posture.

NExt followeth to shew how to do the *Funeral-posture*: the properest and the best way to begin this *posture*, is when the *musket* is *rested*, and is to be performed after this manner: You must first *slip* up your *musket* upon the *rest*, so high, until the *fork* of the *rest* be within a handful of the *cock*; after you must bring your right hand under the *barrel* of the *musket*, close to the *fork* of the *rest*, and then lift him off, and after cast your Rest backward, *trailing* him on the left side, and bring your Musket under your left arm, with the *barrel* downwards, bearing the *butt-end* upward, with your two fore-fingers and your thumb, holding off the *pan*, and that with the left hand. Now if you begin to be weary in the *march*, by reason of the weight of the *musket*, you may to ease your self, bring your right hand backward, and there take hold of the *musket*, keeping still your left hand in its first place, until you shall reduce him to the Rest again.

The reducement of the Musket *from the* Funeral-posture.

FIrst, raise up your Musket a little with your two fingers and thumbs of the left hand, as you formerly held him; then turn the Musket until you perceive the *barrel* to be upward; after lay your right hand upon the *barrel*, much about the *lazie pin*; and then taking him, bring him up forward on the out-side of the Rest: recover your Rest, fall back with the right legge; you may with ease bring your Musket again upon the Rest, as at first. This *posture* being so seldome used, makes the Souldier much to seek in performance of the same; but he that takes pleasure in handling of the Musket, and shall exercise himself therein, cannot chuse but find it very easie, and much delightful to him: And I know no *posture* more becoming a Muskettier then this, if it be neat, and well performed by him. And here I shall conclude, and end discoursing of the *postures*.

CHAP. XI.

The Souldiers desire to know every particular place of Dignity, *as they stand in* Rank *and* File.

THe Souldier now having obtained some pretty knowledge, skill, and ready aptness in the managing and performing the *postures*, begins to look about himself what next is needful for to fasten upon, to make a further progress in this Art; and straight he meets with some that whispers to him, That it were a gallant thing to know the *Dignity* of a *File* true and rightly stated: To which he answers, But where can it be found? the opinions of souldiers are so various and differing therein, that none knows where for to attain it. My Captains eye (saith he) is upon me, because I do the *postures* well, which causeth the Serjeants to make me a *File-leader*, and that I know to be the chiefest and first place of Honour in the File; the second place to be the *bringer-up*; the third, the *half-file-leader*; the fourth, the *bringer-up* of the *Front half-files*. Thus far, no souldier of any known judgment can deny: but now a-dayes our Files being drawn up six deep, makes me altoge-

ther

ther ignorant of the honour of the reſt; neither know I the Dignity of a File eight or ten deep, which ſtill in ſome places they do retain, drawing them up ſo deep. If my ambition were but now fully ſatisfied herein, I ſhould in time come for to know the Dignity of the Captains, as they are drawn up all in a Regiment; by which Rule I am informed they walk. And in my judgment, there cannot be a truer ſtating the Dignity of a Rank and File, then that which ſhall conform to the Dignities of the Captains, as they are drawn up abreſt all in a Regiment. Now for as much as many Regiments conſiſt of ſeveral numbers of Captains, and Companies in them; as ſome ſix Companies, others eight; ſome greater, as ten, and twelve Companies: It is expedient therefore, not only for my ſelf, but for every ſouldier that will be truly knowing, to be reſolved herein concerning thoſe ſeveral numbers; and as occaſion ſhall alter to any other, they may inform themſelves by theſe how to fit their purpoſe. And therefore not to keep the apt and forward ſouldier longer in ſuſpence, but that he may proceed, I ſhall amongſt the reſt, declare my thoughts therein, and ſet it forth unto their view, ever hoping from my fellow-ſouldiers a favourable cenſure of my good meaning to them and to my Country, for to imploy that little talent which lately my endeavours have obtained to do them ſervice: And ſhall forthwith ſet down unto them four Tables of Dignity, both of *Ranks* and *Files*, which ſhall be firſt of twelve abreſt, and twelve deep. Secondly, ten abreſt, and ten deep. Thirdly, eight abreſt, and eight deep. And laſtly, ſix abreſt, and ſix deep: wherein every ingenious ſouldier ſhall eaſily know his particular place of Honour and Dignity, both in *Rank* and *File*, wherein he ſtands.

The places of Dignity 12 *in Rank.*

2	11	5	8	10	3	4	9	6	7	12	1	
The places of Dignity 10 *in Rank.*											12	
2	9	5	8	3	4	7	6	10	1		7	
The places of dignity 8 *in Rank.*								10	6		6	
2	5	8	3	4	7	6	1	6	7		9	
Places of dign. 6 *in Rank.*							6	7	4		4	
2	5	3	4	6	1	6	4	3	8		3	
					6	4	3	8	5		10	
					4	3	8	5	9		8	
					3	8	5	9	2		5	
					5	5	9	2			11	
					2	2	2				2	

Places of Dignity 6 deep. *The places of dignity 8 deep.* *The places of dignity 10 deep.* *The places of Dignity 12 deep.*

The Table being thus ſet forth unto the ſouldiers view, as is before expreſt, methinks I hear ſome ſay, Sir, we like the drawing forth, and the manner of your Table very well; we ſee clearly there the particular places how every man ſtands in his Dignity both in Rank and File, according to your ſeveral Figures; but we beſeech you, Sir, be ſo favourable as to make us underſtand it by a farther demonſtration of the ſame, and be pleaſed out of your courteous nature to explain your ſelf a little farther therein; and to afford us ſome reaſons to confirm and back the ſame, that it may clearly appear to our judgments the truth thereof, and that we may ſit down and reſt our ſelves with fulleſt ſatisfaction therein. To anſwer, methinks it ſhould be ſtrange to make denial here to the modeſt deſire of any ingenious ſouldier, and clear repugnant to my wonted cuſtome; and therefore without any more delay, I ſhall farther let them know

CHAP. XII.

Reaſons for the places of Dignity both in Rank *and* File, *for the firſt four in a File eight deep.*

THat which gives moſt life for the true explaining of the former Table is, to ſhew the ſeveral places of Honour and Dignity of the Captains, how they are drawn up abreſt all in a Regiment. Be pleaſed therefore to go along with me, and you ſhall underſtand that the *Colonel* hath the firſt place of honour, as being Commander in chief, whoſe Company ſtands upon the right, which makes the figure (1). The ſecond place of honour in the Regiment is the *Lieutenant-Colonel*, whoſe Company is drawn up upon the left, as being the outmoſt there, and is deſcribed

ſcribed by the figure (2). The third place of honour is the *Majors* Company, which is drawn up upon the right of the left *half Ranks*, whoſe place is deſcribed by the figure (3). The fourth place of honour is the eldeſt *Captains* Company, which is drawn up upon the left of the right *half Ranks*, and is ſet forth by the figure (4). And now we have proceeded thus far, we will make *Alt*, and begin to examine whether we have rightly hitherto proceeded, or no; therefore, for the more clearing and underſtanding herein, you muſt take notice, it is the diſcretion of every knowing Commander, ſo to aim and ſtate his Battail, as that he makes his Front equivalent in worth, ſtrength, and dignity to that of the Reer, and with equal proportion of numbers; and in like manner ſo to order his right *half Ranks*, as that they may carry an equal ballance in worth, number and dignity with the left *half Ranks*. Now therefore to begin to make ſome trial or experiment herein, by examining the firſt worth with the fourth, and that will make the number (5) and then put to trial the ſecond worth and third, and you ſhall eaſily diſcern it to carry the ſame proportion of number. So that it may appear cleerly in the judgment of any diſcreet ſouldier a true and equal proportion, the Front with the Reer, the right *half Ranks* ſutable to the left *half Ranks*, and that both in number, honour, and dignity.

Having thus far entred into the diſcourſe, it remains to deſcribe and ſhew the reaſons of the other four of their places and dignity as they ſtand.

CHAP. XIII.

Reaſons of the places of the ſecond four, as they ſtand in Rank *and* File, *the* File *being eight deep.*

NOw for the further reſolution herein, there is to be taken notice of, That the general drawing up of Regiments, when they conſiſt of ſo few Companies as 8, 6, or 7, is commonly in two grand Diviſions, that is to ſay, two bodies or two ſtands of *Pikes* which are flanked with *Muskettiers*. Therefore you may obſerve, the diſcretion of the *Major*, who commonly is appointed to draw up the Regiments, doth ſo order the places of the *Captains*, that they may aptly fall into their due places of honour, upon a *ſtand* and upon a *march*; and doth ſo order their dignities as before is expreſt, as to make both the Front, Reer, right and left *half Ranks* equal in number, ſtrength, and dignity. And therefore he draws up the third and fourth Captain between the *Colonels* Company and the eldeſt *Captain*, which makes their number (13) and in like manner he draws the ſecond *Captain* and the youngeſt *Captain* between the *Lieutenant-Colonels* Company and the *Majors*, whoſe number likewiſe carries equal proportion to be (13). Now if you pleaſe to examine the whole number of the right *half Ranks*, and that makes (18) make trial likewiſe of the left *half Ranks*, in caſting up of his accompt, and you ſhall find the ſame proportion of number as is clearly ſet forth within the Table, both of *Ranks* and *Files*; for as the honour of every ſouldier ſtands in the *Rank*, you will find the ſame to ſtand ſo in the *File*.

CHAP. XIV.

Other Reaſons to cleer it further to the Souldier.

TO give you farther ſatisfaction, and Reaſons for the placing of the ſecond four, in reſpect it is contrary to the Rule and Judgment of ſome Souldiers, therefore farther obſerve with me this, When a Regiment is drawn up in the true Order of a Regimental way, there, is as before expreſſed, two bodies, or *ſtands* of *Pikes*, flanked with *Muskettiers*; and it is the Office of every *Major* to give forth in writing notes of paper unto every *Captain*, and *Lieutenant*, where their place ſhall be upon a *Stand*, and where upon a *March*, that he may with more readineſs know where to lead, and where to fall in, or to bring up, as occaſion ſhall require. Now, for as much that it hath been the practice here in *England*, and in moſt Countries alſo beſides, as I have been informed by very able knowing ſouldiers, that the firſt place of honour that is appointed out unto the Captains, is firſt unto the eldeſt, who always leads the Colonels Colours, or firſt grand Diviſion of *Pikes*, which is the greateſt honour that can be appointed out unto the Captains, and therefore moſt propereſt and due to him as being eldeſt: If ſo, as

that it is then generally granted, that the leading of the Colonels Colours, or the firſt *body* or *ſtand* of *Pikes* in the Colonels grand Diviſion, is the firſt and chiefeſt place of honour amongſt the Captains; why then, certainly, I muſt conclude the ſecond Captain, which carries the number (5) would be infinitely wronged and injured, if he were denied, and not brought into the left *half Ranks*, for there he aptly ſtands to fall in, to lead the Lieutenant-Colonels Colours, or the ſecond *body* or *ſtand* of *Pikes*, which is the ſecond place of honour. Now having reſolved, that it is cleerly the due and right for the ſecond Captains place, to lead the ſecond body of *Pikes*; we muſt then of neceſſity bring in the youngeſt Captain into the left *half Ranks* likewiſe, who carries the number (8) and that will make up an equal proportion, as before expreſt, to the third and fourth *Captains*, carrying with them the figures (6 and 7) which are drawn up in the right *half rank*.

CHAP. XV.

Reaſons given for the laſt Table of every particular Place of Honour and Dignity, as they ſtand.

I Conceive what formerly hath been expreſt of the middle Table, may give full reſolution of the particular places of Honour and Dignity as they ſtand both in *Rank* and *File*. It further now remains to ſpeak ſomewhat of the reſt, and therefore I ſhall go down-ward, cleering ſtill the firſt four places of honour; which being rightly underſtood, the reſt will naturally fall into the capacity of any ingenious ſouldier. Therefore further pray obſerve with me this again in examining of the ſutableneſs and equal proportion of worth and number of the firſt and fourth worth, carrying unto that of the ſecond and third. And thus far you may reſt, and ſatisfie your ſelf therein. We have therefore now no more to place and ſettle, but the fifth and ſixth worth, and then our work in this Table will be quickly finiſhed. Therefore of neceſſity, as formerly expreſſed, we muſt bring in the fifth worth into the left *half Ranks*, as being the ſecond Captain, whoſe proper place, as I ſaid before, is to lead the Lieutenant-Colonels Colours, or the ſecond *body* or *ſtand* of *Pikes*. He being there thus fixed, we have no more to place but the ſixth worth, which is the laſt, or youngeſt Captain; and we have no other place to bring him in, but between the firſt and fourth worth; or if you will have it more cleer, between the *Colonel* and eldeſt *Captain*. But, here by the way, I am like to meet with ſome Objector that will ſay, Sir, What's become of your equal proportion here? Your right *half Ranks*, with your left, as you have ſo formerly ſtated them; your right *half Ranks* carrieth or exceedeth one more in number then your left *half Ranks* doth; and where we find the greater number, we muſt conclude the leſſer dignity; and if ſo, Why do you not rather contrive it on the left, then upon the right? To which I anſwer, firſt, That in raiſing up of Companies into a Regiment, thoſe that are the *Field*-Officers by right ſhould have the moſt men, and greater Companies, then the private Captains have; therefore if you will obſerve in the ſtating of this Dignity of a Rank ſix abreſt, you will find in the left half Rank two *Field*-Officers, whoſe Companies are the greater then any *private* Captains; certainly, they muſt needs countervail with any number of men with the right half Ranks; for although the *Colonels* Company is, or ought ever to be the greateſt, yet there is no more *Field*-Officers, but himſelf in his Diviſion. And again, ſecondly, where there cannot be an equal dividing of number (as here you will find it of ſix abreſt, or ſix deep) but that there will fall out ſome odd, either on the right half Ranks, or on the left; and likewiſe the ſame either in the Front half files, or Reer half files, as by example in the trial you will eaſily find, by caſting up the whole number as they ſtand abreſt, and they will fall out to be (21) divide this number into two parts, and you cannot but muſt caſt the odd either on the right or on the left: Therefore to conclude, ſince that there is a great poſſibility that there will be an equality of number of men in the left half Ranks ſutable to that of the right, where there ſhall fall out an odd number, that you cannot caſt it into the left half Ranks, but that you muſt remove the fifth worth; in this extremity I ſay you may not do it,

but

but rather place it on the right. For the *Major* having no certain place to *march* in a *Regiment*, it is the proper place of the *ſecond Captain* to walk along with the *Lieutenant-Colonel*, taking his due place of honour in his Diviſion, as the *firſt* ſhall do by marching with his *Colonel*; And thus much ſhall ſuffice to be ſpoken of the laſt Table.

CHAP. XVI.

Reaſons likewiſe to be given for the Table 12 *abreſt, and* 12 *deep.*

FOr as much as formerly hath been ſpoken, That it is the diſcretion of every Commander ſo to order his men, as to make an equal *ballance* throughout the battel, that his *Front* carry with it an equal proportion of worth, number, and dignity with that of the *Reer*; and likewiſe ſo to ſteer and order his right half *rank*, or right *flank*, ſutable to that of the *left*: The next way then to receive further ſatisfaction herein, is by an examination thereof as it lies, and is ſet open to view.

2: 11:	5: 8:	10: 3:		4: 9:	6: 7:	12: 1:
39.				39.		

Compare now the *worth* & *dignity* of the *right* half Ranks, & you ſhall quickly perceive them to carry a like proportion of *number* and *worth* with the *left*. To make it a little more clear unto thoſe that ſhall deſire to be more ſatisfied herein, you may take notice, and obſerve a true qualification throughout the whole *rank*. As firſt, begin with the *Colonel*, who is the chiefeſt man of honour in the *Regiment*; and next to him is placed the *ninth* or youngeſt *Captain*, to qualifie his *dignity*, and makes his *number* (13). The *Lieutenant-Colonel* being the *ſecond* man of honour, hath placed to him the *eighth*, which qualifies him in like manner to the *Colonel*, and makes his *number* (13). Next come we to the *Major*, and next to him is placed the *ſeventh* Captain, which makes him ſutable with the reſt in his *figure* and qualification, and to bear the *number* (13). After we are to ſpeak of the *eldeſt* Captain, who hath the *ſixth* Captain joyned unto him, and makes his *number* (13). And ſo comparing all the reſt, dividing them by two's, they will ſtand as followeth.

2: 11:	5: 8:	10: 3:	4: 9:	6: 7:	12: 1:
13	13	13	13	13	13
39			39		

Thus much, I conceive, may give a right underſtanding to any coming-on Souldier of the true and right ſtating of a *Rank* twelve abreſt, being a thing very needful for to know, in reſpect that there are many Regiments which do conſiſt of twelve Companies; and when in courſe, as in the ſequel of this Book, when as I ſhall ſhew the manner of drawing up of twelve Companies; there will a little more light appear unto them to their farther knowledge of the ſame. But thus much for the preſent, as concerning a *Rank* twelve abreſt: And now I ſhall come to ſpeak or to touch a little of a *Rank* ten abreſt, and a *File* ten deep.

CHAP. XVII.

Brief reaſons to be given of the Dignity of places of a Rank *ten abreſt, and of a* File *ten deep.*

WHat hath been formerly declared concerning a *Rank* twelve abreſt, as before ſhewed, by every particular place of honour, as they ſtand with the reaſons for the ſame; it may give a cleer underſtanding by the ſame rule to find the Dignity of places ten abreſt. For walking by the ſame way and rule of examination, and you will find them to carry by dividing by two's, being added to the four firſt places of honour, and they will carry ſutable proportions, as underneath is ſet forth.

2: 9:	5:	8: 3:		4: 7:	6:	10: 1:
11:		11:		11:		11.
27:			28:			

But for as much that in this *Range* of ten abreſt, there will fall out ſome odd; we muſt then of neceſſity-ſake place it upon the *right*, and not on the *left*, for the reaſons as formerly for a *File* ſix deep declared. I might now here conclude with other flouriſhing Tables, which might be little proficable unto the ſouldier, though holding out diſcourſe more fuller in an *Arithmetical* way. But I have no deſire to fill this ſubject with plenty of unprofitable words and frothy flouriſhes, but rather driving really in a ſouldierly way, to make all things both plain and eaſie to every courteous Reader that ſhall be pleaſed for to peruſe the ſame. And therefore, here for preſent, I ſhall conclude, what more might here be ſpoken by Dignities of *Ranks* and *Files*, leaving what ſhall remain until ſuch time in courſe I ſhall again meet with them by the way in drawing up of *Regiments*.

CHAP. XVIII.

What Diſtance *is, and the reaſons for the firſt beginning of the ſame, with all their ſeveral uſes.*

HAving thus now paſſed over ſeveral reaſons, and with as much brevity as I could, to ſatisfie the longing deſire of the young ſouldiers requeſt of every particular place of honour as they ſtand in dignity both in Rank and File; which being paſſed over, the next will follow by courſe, before we come to joyn the *Files* into a *Body*, to ſatisfie the ſouldier of each particular *Diſtance*, with the ſeveral reaſons and uſes of the ſame: for next to the *Poſtures* it is the firſt thing or part of the *Military exerciſe*, and moſt neceſſary for the ſouldier to be knowing in. Yet I muſt confeſs no *Commander* is ſo tied up or limited in the *exerciſing* of his men at all times to begin with *Diſtances* firſt, ſo as to ſhew them all throughout; but nevertheleſs, in all and every one of the *motions* in the exerciſing of a *Body*, care muſt be taken that the ſouldier have his proper *diſtance* for performance of the ſame. Neither can any *Leader* exerciſe his men, but firſt he muſt command them to ſome *diſtance* ſutable to what he will begin. As ſome I have ſeen begin their *exerciſes* with *Facings*, ſome other with *Doublings*, others with *Counter-marches* and with *Wheelings*. Yet nevertheleſs, whoever they be that will ſo begin, as I ſaid before, muſt command his ſouldiers to ſome *Diſtance*, which may be proper for the ſame. But for my own part, my purpoſe is to go throughout all parts of the *Military exerciſe* of Foot, and therefore will go on in order as they lie; and firſt, as moſt propereſt, I ſhall begin with *Diſtances*, to ſhew them all throughout, and what the nature of them be.

Diſtance therefore really conſidered in it ſelf, is no *Motion*; but there are ſeveral *motions* to the attaining of each particular *Diſtance*, both in length and depth. Therefore briefly thus: *Diſtance* is a place or interval of ground between every particular *File* and *File*, and betwixt every *Rank* and *Rank* as they ſtand, and attained by the ſeveral motions of *Ranks* and *Files*, and conſiſting of ſeveral proportions of ground, as eaſily may be underſtood by their ſeveral words of command as they follow.

CHAP. XIX.

The ſeveral ſorts of Diſtances *which are fit and proper for the Souldier to be exerciſed in.*

Cloſeſt Order,	Which is both in Rank and File	Half a foot,
Cloſe Order,		One foot and half,
Order,		Three foot,
Open Order,		Six foot,
Double Diſtance,		Twelve foot,
Twice double Diſtance,		Twenty four foot.

Having thus ſet down every *Diſtance* with their ſeveral *proportions* of ground, I ſhall next proceed to the words of command to the opening of the *Ranks* and *Files* from their *cloſeſt Order*, and after ſatisfie the Souldier with Reaſons, and the uſes of every particular *Diſtance*, as they go along in order.

CHAP.

CHAP. XX.

Words of Command for the opening of Ranks *and* Files *to all their* Diſtances, *with their cloſings again.*

THe Commander craving ſilence, and that they be commanded to cloſe *Ranks* and *Files* to their *cloſeſt Order*, the words of command for *Diſtances* are as followeth,

- Files open to the *right*, to your / Ranks open backward to your } *Cloſe Order*,
- Files open to the *left*, to your / Ranks open backward to your } *Order*,
- Files open to the *right* and *left* to your / Ranks open backward to your } *Open Order*,
- Files open to the *left*, to your / Ranks open backward to your } *Double Diſtance*,
- Files open from the *midſt*, to / Ranks open backward to } *Twice double Diſtance*.

The *Ranks* and *Files* being thus opened unto their *twice double Diſtance* from their *cloſeſt Order*, I conceive it to be a more ſouldierly-like way in the *Opening* and *Cloſing* of *Files*, that the diſcretion of the *Commander* do vary, and alter the hand in the commanding of them, then alwayes from every *Diſtance* to tie himſelf to any particular hand; as to *open to the right*, and *cloſe to the right*. But as concerning the opening of *Ranks*, the propereſt way in my judgment is to open them alwayes to the *Reer*, in reſpect it is performed with more facility: For every *Rank* from the firſt takes his due *Diſtance* as he is commanded, without any further trouble, or to a half-facing to the *right*, by taking it from the *Reer*, if from that place they ſhall be opened; and ſo likewiſe it were a great deal better in the *cloſing of Ranks*, to cloſe them forwards, in reſpect it is for the more conveniency of their cloſing, then to the *Reer*. For then, again, they muſt perform a half-*facing*, which is not only unhandſome, but troubleſome to the ſouldier. All that can be ſaid to maintain it, (as I conceive, in opening *Ranks* forwards) is becauſe they have not room in the *Reer*, which ſeldome happens ſo in any *exerciſe*, if diſcreetly *ordered* by him that leads them. As for *cloſing of the Ranks backwards*, I cannot conceive any ſolid reaſons to confirm the ſame, and therefore will paſs over it, and come to cloſe our *Ranks* and *Files* to ſuch *Diſtance*, from whence they firſt were opened.

- Files cloſe to the *right* and *left* inward, to / Ranks cloſe forwards, to } *Double Diſtance*,
- Files cloſe to the *right*, to your / Ranks cloſe forwards to your } *Open Order*,
- Files cloſe into the midſt to your / Ranks cloſe forwards to your } *Order*,
- Files cloſe to the *left* to your / Ranks cloſe forwards to your } *Cloſe Order*,
- Files cloſe to the *right* to your / Ranks cloſe forwards to your } *Cloſeſt Order*.

Concerning the words of Command for *Diſtances*, in the *openings* and *cloſings* of *Ranks* and *Files*, what before is ſet down, may be ſufficient for any ſouldier to uſe in time of his exerciſe: But now it will be expected to give ſome reaſons for every one of theſe, to ſhew them in their proper uſes.

CHAP. XXI.

The uſe of each particular Diſtance, *and at what time to be uſed.*

WHerefore, firſt note, that your *diſtance* of *cloſeſt Order*, is of chiefeſt uſe unto the *Pike*, in theſe particulars; as firſt, Charging againſt the Horſe, for that the *Ranks* then clapping in their left legs behind their Leaders right, locking

themſelves

themſelves ſo firm and ſtedfaſt, one within another, which 'twere impoſſible for any *Body* of *Horſe* to enter in amongſt them. Secondly, it is of excellent uſe for to maintain a *breach*, and to keep out an enemy. Thirdly, it is very uſeful to both Arms, at ſuch time when a Commander hath any thing of conſequence to diſcover unto his Company, which he may have many occaſions ſo to do; as before his Exerciſe, to adviſe them to ſilence, to obſerve their words of command, and their directions; and when they are to fight againſt an Enemy, to perſwade and keep them off from fear, by aſſuring them good reaſons of hopes of overcoming. Theſe, or ſuch-like ſpeeches, many times a *Captain* may have juſt occaſion to expreſs himſelf unto his Company; and being at ſo cloſe a *Diſtance*, they may more aptly hear his words, and obey his Commands. But here now by the way, too much preaching upon the head of a Company concerning matters of Exerciſe, is too much a dulling of the ſouldier, who rather would fall into action, then ſo to be confounded with much talking.

Cloſe Order may be of very good uſe alſo for moſt things which have been ſpoken of the *cloſeſt Order*; only here the ſouldier hath a little more liberty in the handling of his arms by being at a wider *diſtance*. This *diſtance* alſo is of good uſe, before *wheelings*, becauſe many times upon their moving, they are apt to flie out to their proper *diſtance* of *Order*, which they alwayes ſhould be at in their *wheelings*; where note, if firſt they were at *Order*, they would flie out to wider *diſtance*.

Order is the *diſtance* which the ſouldier doth fight upon, and is to be uſed skirmiſhing againſt an enemy; it is alſo uſeful at ſuch a time, when the *Drum* ſhall beat a *Troop*, and that the ſouldiers are marching to relieve ſome *Court of Guard*, or making ſome expedition againſt an enemy, for then they are in a fit capacity of *diſtance* for to fight. It is alſo very uſeful, and to be obſerved upon *facings*, for all *intire doublings*, and for *wheelings*; *Order* likewiſe in *File*, and *open Order* in *Rank*, is to be uſed at ſuch time when the *Drum* ſhall beat a *March*, and the Body upon the moving or marching.

Open Order is the *diſtance* proper for all *doublings* of *Ranks* and *Files*, by the *half-files* or by the *bringers-up*, wherein they have *interval* of ground ſufficient to move in. It is alſo a very proper *diſtance* for *facings*, and ever to be obſerved in time of *Counter-marches*. It is the propereſt *diſtance* for the *Ranks* to be in upon a *march*, but the *Files* are then to be at *Order*, as is before expreſt.

The uſe of *double Diſtance* is to be obſerved at ſuch times when the ſouldiers ſhall ſtand, or happen to be in ſome eminent danger of the *Cannon-ſhot* from the Enemy; for ſtanding then ſo *thin*, they may be much preſerved from danger: it is likewiſe very good for *Inverſion*, and *Converſion*.

You may take notice of theſe brief directions, in openings of *Ranks* and *Files*; when the *Files* are commanded to *Open to the right*, the left-hand *File* ſtands, and all the *Files* take their *diſtance* from the *left*; obſerving alwayes in the motions of *Files*, their *Leaders*, and to move altogether along with them. If it be an *opening of Files to the left*, then contrary-wiſe the right-hand *File* ſtands, and they take their *diſtance* from the *right*. So likewiſe for *cloſings* unto what hand ſoever they be commanded to *cloſe*, the out-moſt *File* is to ſtand, the reſt are to move and *cloſe* to that. In *opening* or *cloſing* of *Ranks*, the firſt *Rank* is alwayes to ſtand, the reſt are to move either *opening* or *cloſing*, according as is commanded; alwayes obſerving in their motions their right-hand-men, and moving altogether.

CHAP. XXII.

Directions of the way and manner of drawing up a private Company.

THe *Poſtures* being formerly deſcribed forth, the dignity of places in a *File*, and words of Command made known unto the ſouldier for their ſeveral *diſtances*; It next followeth to ſhew the joyning of *Files*, and drawing up a *Company*; where firſt pray mind at ſuch times when the *Drums* are beating about the *Quarters*, and in ſeveral places make *Proclamation*, (as by order from their *Captain*) for all Gentlemen Souldiers that are under his Command, to repair unto his *Randezvous*, unto ſuch a place, and at ſuch an hour; then it muſt be the immediate care of

of every Officer under his Command, punctually at that hour and place, thither to repair, for the more incouraging of the ſouldiers as they ſhall come in, and not to ſtir themſelves from thence, without ſome order from their *Captain*, for fear of giving bad examples unto others. And when they ſhall perceive ſome conſiderable number of men to come in, the *Serjeants* then may take advice with their *Lieutenant* and *Enſign*, which of them they will appoint out to draw forth the *Muſkettiers*, and which the *Pikes*, and whom they ſhall make the right-hand *File-leader* of the *Muſkettiers*, and who ſhall be the left; and again, who ſhall be the Leader of the right-hand *File* of *Pikes*, and who ſhall be the left: For theſe four, being ſuch remarkable places of Honour unto the knowing ſouldier, that ſpecial care muſt be had in placing deſerving men to be there. Now it is, or ought to be the diſcretion of every *Lieutenant*, and *Enſign*, (as being *Commiſſion-Officers*) to reſolve the *Serjeants* herein, that they may with more alacrity go on to draw the reſt up between; and ſo to order unto each of them their particular duties, as to carry equal pains in drawing forth the *Files*. Therefore in reſpect that for the moſt part in every Company, they have three *Serjeants*, two of them ought to take charge in drawing forth the *Muſkettiers*, (being helpt by the advice of their *Lieutenant*,) and the other to draw forth the *Files* of *Pikes*, being aſſiſted in counſel by their *Enſign*: for at ſuch times the *Officers* ought not to be idle, and to ſtand gazing upon each other; but every one, according to his particular place and relation, ſhould be very active and aſſiſting to each other. In the drawing up the Company, the propereſt way will be then, as you may underſtand, in perfecting up a Company, to draw them forth into *Files*, and to make them ſix deep; as being our cuſtome here in *England*: and farther to have care in chooſing able ſouldiers to be *File-leaders*, who having ſpent ſome time and pains in their *Files* in ſhewing them their *Poſtures*, they may be called to joyn into a *body*.

For farther direction herein unto the *Serjeants* (whoſe proper place it doth belong unto) to obſerve this order in drawing up their *Files*, that they may ingroſſe the *Pikes* into one *body* by themſelves, and the *Muſkettiers* into another, and not to flank the *Pikes* until ſuch time they ſhall perceive that in both Arms they are compleat: There are likewiſe ſeveral places of honour that the *Serjeants* ought to take notice of, and to be informed of placing of men of worth and deſert in both Arms, that is to ſay, in the *body* of *Pikes*, and of the *Muſkettiers*, which underneath by figures I ſhall ſet forth for farther ſatisfaction therein.

2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1
P P P P	P P P P			M M M M M M M M	M M M M M M M M		
P P P P	P P P P			M M M M M M M M	M M M M M M M M		
P P P P	P P P P			M M M M M M M M	M M M M M M M M		
P P P P	P P P P			M M M M M M M M	M M M M M M M M		
P P P P	P P P P			M M M M M M M M	M M M M M M M M		
P P P P	P P P P			M M M M M M M M	M M M M M M M M		

Here I have ſet down the manner how the Serjeants ſhould draw up their Files in each Arms apart by themſelves, and have figured forth unto them the four chief places of honour in both Arms. It concerns them therefore very much to mind and have regard to theſe particular places, and to order ſuch men of worth there, which may be well deſerving of the ſame; and thoſe Gentlemen whom they ſhall think fit after to be worthy of File-leaders places, they are to draw them up between the figure (1) and the figure (4), and between the figure (3) and the figure (2) and that Rule to obſerve in both Arms; and to be careful to place good ſouldiers in the Rear, and ſuch who may be able ſouldiers for half-File-leaders, becauſe there may be much occaſion by Doublings to bring them up for to aſſiſt the Front.

Thus much, I do confeſs, may be ſufficient for the preſent to give directions to the *Serjeants* for the drawing up the Files, and joyning them together. Next after, I have ſhewn how to flank their *Pikes* with *Muſkettiers*, I will ſet forth unto them

them and the *Drums*, where their places are upon a *ſtand*, and where to be put upon a *march*.

Next followeth to flank the *ſtand* of *Pikes* with the *Muſkettiers*; command the Gentlemen of the *Pikes* to face to the right, and left *half-Ranks* of *Muſkettiers* to Face to the left, and then to march and interchange ground, *facing* after to their leaders, and cloſing *Files* inward to order, they will ſtand as underneath is ſet forth.

C

S1 E 4S

mmmmmmmmmDDppppppppDDmmmmmmmmm

mmmmmmmm pppppppp mmmmmmmm

mmmmmmmm pppppppp mmmmmmmm

mmmmmmmm pppppppp mmmmmmmm

mmmmmmmm pppppppp mmmmmmmm

mmmmmmmm pppppppp mmmmmmmm

S3 L 2S

C

mmmm
mmmm

If it ſhould happen, as ſometimes it doth, for a Company to be very large, as in a *Colonels*, why then they may have juſt cauſe to have four *Serjeants*, as I have thus placed them. But here again it will be expected of divers Souldiers to ſhew ſome Reaſons for the placing of the *Serjeants* being thus drawn up and upon a *ſtand*; which I ſhall endeavour fully to do, after I have ſet down where their places are upon a *march*. Now before we ſhall come to treat of the Company upon their long *march*, the *Captain* perceiving for his moſt conveniency of marching in the ſtreet or in a lane, that it will be convenient to divide his *Muſkettiers* into equal diviſions for their *march*, and therefore, according to this number here ſet down, they may be divided into four diviſions; that is to ſay, two to march in the *Van*, and two in the *Reer*, and two diviſions of *Pikes*. But before they are moving, it is the *Serjeants* duty to come unto the *Captain* to be informed of him where their proper places are to *march*, and what diviſions each of them ſhall lead; and likewiſe ſo the *Drums*, to know their places where to beat upon the *march*. To anſwer to them all, in the firſt place, the *Captain* ought to give directions to his youngeſt *Serjeant* to lead the ſecond *diviſion* of *Muſkettiers* in the *Van*; the firſt diviſion of *Pikes* being led by the *Enſigne*: he commands the *ſecond* for to be led by his ſecond *Serjeant*, and after orders or appoints the eldeſt *Serjeant* to lead the firſt diviſion of *Muſkettiers* of the *Reer-guard*, and the third *Serjeant* to lead the laſt diviſion of *Muſkettiers*, the *Lieutenant* bringing up the *Reer*; and *Drums* commanded to fall in behind the two firſt Ranks of each diviſion, and to beat between the ſecond *Rank* and fourth.

4S
mmmm
mmmm
mmmm
mmmm
mmmm

E
PPPP
PPPP

D
PPPP
PPPP
PPPP
PPPP

2S
PPPP
PPPP
PPPP
PPPP
PPPP

Having thus ſtated to them all their proper places, next it will be convenient for the *Captain* to command them to *ſhoulder* their Arms, both *Pikes* and *Muſkettiers*; and the *Officers* and *Drums* taking all their places, as before directed, they may begin to move and draw forth into a long *march*, as here you ſee.

1S
mmmm
mmmm

D
mmmm
mmmm
mmmm
mmmm

3S
mmmm
mmmm
mmmm
mmmm
mmmm

CHAP. XXIII.

Several reaſons given for the placing of the Serjeants *after this manner.*

WHen a Body is drawn up in manner as before expreſſed; the *Captain* being Commander in chief, his diſcretion is to ballance the Officers as near as he can with equal dignity and worth, his *Front* proportionally with the *Reer*. To which purpoſe he takes unto himſelf the youngeſt *Serjeant*, and places him on the right *Angle* in the *Front*, whereby he may be there ready to march down into the Body or elſewhere, according unto the diſcretion of the *Captain*, to fulfil his commands; as alſo to ſo ſtand there as a ſpectator of the *Captains* actions, and an aſſiſtant, which may be much improvement to him. And in like manner he commands

mands the third Serjeant to the left Angle in the Reer; as being the ſecond youngeſt, and may be a help unto his Lieutenant there, as the fourth is to him in the Front. The eldeſt Serjeant he orders to the left Angle in the Front, as being the moſt honourable place for him, being there ready to lead upon a march the Van of the Reer-Guard; and the ſecond Serjeant he is appointed to ſtand on the right Angle of the Reer, to make them equal in dignity unto the Front. Now if you pleaſe to examine the dignity of the Serjeants in the firſt place, as the firſt Serjeant and the fourth, making the number (5) and after take a view of the ſecond place, or Reer, and there you ſhall obſerve that the ſecond Serjeant, and third, may every way ballance themſelves, to be equivalent in the worth with the firſt and fourth, carrying with them alike the ſame number. So that it is clearly evident, that the Serjeants are rightly ſtated in number and dignity, the Front proportionably with the Reer, in the judgement of any knowing Souldier. Something more may be ſpoken of the ſecond Serjeants place, which you may take notice in his march, to lead the ſecond Diviſion of Pikes, which is the moſt honourableſt place of leading that is appointed forth unto the Serjeants, the firſt only excepted; and upon a ſtand, when they ſhall lead up their Diviſions, every Serjeant is to betake him unto his place, as they were at firſt placed, and to continue there until ſuch time they ſhall receive further order from their Captain. Thus much, I conceive, may give ſatisfaction unto the diſcreet Souldier in theſe particulars, leaving them liberty to judge according unto their own beſt thoughts, while we endeavour to draw up our Diviſions all abreſt again, and to make ſome deſcription of a Body.

The Captain upon his March having attained ſome convenient place to draw up his Company, makes Alt, and commands the Serjeants to lead up their Diviſions upon the left, and cauſes the Muskettiers to open from the Pikes, making ſufficient intervals for the Drums, to beat two abreſt, even with the Front, the firſt two between the right-hand-File-leader of Pikes, and the Muskettiers upon the right; the ſecond two Drums doing the like upon the left. And always the Captain ought to march his company after this manner all abreſt, provided he have ground ſufficient for the ſame. And being far more graceful ſo to do, then to march them ſtragling upon a long march, for it doth repreſent in ſome kind the manner of marching of a Regiment; and at ſuch times the Serjeants are to march upon the Angles, as is before deſcribed, moving to and again ſometimes upon the Flanks, and cauſing the Souldiers to keep their Diſtance of order in File, and open order in Rank, and to march all even abreſt, and after to return again unto their places.

CHAP. XXIV.

Before I come to make deſcription of a Body, I ſhall ſhew ſome further Reaſons of the Serjeants places of leſſer Companies, with the placing of the Drums.

IT happens many times ſome Companies falls not out ſo large, as is before ſet forth, and that they have but three Serjeants, and therefore it would be known, when that they have but one Diviſion of Muskettiers in the Van, two Diviſions of Pikes, and one Diviſion of Muskettiers in the Reer, which is the Reer-Guard, where then the placing of theſe three Serjeants, and three Drums ſhall be upon their long March, and where to be marching all abreſt. To which, I anſwer, in the firſt place, the youngeſt Serjeant is always to attend the Captain, and having no Diviſion to lead, he is to be upon the right Angle of the Front, there expecting his Captains pleaſure and commands; and the ſecond Serjeant is to lead the ſecond Diviſion of Pikes, and the eldeſt Serjeant to lead the laſt Diviſion of Muskettiers, or the Reer-Guard: here are their places upon the long march.

But when they are drawn up, and ſo march even abreſt, the youngeſt Serjeants place, as is before expreſt, is to march upon the right Angle in the Front, and the eldeſt upon the left, the ſecond Serjeant is to march in the right Angle in the Reer. They having their places thus ſtated, are to move ſometimes up and down upon the Flanks in their marching, cauſing the Souldiers to keep their due diſtance of order in File, and open order in Rank, and to march even abreſt, and after they may return to their places again.

But here, methinks, I meet with ſome Objector by the way, who ſaith, the eldeſt is much wronged herein; for that it is his proper place to be upon the right; that when Forlorns are drawn off againſt an Enemy, he is there ready firſt to lead them on, claiming it as his due to give the firſt onſet, and therefore far more honour for him to be on the right then on the left, and the eldeſt Serjeant rather placed on the left then on the right. As for the ſecond Serjeants place, 'tis fit he ſhould be in the Reer, to aſſiſt the Lieutenant there, he having none but he to help him, if any occaſion ſhould require. To which I anſwer, that it is the youngeſt Serjeants place to be upon the right Angle, either upon a Stand, or upon a March, and not the eldeſt, for theſe reaſons following. The youngeſt Serjeant is not placed there for any honour that it is to him, for he hath no Diviſion at all to lead upon the March (except the Company be very great) and if ſo, he is placed ſo near the Captain, to be ſerviceable to him, to carry and convey his pleaſures unto all the reſt of the Officers. As for the leading of the Van-guard upon the March, the Captain takes that place unto himſelf; and it is far more honour unto the eldeſt Serjeant to be a Leader of the Reer-guard, or entirely the left Flank, then to lead a Subdiviſion of Pikes. And beſides that, it is propereſt for his place to be upon the left, when they are all drawn up upon a breſt, for theſe two reaſons; as firſt, he is thereupon in readineſs to take his due place, upon the ſub-dividing on the long March; and again, upon a Stand, when they are all drawn up, and ready to engage againſt an Enemy, and the Forlorns to be drawn forth, equally alike from both Flanks, he is then as ready in the Front to execute his Captains Commands, the youngeſt Serjeant being likewiſe ſent to be ſomething helpful to him, and attending after for further order from his Captain, to ſend him relief by the ſecond Serjeant, as occaſion ſhall require. So that in my judgement, take it either upon the long March, or otherwiſe, when drawn all up even abreſt, all things are ſo ſtated, for his due honour and place, that he hath no reaſon to complain, nor any of the reſt, having all their due and proper places which doth belong unto them.

As for the placing of the Drums upon the long March, every Diviſion ought to have his Drums fall between ſuch Ranks as before expreſt; excepting only the ſecond Diviſion of Pikes, which may be excuſed, when they are to beat a March, as being all drawn up, they are to fall in two, to beat even abreſt upon the right, and one upon the left, as is before ſet down. If it ſhould chance further in a Company, to be ſo ſmall to have but three Diviſions, that is to ſay, one Diviſion of Muskettiers in the Van, the Body of Pikes in the midſt, and another Diviſion of Muskettiers to bring up the Reer-guard, and having but two Serjeants and two Drums; the youngeſt Serjeants place will be as before mentioned, upon the right in the Front, and the eldeſt Serjeant upon the left, and to take his place to lead the laſt Diviſion of Muskettiers upon the long March; and the firſt Drum to beat in the firſt Diviſion of Muskettiers, and the ſecond to beat and to march along amongſt the Pikes. I have a little more enlarged my ſelf in this Diſcourſe of placing of the Serjeants, then I at firſt intended; but meeting many times with ſeveral Souldiers, deſiring ſatisfaction in every one of theſe particulars, I ſhall perhaps undergo here the hard cenſure of ſome, for this my tedious Diſcourſe; but ſuch others which deſire to be knowing herein, I hope they will have a more favourable opinion of my good meaning unto them. And here I ſhall conclude for the preſent, concerning the particular places of the Serjeants in every private Company; and now ſuppoſing, as by order from the Captain, the Serjeants have brought up their Diviſions, ſtanding again, as before, expecting ſomething more to be ſpoken unto them, they ſilently ſtand to hear what follows.

CHAP. XXIV.

A Deſcription of a Body of men throughout, with all their ſeveral parts and kinds.

IT is very neceſſary knowledge to every particular Souldier, to be acquainted throughout with all the parts of a Body of men drawn up, with their ſeveral extents and bounds, and with the true underſtanding of the ſame.

Where

Where first note the Description of Files; a File is a Sequence of men, consisting of Leaders and Followers, from the first unto the last; the joyning of Files flank-wise maketh Ranks, and is the compleating up of a Body: for one File alone cannot be said to have any Ranks in it, but joyning two or more Files together unto one, you may account them (provided they be six deep) to have so many Ranks for number, as doth extend from their Leaders to their Bringers-up. And further know, that a Rank is a Row of men, standing shoulder to shoulder, in an even line from the left Flank to the right; or from the outmost man upon the left, unto the outmost man upon the right; standing all in a row File-wise. Neither can it be said of one Rank, to have any Files in it; for as the closing of Files to Files, makes Ranks; so the adding of Ranks to Ranks, makes Files.

As for the Depth of Files, they have in these latter Ages much varied therein; sometimes making them sixteen deep, others ten, and eight deep, and now lately, they have brought them unto six deep, as being the custom of the *Swedes* and the *French*, and altogether now the practice here in *England*. In which form and way, I purpose to walk. But to proceed to my former promise to the Souldier: There is in every Body of men drawn up, consisting of Pikes and Musketiers, whether of greater or smaller number, it makes no matter; *A Front*, a *Reer*, a *Right-flank*, and a *Left-flank*; there is also *Front-half-files*, and *Reer-half-files*; there is a *Right-half-ranks*, and a *Left-half-ranks*; and there is a *Length* and *Depth* of the Battail: and of every one of these in their several kinds. They have their particular extents and bounds, according to their number of men.

Therefore, take notice in the first place, that the Front is the first Rank, or Row of men, which are the File-leaders, and chief men of their Files, who properly ought to take charge of their Files, being as it were their Captains, and leads them first on in the Brunt against a furious Enemy. The extent of the Front is from the left-hand File-leader, unto the Leader of the right-hand File.

The Reer is the last Row or Rank of men, being the Bringers-up of the Files, who next the Leaders are the chiefest men of honour in the File, and are as it were unto them, their Lieutenants; and in the absence of their Leaders, they are to take charge of the File, and to instruct them in their postures: the extent of the Reer, is from the Bringer-up of the left-hand File, unto the place of the Bringer-up of the right.

The right Flank is the outmost File upon the right, where always ought, by the way, to be very able Souldiers placed, because they first give onset, or fire against the Enemy, if on that part they shall be charged; the extent of the right Flank is from the Leader of the right-hand File, unto the Bringer-up of the same.

The left Flank likewise is the outmost File upon the left, and his extent is from the Leader of the left-hand File, unto the Bringer-up.

The Front half-Files extent or bounds, reacheth no farther then from the Front, unto the midst of Ranks, or to the Bringers-up of the Front half-files, which being but six deep, is the third Rank from the Front; and the length of the same reacheth from the outmost part of the left Flank, until you come unto the right.

The Reer half-Files beginneth from the midst of Ranks, or from the fourth Rank from the Front, and runneth downward in his depth to the Bringer-up of the whole File; and the Length of the same is to be taken side-wise, as they stand shoulder to shoulder, from the outmost man upon the left, unto the outmost man upon the right.

The right half-Ranks in their Length runneth no farther, then from the outmost man upon the right, unto the midst of Files, or to the left-hand File-leader of the right half-Ranks; the Depth of the right half-Ranks reacheth from the Front, running down unto the Reer.

As for the left half-Ranks, as much may be said, to take his Length from the midst of Files, or from the right-hand File-leader, of the left half-Ranks unto the outmost Files upon the left; the Depth of the left half-Ranks, may be understood in form and manner conformable to the right.

Next come we to speak of the Length and Depth of the whole Battail: the

Length of the Battail is ever to be accounted of the number of men in a Rank, and not in a File; for the Files perhaps may not be above six deep, when that there may be hundreds in a Breſt in the Ranks: and farther, the Length of any Battail is to be taken from the outmoſt point of the left Flank, or left-hand File-leader, ſtretching it ſelf forth by an even Line along, until you come to the outmoſt point of right Flank, or right-hand File-leader; the Depth of the Battail always is to be taken from the Front or firſt Rank, and going down backward in a ſtraight Line down to the Reer, to the laſt Rank, or to the Bringers-up of the Files. For as the Length of the Battail is to be taken from the left Flank, going along in Front unto the right; ſo the Depth of the Battail is to be taken from the Front, going backward down to the Reer.

There is alſo to be underſtood, that in every *Battalia* drawn up, there are other parts and Denominations, very conſiderable to be known; that is, in every ſuch an one, there is a Van-Guard, a Reer-Ward, and Main-Battail. The Van-Guard are the Muſketteers upon the right, or the right Flank; or as moſt commonly called amongſt us in theſe days, the Right-wing; or the Left-wing, which are the Muſketteers, and the Flankers of the Body of Pikes: the reaſon, as I conceive, the Muſketteers are accounted and called Wings, is becauſe they are firſt drawn off, as by flying motions in Forlorns, to engage againſt an Enemy; but of this by the way. To proceed: the Reer-Ward or Reer-Guard, are the Muſketteers on the left Flank; and the Battail is the Body of Pikes; and here I ſhall conclude concerning the deſcription of a Body.

CHAP. XXVI.

Directions to all ſuch as ſhall deſire to exerciſe a Foot-Company, with ſome admonitions to the Souldiers as ſhall be exerciſed by them.

HE that intends to exerciſe a Body of men, muſt truly know what he ſhall command, and ſo to give his directions unto the Souldiers, as they may aptly make ready execution of the ſame. He muſt at ſuch times above all the reſt, aſſume unto himſelf the confidence and preſence (as near as he is able) of a compleat Souldier. He is alſo to ſtretch out his voice ſo, as he may conveniently be heard, and underſtood by the inferior Officers and Souldiers; which will cauſe them more readily to obey his commands. He ought to carry a chearful countenance unto them, provided they do well; but otherwiſe, if carelеſſly diſregarding his Commands, he may look barſhly upon them. His eyes ought to be quick and nimble, obſerving all their motions, whether it be to the right or left, to the Front or Reer, and nimbly ſtepping to them, to ſtay them, if diſorderly they ſwerve awry from what he firſt intended. He muſt likewiſe order all his words of Command ſo, as that they may be proper, and clearly pronounced forth unto the Souldier, without any faltering. And in every one of theſe, to ſee the Souldier leaſurely and eaſily perform the ſame in a compleat manner. He muſt not be too quick in his words of Command, but carefully ſee what before commanded well done, and then he may proceed unto the next. In time of his Exerciſe, he muſt ſeriouſly mind what he is to do, and not to have his thoughts extravagantly carried away upon any other Subject, for fear he be out; but if any ſuch thing ſhould happen through forgetfulneſs, he ought not to be daunted, but to pull up the ſpirit of a Souldier as well as he can, and endeavour to reduce them again. For it is a rare thing to be found, for a Leader to be ſo exquiſite in his Exerciſing, as not to be ſometimes out; and in my obſervation of moſt, at one time or another, I have found them ſo to be. His diſcretion alſo ought to be ſuch, as to cull out, and chuſe thoſe things that be chiefeſt, as flowers out of a Garden, to fit and compleat up his Exerciſe in a Souldier-like way; which may be moſt propereſt for ſervice and uſe, which will bring to him far more commendations and praiſe in the judgement of every knowing Souldier, then to ſpend his time upon unneceſſary toyes; but yet ſometimes, to pleaſe the fancy of the curious, at their private meetings he may uſe ſome things for delight, to ſupport and uphold their private Exerciſes, which have nurſt up here in *London* many able Souldiers and Commanders, who have been ſerviceable to our Nation. It

is

is a very neceſſary thing likewiſe that a Leader ſometimes do acquaint the Souldiers of the uſe of their ſeveral Diſtances, Facings, Doublings, Counter-marches, and Wheelings, and of all things elſe he ſhall command; but in ſuch a manner, that he dwell not too long upon any thing he ſhall declare unto them, for dulling of the Souldiers, who rather would be pleaſed with more actings, then by too much talkings; which ſpins out the time, as ſometimes ordered, to very little purpoſe. He muſt be very carefull of every word of Command he gives, that the Souldiers be ordered in their due Diſtance, ſutable to the ſame, of what kind ſoever it be; and if it ſhall be loſt in their movings or marchings, he muſt endeavour to bring them to it again. He is likewiſe to acquaint the Souldiers when they are drawn up, to look about them, and to mind their ſeveral places, how they ſtand in the Body, whether they be in even Ranks from the Front, or odd; if even, and upon any doubling of Ranks, they are the men to double the odd; if half-file-leaders, that they be commanded to double the Front; they muſt advance their Arms, and are Leaders of that Motion to come up to double the Front; if Bringers-up commanded to double, they are alike to do the ſame; if Bringers up of the Front-half-files, and that they be commanded to double the Reer, they likewiſe are to advance their Arms, to face about, and are to begin to lead them down to the Reer. They ſhould likewiſe take notice how they ſtand in their Files, whether even from the right, or no; if even, and there be any command to double Files to the right, they all are to move, and double the odd; if commanded to double to the left, they then ſtand odd; and the others are to move, and double them. They likewiſe are to mind their places, who are upon the Flanks, for a doubling either to Front or Reer by the half-Files; they firſt begin to march, and how they ſtand there as right and left-hand men in even Ranks; for by any doublings of Ranks entire, or by Diviſion, they likewiſe are the Leaders of the Motion. There ought alſo advice be given to the middle File-leaders, to know their places; for if there ſhould be any doublings of the half-Ranks, they then are firſt to move, and to begin the motion.

This caution being ſometimes quickly run over in adviſing of the Souldiers, that they ſhould ever mind when they are firſt drawn up into a body theſe particular places, they would not ſtand ſo careleſſy and ſo ignorantly in a Body, as many times they do, not knowing which way to move without a great deal of pains and directions from their Leaders; for there being ſo many occaſions of doublings of theſe kinds, that it is a neceſſary thing for every Souldier to be acquainted with the ſame.

Yet it is not only ſufficient that the Souldiers do mind their places as they ſtand in a body, according to the direction of their *Leader*, as before ſet forth unto them, but that they be likewiſe, in the time of their Exerciſe, very ſilent in the body, and helpful unto their fellow-Souldiers, by pointing out unto them with ſigns with the hand, where they ſhould march, to perform what was before commanded, and to be very civil and orderly in their carriage to each other, and to mind their Exerciſe ſo as a matter of great weight, and high conſideration in the well regarding of the ſame. And if a word of command (as ſometimes may happen) ſlip out of order, as by the miſtaking of a hand or the like, yet nevertheleſs it ſhould be their modeſt care, if not prevented by their Leader, to be ready to execute what they conceive he intended; and walking along in this civil and reſpective way unto him that ſhall lead them, it will not only be a great encouragement unto him, but they will alſo reap much benefit unto themſelves.

And thus much briefly may be ſpoken in way of advice unto every Leader before his beginning of his Exerciſe, and unto each particular Souldier as ſhall by him be exerciſed.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of Facings, *of their ſeveral kinds, and of their uſe, with the words of command for performance of the ſame.*

FAcing is the altering or turning of the Aſpect to either hand upon the ground they ſtand, according to the words of Command, whether it be to the right, left

left, Front or Reer, or to the midſt of Files or Ranks, or to any of the outward or inward Angles, or to the Center.

The manner of execution of the ſame, it is a particular turning of every Souldiers countenance unto each of thoſe hands or places as above expreſt, and to be performed after this manner. The left foot is always to be kept fixed like the binge of a door, and unto what hand or part they ſhall be commanded to face, every particular Souldier is immediately to turn his body upon the Ball or Centre of his left foot by wheeling, until he hath brought his Aſpect unto the place commanded.

Facings is one of the moſt neceſſary and uſefulleſt motions amongſt all the reſt: for when the body ſhall be in ſuch a ſtreight that they cannot bring their faces againſt an enemy by Counter-march, or by a Wheeling, to bring their beſt Souldiers there to fight; and likewiſe being debarred of room that they cannot double it, nevertheleſs Facings are of ſuch excellent uſe, that they may with eaſe, although ſtanding at cloſe Order, turn every particular face to charge upon that part where they ſhall be aſſaulted by an enemy: and farther, this motion is performed with more facility then all the reſt of the motions. For in the others they alter the form of the Battail, or changeth the place, but in this they preſerve both, and it is ready for any attempt of an enemy: if they ſhould be charged all at once in Front, Reer, right and left Flanks, they may be commanded ſo to face, as to anſwer them all in every one of their charges.

Facings likewiſe are ſo neceſſary, that they can hardly be ſpared in any other of the motions, having relation in one kind or other to them all for to be uſed. There is likewiſe farther to be underſtood, that there are Entire-Facings and diviſional. Entire Facings are when they turn their Aſpects all one way: Diviſional Facings are when they divert or turn their faces ſeveral ways, as to the Front, Reer, and both Flanks, all at one inſtant of time as ſhall be commanded.

There are likewiſe facings to the Front and Reer Angles, that is to ſay, of their outward and inward Angles. Outward Angles are when they are commanded to face to the right Angle or to the left, or both facing to the inward Angles, as when they are commanded ſo, as to face to the inward Angles towards the midſt of Files. There is likewiſe facing to the inward Angles towards the midſt of Ranks as to the Center; where note, when there is any uſe of theſe Facings unto the inward Angles, it is occaſioned by ſome former words of command, that hath made ſome large intervals in the midſt of Ranks or Files, and therefore they may give them ſuch commands as theſe for to open or ſtand ſo, that they may march and cloſe again as at firſt.

This Facing to the Center, I do conceive to be very uſeful, when the Captain or Leader hath any thing of importance to ſpeak unto the Company; they ſtanding at cloſe order, he may ſide-wiſe move down into the midſt of the Ranks and Files, and command them to face all to the Center; they ſtanding all round about him ſo cloſe, cannot chuſe but hear and know what his pleaſure and command will be, and in obedience thereunto, be very ready in performance for the execution of the ſame.

But before I come to ſet down the words of Command for Facings, I ſhall deſire all Leaders not to tye themſelves up ſo as not to begin in their Exerciſe to command Facings, until they have brought the Souldiers to ſtand at open order, both in Rank and File, as if it were not proper for them to command them to face till then. Therefore rather, for the reaſons before ſet forth, command them to chuſe upon ſuch cloſe Diſtances to face, that they may know the true uſe of them, and at ſuch times when they want ground that the other motions cannot be performed.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVIII.

The words of Command for Facings.

Right,
Left,
To both Flanks,
Right } about,
Left }
To Front and Reer,
Midst of Files,
Midst of Ranks,
Right } Angle,
Left }
Outward Angles in the Front,
Inward Angles in the Front,
Face to the { Right } Angle in the Reer, } As you were, or, To your Leader.
Left }
Outward } Angles in the Reer,
Inward }
Inward Angles of the right Flank,
Inward Angles of the left Flank,
Outward } Angles both of Front and Reer,
Inward }
Inward Angles of both the Flanks to the Center,
Front, Reer and both Flanks from the Center,
To the outward Angles of Front and Reer from the Center,

Having concluded the words of Command for performing of plain Facings, there must be notice taken, when any word of Command shall be given to face to any of the Reer-Angles, they must be first faced to the Reer, and they will make more easier performance of the same; and likewise, if any word of Command be given to face to the inward Angles upon the Flanks, they must face them there likewise first, and it will be easier fulfilled: and likewise if any command be given to face to the four Angles, or to Front, Reer, and Midst from the Center, care must be first had that they may be first faced to the Center.

I might have proceeded a great deal farther in this place upon this Subject of *Facings*, to have shewn several figures of Battail that might be produced and drawn forth, affording much variety of forms and number, and with much ease to be performed upon their several marchings, according as they are ordered to face, which might be very useful for service, and affording much matter for any particular Exercise, to use several firings upon the same. But I shall have occasion in another place to make use of divers of them, and setting them forth in the view, when I shall begin to set down in any particular Leadings of my own, which I have performed in our private meetings at *Town-Ditch* in *London*, every Thursday-morning, for the satisfaction of those loving Gentlemen who still do Exercise there, and to such which shall come after.

CHAP. XXIX.

The many variety of Doublings, *with their parts and uses set forth for the practice of any Commander, to make use of according unto his own discretion.*

SInce there is in the true account, no other dimension of a Battail, but the Length and Depth, so likewise it is to be understood, that the Length of the Battail is doubled by the doublings of Ranks and half-Files; and the Depth of the Battail is doubled by the doubling of Files, and of the half-Ranks. Now there are several Words of Command for the performance of each of these, as to double Ranks and Files, which do consist either of the doubling of number of men and persons, and not of place, or else the doubling both of number and place. As for Example, command either the Ranks, the half-files, or Bringers-up to double

double the Front to the right; here only is the doubling of number of men, and not of place, for it adds but one man more to that hand, whereunto they were commanded, and gains but his particular place. Again, double Ranks to any hand entire or double, the Front by the half-Files to the right entire, it will be not only a doubling of the number of men, but a doubling of the place, and the Length of the Battail. The uſe of doubling the Length of the Battail may be for two Reaſons, the one to over-wing an Enemy, the other to avoid over-winging our ſelves. Yet there muſt be care taken, that in doubling of the Length, that we fail not, or be too weak in our Depth: for the want of both, either Length or Depth, may be very dangerous to our ſelves, and may give great advantage to the Enemy. For if there ſhould want a ſufficient Depth, by gaining much Length in the Front, we may perhaps be ſo weak there, that an Enemy may quickly break through, whereby much danger may enſue upon the ſame, if not timely prevented by the diſcretion of the Commanders.

There is likewiſe in the doubling of Files, or the half-Ranks doubling to either Flank, a doubling of number of men, and not of place, carrying much variety of words of Command; but the doubling of Files, and of the left half-Ranks entire, the Depth of the right Flank is not only a doubling of the number, but a doubling of the place and Depth of the Battail. In this doubling of the Depth care likewiſe muſt be had, that we make not the Front too narrow, leſt we give opportunity to the Enemy to encircle, and encompaſs it. To conclude therefore, take notice that Doublings were invented to ſtrengthen any part of the Body that ſhall be weak, whether in the Front, or Reer-right-flank, or left, whether it be in number of men or place, Length or Depth, it is to be uſed according to the diſcretion of the Commander. There is likewiſe farther to be conſidered in Doublings, whether they double the number or place, Length or Depth, it is to be performed by one of theſe two, either entire, or diviſional Doublings: therefore I ſhall proceed, and go on to ſhew what I conceive to be the propereſt way in the progreſs of them in a right order; and therefore I will begin to ſet down the words of Command; Firſt, to double the Front, and ſo farther proceed to ſhew the Doublings of the Flanks. And firſt of entire Doublings, and next of the diviſional; and in the mean time, I ſhall crave pardon from the courteous Souldier, that I put not down ſeveral Pricks or Figures to ſet forth the ſame, endeavouring rather to give him the words of Command for each particular Doubling, with directions for performance of the ſame, together with their ſeveral Reducements, leaving it to his ingenious ſtudy and practice, to make uſe of what he pleaſeth, where he may cull and chuſe out ſuch as ſhall be convenient and fit, either for ſervice or delight; by the way adviſing him to retain in his memory, what he intends to practiſe, and not to meddle with any thing, but what he aſſuredly knows will carry ſuch weight and able reaſons for their uſe and ſervice, as ſhall admit of no controlment from the judicious Souldier.

CHAP. XXX.

The words of Command for all Entire Doublings *to the* Front, *to be performed one time or other in time of Exerciſe.*

Command. RAnks to the right double.

Direction. Every even Rank move forward with the right-leg, and with three ſteps double the odd.

Reducement. Files to the left double; Or, Ranks as you were.

Command. Ranks to the left double.

Direction. Every even Rank from the Front, move forwards with the left-leg, and at three ſteps double the odd.

Reducement. Files to the right double; or, Ranks as you were.

Command. Ranks to the right and left, double outward.

Direction. Every even Rank move outward from the midſt, and at three ſteps double the odd.

Reducement. Files to the right and left, double inward; or, Ranks as you were.

Command. Ranks to the right and left, double inward.

Direction

Direction. Every even Rank from the Front move inward from the Flanks, and at three ſteps double the odd.

Reducement. Files to the right and left double outward; or, Ranks as you were.

Command. Half-files double your Front to the right.

Direction. Half-files advance your Arms, and move forwards to the right into the Front.

Reducement. Files double your Depth to the left; or, Half-Files as you were.

Command. Half-files double your Front to the left.

Direction. Half-files advance forwards to the left into the Front.

Reducement. Files double your Depth to the right; or, Half-Files as you were.

Command. Half-files double your Front to the right and left, outward.

Direction. Half-files advance forwards to the right and left, from the midſt, and move up into the Front.

Reducement. Files double your Depth to the right and left inward; or, Half-Files as you were.

Command. Half-files double your Front to the right and left inward.

Direction. Half-files move forwards from the Flanks inward into the Front.

Reducement. Files double your Depth to the right and left outward; or, Half-Files as you were.

Command. Bringers-up double your Front to the right.

Direction. Bringers-up advance your Arms, and move forwards with the right leg into the Front.

Reducement. Files double your Depth to the left, every man falling behind his Bringer-up.

Command. Bringers-up double your Front to the left.

Direction. Bringers-up advance forward to the left into the Front.

Reducement. Files double your Depth to the right, every man falling behind his Bringer-up.

Command. Bringers-up double your Front to the right and left outwards.

Direction. Bringers-up advance forward from the midſt of the Rear, to the right and left into the Front.

Reducement. Files double your Depth to the right and left inward, every man falling behind his Bringer-up.

Command. Bringers-up double your Front to the right and left inward.

Direction. Bringers-up advance forwards from the Flanks, inward into the Front.

Reducement. Files double your Depth to the right and left outward, every man falling behind his Bringer-up.

Command. Double your Ranks to the right entire.

Direction. Every even Rank from the Front face to the right, march forth, and double the odd.

Reducement. Right half-Ranks double your left Flank; or, Ranks as you were.

Command. Double your Ranks to the left entire.

Direction. Every even Rank from the Front, face to the left, march forth, and double the odd.

Reducement. Left half-Ranks double your right-Flank; or, Ranks as you were.

Command Double your Ranks inward entire.

Direction. Every even Rank from the Rear, move away outward until you be clear of the ſtanding part; and after every even Rank from the Front, move forwards, and double the odd.

Reducement. The inmoſt Files double your Flanks to the right and left outward, and after cloſe.

Command. Double your Ranks to the right entire, every man placing himſelf on the outſide of his right-hand-man.

Direction. Every even Rank from the Front, move away to the right, and place your ſelves on the outſide of your right-hand-men, and double the odd Ranks.

Reducement. Right half-Ranks double your left-Flank, every man placing himself on the inside of his left-hand-man.

Command. Double your Ranks to the left entire, every man placing himself on the outside of his left-hand-man.

Direction. Every even Rank from the Front, move away to the left, and double the odd Ranks by placing your selves on the outside of your left-hand-men.

Reducement. Left half-Ranks double your right-Flank, every man placing himself on the inside of his right-hand-man.

Command. Half-files double your Front to the right entire.

Direction. Half-files face to the right, and march clear of the standing part: after face to your Leader, move up even abreast, and double the Front.

Reducement. Right half-Ranks double entire the Depth of your left-Flank.

Command. Half-files double your Front to the left entire.

Direction. Half-files face to the left, and march clear of the standing part, after face to your Leader, march up, and even the Front.

Reducement. Left half-Ranks double entire the Depth of your right Flank.

Command. Half-files double your Front inward entire.

Direction. Front half-Files face outwards, and march clear of the standing part: facing after to their Leader, the Reer half-Files may move up, and double the Front.

Reducement. The inmost Files double entire the Depth of the outmost Files, and after close.

These are, as I conceive, the properest and plainest *Doublings* for any Souldier to use in his Exercise, out of which he may chuse as many of them, as he shall think fit, being all entire Doublings to the Front. Next follows to shew some *Divisional Doublings* to the same.

CHAP. XXXI.

Divisional Doublings to the Front.

Command. DOuble your Ranks to the right and left by *Division.*

Direction. Every even Rank from the Front face outwards, march forth and double the odd.

Reducement. The outmost Files upon each Flank that moved, face inward, march in and strengthen the Body.

Command. Double your Ranks to the right and left by Division, every man placing himself on the outside of his right and left-hand-man.

Direction. Every even Rank from the Front, move forth to the right and left outward, and double the odd, placing your selves on the outside of your right and left-hand-men.

Reducement. The outmost Files upon each Flank that moved, double the inmost Files to the right and left inward, every man placing himself on the inside of his right and left-hand-man.

Command. Half-files double your Front by Division.

Direction. Half-files face outwards, and march clear of the standing part: after face to your Leader, move up even abreast, and double the Front.

Reducement. The outmost Files upon each Flank that moved, double entire the Depth of the inmost Files.

CHAP. XXXII.

Entire Doublings to the Front by Wheelings.

Command. WHeel off your Reer half-Files, and double your Front to the right entire.

Direction. Half-Files face about, and wheel about to the left; march up and even the Front.

Reducement. Wheel off your right half-Ranks, and double your left Flank entire to the left. Face outward, and right half-Ranks wheel about to the right, moving forward until they range even abreast with their left Flank, to your Leader.

Command. Wheel off your Reer half-Files, and double your Front to the left entire.

Direction.

Direction. Half-files face to the Reer, and wheele about to the right, move forwards, and double the Front to the left entire.

Reducement. Wheele off your left half-Ranks, and double your right Flank entire to the right. Face outward left half-Ranks, wheel about to the left, and move forward until you have doubled the right Flank, to your Leader.

Command. Wheel your Reer half-files inward into the midst, and double your Front inward entire.

Direction. Front-half-files open from the midst, until you be clear of the standing part, then face to your Leader; half-files face about, and wheel your Reer inward into the midst, move forward until you have doubled the Front.

Reducement. The inmost Files that doubled, wheel about to the right and left outward, and double entire the Depth of the outmost Files, after face to your Leader, and close Files to the midst to Order.

The inmost Files must have distance from the outmost Files, before they can begin to wheel.

CHAP. XXXIII.

A divisional Doubling to the Front by Wheeling.

Command. WHeel off your Reer half-files, and double your Front by Division.

Direction. Half-files face to the Reer, and wheel about to the right and left, move forward, and double the Front.

Reducement. The outmost Files upon each Flank that doubled, wheel about to the right and left inward, and double entire the Depth of the inmost Files, face to your Leader.

Here likewise must convenient distance be given from the midst, for the outmost Files to wheel about.

Here endeth the *Doublings* that properly belong unto the Front according to the practise of these times, whether they be Entire or Divisional, and of their several kinds; as first, take them of themselves in the plain way, after by Counter-marches, as by the Bringers-up. Lastly, by Wheelings, and that first by Entire, after by Divisional. But here by the way, no Leader is tied to do all these Doublings in his Exercise at once, but to use part of them what he shall think fit. Yet, again, if he desire to be throughly knowing in all the Doublings of Front, Reer, and both Flanks, and to shew them unto the Souldiers, he may then begin first to go over all the words of Command for Doublings to the Front, informing his Souldiers of their several uses for service, at one time or another, and then proceed to shew the use of the several Doublings to the Flanks, and next to the Reer, which in this place I hold needless to give words of Command for the Doubling thereunto, in regard the former words of Command used to the Front, with small alteration will serve to the Reer.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Entire Doublings to the right Flank.

Command. FIles to the right double.

Direction. Every even file from the right by a half-turning at three steps double the odd.

Reducement. Ranks to the left double; or, Files as you were.

Command. Files to the right and left, double outward.

Direction. Every even File from the Flanks move, and by three steps double the odd.

Reducement. Ranks to the right and left double inward; or, Files as you were.

Command. Double your Files to the right and left inward.

Direction. Every even File from the midst move inward side-wise, and double the odd.

Reducement. Ranks to the right and left double outward; or, Files as you were.

Command. Double your Files to the right advancing.

Direction. Every even File from the right move forwards, and by three steps double the odd.

Reducement. Ranks to the right double.

Command. Double your Files outward advancing.

Direction. Every even File from the Flanks, move forwards, and by three steps double the odd.

Reducement. Ranks to the right and left double outward.

Command. Double your Files to the right and left inward advancing.

Direction. Every even File from the midſt move forwards, and by three ſteps double the odd.

Reducement. Ranks to the right and left double inward.

Command. Left half-Ranks double your right Flank to the right.

Direction. Face all to the right, and left half-Ranks move forwards to the right, and double your right Flank to your Leader.

Reducement. Double your Ranks to the Left entire; or left half-Ranks march forth into your places.

Command. Left half-Ranks double your right Flank to the left.

Direction. Face all to the right, and left half-Ranks move forwards to the left until you have doubled the right Flank to your Leader.

Reducement. Double your Ranks to the right entire to the Reer, face to the Reer, and the even Ranks from the Reer, move forth, and double the odd to your Leader.

Command. Left half-Ranks double your right Flank to the right and left outward.

Direction. Face all to the right; and left-half-Ranks move to the right and left outward, and double your right Flank to your Leader.

Reducement. Front and Reer half-Files double your Ranks entire to the left Flank; Front half-Files face about, and every even Rank from the midſt move forth, and double Ranks entire towards the left Flank, face to your Leader.

Command. Left half-Ranks double your right Flank to the right and left inward.

Direction. Face all to the right; and left half-Ranks move forwards to the right and left inward, and double the right Flank, face to your Leader.

Reducement. Front and Reer half-Files double your Ranks entire to the left Flanks; half-Files face about, and every even Rank from the Front and Reer, move forth, and double your Ranks entire towards the left Flank, face to your Leader.

Command. Left half-Ranks double your right Flank to the right by Counter-march.

Direction. Right half-Ranks face to the right, left half-Ranks turn off to the left, move forwards, and double your right Flank, face to your Leader.

Reducement. Double your Ranks to the left entire, every man placing himſelf on the outſide of his left-hand-man.

Command. Left half-Ranks double your right Flank to your left by Counter-march.

Direction. Right half-Ranks face to the right, and left half-Ranks turn off to the right, and double your right Flank to the left, face to your Leader.

Reducement. Double your Ranks to the right entire to the Reer, every man placing himſelf on the outſide of his right-hand-man; face to the Reer, and every even Rank from the Reer, move forth to the right, and double the odd; face to your Leader.

Command. Left half-Ranks double your right Flank to the right and left outward by Counter-march.

Direction. Right half-Ranks face to the right, and left half-Ranks face to the left, and turn off to the right and left, moving forward until you have doubled the right Flank to the right and left outward; face to your Leader.

Reducement. Front and Reer half-files double your Ranks entire to the left-Flank, every man placing himſelf on the outſide of his right and left-hand-man. Front half-Files face about, and every even Rank from the midſt move forth to the left Flank, and double the odd, placing your ſelves on the outſide of your right-hand-men, and every even Rank from the Reer half-Files move forth, and double the odd, placing your ſelves on the outſide of your left-hand-men; face to your Leader.

Command. Left half-Ranks double your right-Flank to the right and left inward, by Counter-march.

Direction

Direction. Face all to the right and left outward, left half-Ranks turn off to the right and left inward, move forward until you have doubled the right Flank; face to your Leader.

Reducement. Front and Reer half Files double your Ranks entire to the left-Flank, every man placing himself on the outside of his right and left-hand-man; half-Files face about, and every even Rank from the Reer, move forth to the left-Flank, and double the odd, placing your selves on the outside of your right-hand-men, and every even Rank from the Front move forth, and double the odd, placing your selves on the outside of your left-hand men; face to your Leader.

Command. Double your Files to the right entire advancing.

Direction. Every even File from the right, move straight forth until you be clear, and double the odd.

Reducement. Half-files double your Front to the right, or Front half-Files double your Reer to the right.

Command. Files double your Depth to the right entire.

Direction. Every even File from the right face about, move down until you are clear of the Reer, and double the Depth of the odd Files; face to your Leader.

Reducement. Half-files double your Front to the left, or Front half-Files double your Reer to the left.

Command. Double your Files inward entire to the right.

Direction. Half-files of every even File from the left face about, even Files from the left move forwards until you are clear of the standing part, after face all to the right, and then every even File from the right, move forwards into the Intervals, and double entire the odd; face to your Leader.

Reducement. The three first, and the three last Ranks double the six middlemost Ranks to the right; the three first Ranks face about, and move down to the midst by their own left-hands; and the three last Ranks move forwards to the midst, to their own right-hands; face to your Leader.

Command. Double your Files to the right entire advancing, every man placing himself before his Leader.

Direction. Every even File from the right, advance forwards, and double the odd, every man placing himself before his Leader.

Reducement. Front half-Files by Counter-march double your Reer to the right; Front half-Files turn off to the left, and double the Reer; face to your Leader.

Command. Files double your Depth to the right, every man falling behind his Bringer-up.

Direction. Every even File from the right, face about to the right, and double the odd by placing your selves behind your Bringers-up.

Reducement. Bringers-up double your Front to the left.

Command. Left half-Ranks double your right-Flank entire advancing.

Direction. Left half-Ranks march straight forth, until you are clear of the standing part, after move to the right (being first faced there) and double the right-Flank; face to your Leader.

Reducement. Front half-Files double your Reer to the right entire, face to the left, and move clear of the standing part, after face to the Reer, move down, and even the Reer; face to your Leader.

Command. Left half-Ranks double entire the Depth of the right-Flank.

Direction. Left half-Ranks face about to the right, and move down until you are clear of the standing part, after face to the left, and move forward until you have doubled the Depth of your right-Flank; face to your Leader.

Reducement. Half-files double your Front to the left entire, face to the left, and march clear of the standing part, after face to your Leader, march up and even the Front.

Command. Left half-Ranks double your right-Flank inward entire.

Direction. Half-files of the right half-Ranks face to the Reer, right half-Ranks move forward until you are clear of the standing part, face all to the right, and left half-Ranks move forwards, and double the right-Flank; face to your Leader.

Reducement.

Reducement. The three firſt, and the three laſt Ranks double the ſix middlemoſt Ranks entire to the right-Flank; the three firſt, and the three laſt Ranks face to the right, and march untill you are clear of the ſtanding part, after face inward; march, and cloſe your Diviſions, and face to your Leader.

CHAP. XXXV.

Diviſional Doublings to the right Flank.

Command. Double your Files to the right by *Diviſion.*

Direction. Half-files of the even Files from the right, face to the Reer; even Files march clear of the ſtanding part, after move to the right and left, and double the odd Files; face to your *Leader.*

Reducement. The three firſt, and the three laſt Ranks, double the three middlemoſt Ranks to the left; the three firſt Ranks face about, and march down by your own right hands into the midſt of Ranks; and the three laſt Ranks move forwards to the midſt, to your own left hands; face to your Leader.

Command. Double your Files to the right by *Diviſion*, every man placing himſelf before his Leader, and his Bringer-up.

Direction. Half-files of the even Files from the right, face to the Reer, the even Files march, and double the odd, every man placing himſelf before his Leader, and Bringer-up; face to your Leader.

Reducement. The three firſt, and the three laſt Ranks, double the ſix middlemoſt Ranks to the left, every man placing himſelf before his Leader, and his Bringer-up; the three firſt Ranks face about to the left, and move down to the midſt of Ranks by your own right hands, placing your ſelves before your Bringers-up; and the three laſt Ranks march forwards unto the midſt, placing your ſelves before your Leaders; to your Leader.

Command. Left half-Ranks double your right Flank by *Diviſion.*

Direction. Half-files of the left half-Ranks face about to the right, the left half-Ranks move clear of the ſtanding part; after face all to the right-Flank, the left half-Ranks moving forward, until they have ranged even abreſt with the right-Flank; face to your Leader.

Reducement. The three firſt, and the three laſt Ranks, double the ſix middlemoſt Ranks entire to the left-Flank; the three firſt, and the three laſt Ranks, face to the left-Flank, and move clear of the ſtanding part, after face inward, march and cloſe your *Diviſion*; face to your Leader.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Entire Doublings to right Flank by Wheeling.

Command. Wheel off your left half-Ranks, and double your right Flank entire to the right.

Direction. Face outward, and left half-Ranks wheel about to the left, and move forward until you have doubled the right Flank entire to the right; face to your Leader.

Reducement. Wheel off your Reer half-Files, and double your Front to the left entire; half-Files face to the Reer, and wheel about to the right, and march forwards until you have ranged your ſelves even with the Front.

Command. Wheel off your left half-Ranks, and double your right Flank entire to the left.

Direction. Face outward left half-Ranks, wheel about to the right, & move forward until you have doubled the right flank entire to the left, face to your Leader.

Reducement. Wheel off your Front half-Files, and double your Reer to the right entire; half-Files face about, and Front half-Files wheel about to the left, move down, and double the Reer to the right; face to your Leader.

Command. Wheel the left half-Ranks inward into the midſt, and double your right Flank inward entire.

Direction. Half-files of the right half-Ranks face about, right half-Ranks move clear of the ſtanding part, then face to the right, and the left half-Ranks face to the left, and wheeling inward into the midſt, moving forward until they have doubled the right Flank inward entire; to your Leader.

Reducement.

Reducement. Wheel off from the right Flank the ſix middlemoſt Ranks, and double your Front and Reer entire to the left Flank: the ſix middle-Ranks face to the right, and wheel about to the right and left, moving forward until they are clear of the ſtanding part; and after facing to the Front and Reer, they move again, and double the Front and Reer toward the left Flank; face all to your Leader, march forwards, and cloſe your Diviſions.

In wheeling the ſix middle Ranks from the right Flank, they muſt have ground ſufficient for them to wheel about.

Or if they continue their Aſpect to the right Flank, then command the ſix middlemoſt Files to wheel off to the right and left, and to double entire the depth of the outmoſt Files, then face to their Leader, and cloſe their Diviſions.

CHAP. XXXVII.

A Diviſional Doubling to the right Flank by Wheeling.

Command. WHeel off your left half-Ranks, and double your right Flank by Diviſion.

Direction. Face outward, and left half-Ranks wheel off to the right and left about, and move forward until you have ranged even, and doubled the right Flank; to your Leader.

Reducement. Wheel off the three firſt, and the three laſt Ranks, and double the ſix middlemoſt Ranks entire to the left Flank the three laſt Ranks face about, and wheel to the right about, moving up towards the midſt of the left-Flank, and the three firſt Ranks at the ſame time wheel about to the left, and move down to the midſt of the left Flank; face to your Leader.

Or if they continue their aſpect to the right Flank, then command the outmoſt Files to that doubled to wheel about to the right and left inward, and double entire the Depth of the inmoſt Files, to your Leader.

Here endeth all the plain Doublings to the right Flank, performed by ſeveral Counter-marches and Wheelings, which to any ingenious Souldier are ſufficient directions to know how to double the left Flank, only altering the hand by the words of Command.

And here fellow-Souldier endeth all the ſeveral kinds of Doublings, which if any ſhall ſeem hard or difficult unto thee, either in their Commands, Directions, or Reducements, thou mayſt (care being taken) with much eaſe and delight perform the ſame. And here the Captain is to take ſpecial notice, when he comes to the point of Doublings, that his propereſt way will be firſt to double the Front, as being the moſt honourable part of the Body, and next the Reer, and after either to the right or left Flank, leaving it to his diſcretion to uſe as many of them as he ſhall think fitting, and convenient for his Exerciſe. And although I have ſomewhat varied from the practiſe of former times in uſing more plenty of words of Command, the ripeneſs and curioſity of Wits in theſe our days, enforced me unto it; for they having much refined the *Military Diſcipline*, will not be pleaſed with ordinary ſtuff (as to ſay, *As you were*) which, I confeſs, would ſave the Captain a great deal of pains, and be more eaſie to the apprehenſion and capacity of every private Souldier, for his returning back unto his place again. Yet if Command ſhould be given to double any part of the Body, that Leader would quickly lie under a hard cenſure, and be judged in moſt mens opinions inſufficient, that could not find out ſome other words of Command to reduce them again. Endeavouring therefore to give full ſatisfaction to both parties, I have taken the pains to ſet down other words of Command for *Reducement*, whereby thoſe which ſhall *profeſs* themſelves curious, may cull out ſuch plenty as may beſt pleaſe their *genius*; adviſing them withal not to preſume in the exerciſing of their private Companies, before themſelves be firſt well verſt, and truly knowing in all and every of the ſeveral Commands, Directions, and Reducements before mentioned; which being obtained, they may confidently and boldly proceed, ſo to inure their Souldiers in the practiſe thereof, that their own knowledge in a ſhort time will reduce them to their former places without uſing theſe thred-bare words, *As you were*; variety being more profitable and delightful unto them, (provided they underſtand it) then to accuſtom them in an ordinary and plain way of reducing.

But

But here ſome men will be ready to carp and ſay, that I have troubled my ſelf to little purpoſe, in ſetting down more *Doublings* then are uſed abroad upon ſervice. To whom I anſwer, that there are none (if rightly underſtood) but are of ſingular uſe one time or another, either in private *Meetings*, or in thoſe great *Nurſeries* of *Military Diſcipline*, the famous *Academies* of this our Iſland, the *Artillery* and *Military Gardens*, who for Field-ſervice have train'd up, and ſent forth many worthy, able and gallant Souldiers into the Armies lately raiſed in our Nation between the *King* and *Parliament*, whom I pray God happily to reconcile. But, ſuppoſe many of theſe *Doublings* have not been ſeen by ſome to be uſed in the field; Are they not therefore uſeful? perhaps not at ſuch time they have had no occaſion for to uſe them all; which if not, muſt they be rejected? I anſwer poſitively, that being rightly enquired into, they have in them very uſeful and ſerviceable things againſt an Enemy, whether it be in the Field, or in Garriſon. As for Example; the Muskettiers being brought either all into the Front or Reer, or upon one of the Flanks, which often happeth, an Enemy appearing there, then they would be of ſingular good uſe for our advantage, and very diſadvantageous to the Enemy. The like may be ſpoken of the Pikes, who are by ſeveral of theſe *Doublings* brought into thoſe places, being there very ſerviceable to receive a deſperate Charge of Horſe, if upon any of theſe parts they ſhould fall on. Obſerve, further, that in many of theſe Doublings, as the one arms ſhall face or charge againſt an Enemy, ſo contrariwiſe the other lies more ſecure in ſafety to be preſerved from danger of the ſhot. Moreover, (according unto the number of men either in Length or Depth) a Leader may by theſe words of Command or the like, at the ſame time double his Front, Reer, or Midſt, by doubling of Ranks; and may farther make uſe of them at one and the ſame time to double by Files his right, left Flank and Midſt, all at one inſtant. But I ſhall not need to ſet down words of Command for the doubling Front, Reer, Flanks and Midſt, after this manner, but leave that unto the apt Souldier to make uſe of ſuch words of Command formerly ſhewen, and to frame them ſuitable for any ſuch purpoſe ſo intended. But before I ſhall conclude concerning the uſe of theſe Doublings, as I ſaid before, there are many of them, which by command will bring any men in the Body to fight, unto that part which ſhall be moſt weak, or aſſaulted by an enemy. And again, he may caſt them ſo into the Body by a doubling, as ſhall preſerve from danger whom he ſhall think fit. And to ſay more, there is no part of the Body or Arms but by words of Command in doublings may be brought forth as *Frontiers* againſt the enemy, and may be placed again into the midſt of the Body for more ſecurity, and others in like manner may be brought forth for their relief. Therefore it much concerns all Souldiers and Commanders to be truly knowing in all the ſeveral kinds of Doublings, out of which he may make ſingular good uſe according to his diſcretion, at all ſuch times as need ſhall require, whether it be in Field, or otherwiſe in Garriſon.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of Inverſion and Converſion.

NOt to omit any thing which may be beneficial for the knowledge of all them that intend to be good proficients in the *Art of Military Diſcipline*, my ſubject in this Chapter ſhall be of Ranks filing, and Files filing, and Ranks ranking, and Files ranking, which are by ſome called *Inverſion* and *Converſion*; yet ſeldom mentioned by any Leader in the time of his Exerciſe, for this reaſon, as I ſuppoſe, becauſe the Souldiers for the moſt part are unacquainted with them; which cauſeth all our Leaders in our private Meetings here in *London*, to deliver forth unto their Souldiers ſuch words of Command as may readily and aptly be underſtood by them, which are, Ranks, File to the right or left; or, Files, File to any hand; which is no other then *Inverſion*. And again, Ranks, rank to the right or left, either in equal or unequal parts, or entire to the Front; or Files to rank in the like kind, may be termed *Converſion*: And, in my opinion, they do the better that ſhall thus expreſs themſelves to the capacity of every Souldier, then for to puzzle them with the words *Inverſion* & *Converſion*. I intend therefore without curioſity

and

curiosity plainly to set down their several Commands, Directions, and Reducements, keeping my former method concerning Doublings. For in all and every one of them, they do either double the length or depth of the Front, Reer, Midst, or Flanks; no part of the *Military Exercise* affording more plenty of matter then they, carrying always along with them many things of excellent use. For example, suppose a Prince, General, or any other person of quality were to pass thorow the Company, a discreet commander would presently command their Ranks to *invert*, or file to the right and left outward, which immediately becomes (as it were) a Street or Gallery, for the honouring and securing of their persons. Moreover, it is of use for the lodging of the Colours, or upon Funeral-occasions, or taking their leave from their Captain, where they may pour forth their Volleys of shot all at one and the same time. To be short, being necessitated to march against a Battery, it avoids the danger of the great Ordnance, and likewise secures the Front of the Battalia from the imminent danger of any great shower of small shot poured forth by the Enemy. As likewise it is of excellent use to march over a narrow Bridge, or thorow a Lane, Thicket, or Salliport, or such like difficult passages; or if any Commander have a desire to use ancient Figures, by it he may make the *Saw*, *Sheers*, or *Diamond*; or being in one File, they may aptly be drawn into a *Ring*, where he that is an able posture-man standing in the midst, may shew unto them their several postures, and after easily reduce them again: and thus much briefly of *Inversion*, or *Ranks filing*.

Next come we to shew the excellent uses and services which may be performed by *Conversion*, as first perceiving any man of worth to stand before the Front of the Battail, or to pass by either of the Flanks, then Ranks ranking, or Files ranking into the Front, or Ranks wheeling to either of the Flanks, by these Commands the Souldiers aspects are thither brought to present unto him a volley of shot. It is likewise very useful for the making of a Line against a Breast-work, or lining of Hedges, carrying it self several ways secretly to lie in *Ambuscado*, whereby they may fire upon the Enemy as he marcheth by. Or approaching against any Fort or place of danger, they may daringly make a large Front and firing upon them; after filing to the right or left, making large Intervals, they much preserve themselves from the danger of the great shot proceeding from the Enemy. Again, Ranks ranking either in equal or unequal parts, is of singular good use upon a narrow passage, where they can march but two, three, four, or six abrest; the Commander, notwithstanding they marched before twenty abrest, may by it bring them to such small numbers, whereby he may much preserve them in time of imminent danger and peril. To dwell no longer upon this discourse, *Inversion* and *Conversion* many times require larger distance then any other of the Motions, as sometimes double distance: or twice double distance, wherefore being so many occasions for the use of them both, I hold it requisite for a Leader frequently to practise his Souldiers in them; no part of the *Art Military* affording more commendations to the Souldiers that shall readily and handsomly perform the same. Briefly therefore passing over what might be more spoken concerning them, I shall in the next place set them all forth in their full view, leaving every discreet Souldier to his own liberty, to make use of as many of them as he shall think fit, and to use them after what manner he pleaseth.

CHAP. XXXIX.

The words of Command for Ranks ranking, and Files ranking to the Front, they being twelve abrest, and six deep.

Command. RAnks, rank to the right 2, 3, 4, or 6, as occasion shall require.

Direction. If to two, the two outmost men upon the right are to move away, the next two to fall behind them until the first Rank hath made six Ranks, and the rest doing the like until the first six Ranks are become thirty six.

Reducement. Ranks, rank twelve to the left; the first Rank is to stand, the rest are to move away two and two, until they have made up twelve in one Rank, and the rest are to do the like until they are made up all again as at first; or, command, Ranks, *rank as you were*. The same rule is to be observed if you rank to any of the other numbers, to divide them accordingly.

Command. Ranks, rank three to the left.

Direction. The firſt three men upon the left are to move away, the next three are to fall in behind toward the left, until the firſt Rank have made four Ranks; the reſt are to do the like, until they have made them 24 Ranks.

Reducement. Ranks, rank 12 to the right: the firſt Rank is to ſtand, the reſt are to move forth by three and three, until they have made twelve in one Rank; the reſt are to do the like, until they be as they were at firſt; or, Ranks, rank as you were.

Command. Ranks, rank three to the right and left outward.

Direction. The three outmoſt men of the firſt Rank upon the right, and the three outmoſt men upon the left, move away; the next three of each hand in the ſame Rank are to do the like, and every Rank throughout to follow ſucceſſively, dividing themſelves three to one hand, and three to the other, until they have made twelve Ranks in each Diviſion, and falling in the Reer ſucceſſively to each hand of the firſt Rank.

Reducement. Ranks, rank 12 to the right and left inward; or, Ranks, rank as you were.

Command. Ranks, rank intire to the right into the Front.

Direction. The firſt Rank ſtand, the reſt face to the right, and move away, every Rank placing it ſelf ſucceſſively to the right, until they ſtand all in one Rank in the Front.

Reducement. Ranks, rank 12 to the left; the firſt 12 men upon the left are to ſtand, the next 12 are to face to the left, and to move and fall in the Reer of the firſt, and ſo conſequently all the reſt; or elſe to command, Ranks, rank as you were.

Command. Ranks, rank intire to the left into the Front.

Direction. The firſt Rank ſtand, the reſt face to the left, and move until they have ſucceſſively placed themſelves, and made one intire Rank into the Front.

Reducement. Ranks, rank 12 to the right, the 12 outmoſt men upon the right ſtand, the reſt face to the right and move, making 12 in every Rank: or, Ranks, rank as you were.

Command. Ranks, rank outward into the Front.

Direction. The firſt Rank ſtand, the reſt face outward, and place your ſelves ſucceſſively into the Front, facing after to your Leader.

Reducement. Ranks, rank 12 to the right and left inward; the 12 middlemoſt men ſtand, the reſt face inward, and move, ranking 12 ſucceſſively behind the firſt Rank, and after facing to their Leader, and to even their Ranks.

Command. Ranks, rank inward into the Front.

Direction. The firſt Rank is to move away to the right and left, the next Rank moving up into his ground, doing the like, and conſequently ſo all the reſt, until the laſt Rank be come up intire into the Front.

Reducement. Ranks, rank ſix to the right and left outward, the firſt ſix upon the right, and the firſt ſix upon the left ſtand, the reſt move outward, falling in the Reer of the firſt Rank, ranking ſix to the right and left, and after cloſing their Diviſions.

Command. Files, rank to the right into the Front.

Direction. Files, open to the left to your double Diſtance, and Ranks cloſe forwards to Cloſe Order, and move up to the right into the Front.

Reducement. Ranks, file ſix to the left; the firſt ſix upon the left are to fall into a File, the reſt doing the like, until you have made 12 Files, as at firſt: or command, Ranks, file as you were.

Command. Files, rank to the left into the Front.

Direction. Every man is to move forward to the left into the Front, beginning from the Leader of the Files, and moving up ſucceſſively, making one intire Rank.

Reducement. Ranks, file ſix to the right; the ſix outmoſt men upon the right are to fall into a File, the reſt in like manner are to do the ſame: or, Ranks, file as you were.

Command. Files, rank outward into the Front.

Direction. Right and left Half-ranks cloſe into the midſt, to Cloſe order; after move to the right and left outward, until they be come up into the Front.

Reducement. Ranks, file ſix to the right and left inward: the middle men are to ſtand, the reſt are to move ſide-ways to the right and left inward, and to file as before commanded; or, Ranks, file as you were.

Command. Files, rank inward into the Front.

Direction.

Direction. Right and left Half-ranks open from the midſt to twice double diſtance, and Files move up to the right and left entire into the Front.

Reducement. Ranks, file ſix to the right and left outward, the outmoſt men ſtand, the reſt move to the right and left outward, filing according to Command, and after to cloſe their Diviſions.

CHAP. XL.

Ranks ranking into the Front by Countermarch.

Command. RAnks, rank entire into the Front, every man placing himſelf on the outſide of his right-hand-man.

Direction. The firſt Rank ſtand, the reſt move away to the right ſucceſſively into the Front, placing themſelves on the outſide of their right-hand-men.

Reducement. Ranks, rank twelve to the left, every man placing himſelf on the outſide of his left-hand-man; the firſt twelve upon the left are to ſtand, the reſt are ſucceſſively to fall in behind the firſt Rank, placing themſelves as before commanded; or, Ranks, rank as you were, placing your ſelves on the outſide of your left-hand-men.

Command. Ranks, rank entire to the left into the Front, every man placing himſelf on the outſide of his left-hand-man.

Direction. The firſt Rank ſtand, the reſt move away to the left ſucceſſively, placing your ſelves on the outſide of your left-hand-men.

Reducement. Ranks, rank twelve to the right, every man placing himſelf on the outſide of his right-hand-man; or, Ranks, rank as you were, every man placing himſelf as before.

Command. Ranks, rank outward into the Front, every man placing himſelf on the outſide of his right and left-hand-man.

Direction. The firſt Rank ſtand, the reſt move forth to the right and left, and ſucceſſively to fall into the Front, every man placing himſelf on the outſide of his right and left-hand-man.

Reducement. Ranks, rank twelve to the right and left inward, every man placing himſelf on the inſide of his right and left-hand-man; the twelve middle men are to ſtand, the reſt are to move to the right and left inward, ſix to one hand, and ſix to the other, making twelve in Rank, and falling behind the firſt.

Command. Ranks, rank inward into the Front, every man placing himſelf on the inſide of his right and left-hand-man.

Direction. Right and left Half-ranks open from the midſt to twice double *Diſtance*; the firſt Rank of each Diviſion is to ſtand, the reſt are to move ſucceſſively to the right and left inward into the Front, making one entire rank.

Reducement. Ranks, rank ſix to the right and left outward, every man placing himſelf on the outſide of his right and left-hand-man; the firſt Rank of each Diviſion ſtand, the reſt move to the right and left outward, ranking as before commanded, falling ſucceſſively in the reer of the firſt rank, and after to cloſe their Diviſions.

CHAP. XLI.

Files ranking into the Front by Wheeling.

Command. FIles, rank to the right into the Front by wheeling.

Direction. Face to the right, and wheel to the left, until they ſtand even abreſt in one entire Rank in the Front.

The Files are to be at double diſtance, and rank at cloſe Order.

Reducement. Ranks, file ſix to the left by wheeling; face all to the Reer, and the firſt ſix men then upon the right, wheel to the right, and ſo conſequently all the reſt wheeling by ſixes to the right, their Leaders that were before, being the hinges of the motion, and after face to their Leader.

Command. Files, rank to the left into the Front by wheeling.

Direction. Face to the left, and wheel to the right, until they make all one entire Rank in the Front.

Reducement. Ranks, file ſix to the right by wheeling; face to the Reer, and the ſix outmoſt men upon the left, wheel to the left, the next ſix are to follow, and conſequently all the reſt, until they have made twelve Files as at the firſt, and after face to their Leader.

Command. Files, rank outward into the Front by wheeling.

Direction. Right and left half-Ranks close into the midſt to *Order*, and face outward, wheeling to the right and left, until you are one entire Rank.

Reducement. Rank, file ſix to the right and left inward by wheeling, face about to the right; and the twelve middlemoſt men are to wheel to the right and left inward, and the reſt are likewiſe to do the ſame by Sixes, until they have made themſelves into twelve Files; after face to their Leader.

Command. Files, rank inward into the Front by wheeling.

Direction. Right and left half-Ranks open from the midſt to twice double diſtance, after face inward, and wheel to the right and left inward, until they are all in one Rank in the Front.

Reducement. Ranks, File ſix to the right and left outward, face all about, and wheel by Sixes to the right and left, the Leaders being the hinges of the Motion; after face to the Front, and right and left half-Ranks may cloſe into the midſt again to their double diſtance.

Here endeth the ranking into the Front, with all their ſeveral kinds: the Reer challengeth next place, but I ſhall ſpare the pains and labour to ſet them down, in regard that he who hath a mind to rank his men thither, may, if he pleaſe, make uſe of all the former words of Command for the performance of the ſame, facing them upon every Command to the Reer. I come therefore in the next place only to mention the ranking into the midſt by Ranks and Files, which may likewiſe be performed by the former words of Command, provided they have convenient diſtance, and be faced to the midſt, and after the Command is executed, to face them to their firſt Front. Yet there is remaining a ranking unto all theſe places at once; for the performance of which, obſerve theſe few words of Command following.

CHAP. XLII.

Ranks ranking, or Files ranking at one and the ſame time into Front, Reer, and Midſt.

They are to ſtand at Order *in Rank and File.*

Command. RAnks, rank outward into the Front, Reer, and Midſt.

Direction. The two laſt Ranks are to face about; the firſt Rank, and the laſt Rank, and the third Rank from the Front, are to ſtand; the other three are to move forth, ſix to the right, and ſix to the left, until they have ranked unto all theſe places, after face to the Front, and the laſt Rank moving forward to open *Order*.

Reducement. Ranks, rank twelve to the right and left inward; the laſt Rank face about, the twelve middlemoſt men of each Rank are to ſtand, the ſix outmoſt men of each Rank are to face inward, to move and fall into the right and left behind the middlemoſt men, after the two laſt Ranks are to face to the Front.

Command. Ranks, rank inward into the Front, Reer, and Midſt.

Direction. Right and left half-Ranks open from the midſt to twice double diſtance, the two laſt Ranks face to the Reer, the firſt and laſt Rank, and the third Rank from the Front ſtand, the reſt move to the right and left inward, ranking into Front, Reer, and Midſt; after that the laſt Rank is to face to the Front, and to cloſe forward to open *Order*.

Reducement. Ranks, rank ſix to the right and left outward, the laſt Rank face about, and the outmoſt ſix men upon each Rank are to ſtand, and the middle men are to divide themſelves ſix to the right hand, and ſix to the left, and to fall in the Reer of the firſt, laſt, and middle Rank; after the laſt Rank is to face to the Front, and then to cloſe Ranks and Files to their *Order*.

Ranks ranking by Countermarch

Command. Ranks, rank outward into the Front, Reer, and Midſt, every man placing himſelf on the outſide of his right and left-hand-man.

Direction. The two laſt Ranks face about, the firſt and laſt Rank, and the third Rank from the Front ſtand, the reſt move forth to the right and left, ranking into Front, Reer, and Midſt, placing themſelves on the outſide of their right and left-hand-men; face to your Leader.

Reducement. Ranks, rank twelve to the right and left inward, placing your ſelves

ſelves on the inſide of your right and left-hand-men, the laſt Rank face about, the twelve middlemoſt men in each Rank are to ſtand, and the outmoſt ſix men in each Rank are to move to the right and left inward, placing themſelves in the Reer of the former Ranks, and on the inſide of their right and left-hand-men, facing to their Leader.

Command. Ranks, rank inward into the Front, Reer, and Midſt, every man placing himſelf on the inſide of his right and left-hand-man.

Direction. Right and left half-Ranks open from the midſt to twice double diſtance, ſtanding then at *Order* in each diviſion in Rank and File; the two laſt Ranks face about, and the firſt, laſt, and third Rank from the Front ſtand, the reſt move inward, placing themſelves on the inſide of their right and left-hand-men; after the laſt Rank may face about, and move forward to open *Order*.

Reducement. Ranks, rank ſix to the right and left outward, every man placing himſelf on the outſide of his right and left-hand-man, the laſt Rank face about, the ſix outmoſt men of each Rank ſtand, and the twelve middlemoſt men in each Rank are to divide themſelves ſix to the right, and ſix to the left, falling in the Reer of the outmoſt men, placing themſelves on the outſide of their right and left-hand-men; after face to the Front, and Ranks and Files cloſe to the midſt to *Order*.

Of Files ranking into Front, Reer, and Midſt.

Command. Files, rank outward into Front, Reer, and Midſt.

Direction. The two laſt Ranks face about, the firſt, laſt, and third Rank from the Front ſtand, the reſt move to the right and left, after the manner of doubling of Ranks, and rank to Front, Reer, and Midſt, as before commanded; and after the laſt Rank face to the Front, cloſing forward to *Order*.

Reducement. Ranks, file ſix to the right and left inward, the laſt Rank face about, and the even men from the midſt of Files are to fall in behind the odd, after the manner of doubling Files to the right and left inward, and after the two laſt Ranks are to face to the Front.

Command. Files, rank inward into Front, Reer, and Midſt.

Direction. They ſtanding at the diſtance of *Order* in Rank and File, command right and left Half-ranks to open from the Midſt ſomething more then to open *Order*, after the two laſt Ranks are to face about, and the firſt, laſt, and third Rank from the Front are to ſtand, the reſt are to move to the right and left inward, after the manner of doubling Ranks to the right and left inward; after the laſt Rank is to face to the Front, and to cloſe forwards to open *Order*.

Reducement. Ranks, file ſix to the right and left outward, the laſt Rank face about, and every man from the Flanks is to move outward, after the manner of doubling Files to the right and left outward; then the two laſt Ranks are to face to the Front, and the whole Body may cloſe their Ranks and Files into the Midſt to *Order*.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of Files ranking by Wheeling.

Command. Files, rank outward into Front, Reer, and Midſt, by Wheeling.

The Ranks muſt be at Cloſe Order, and the Files at Open Order for theſe three words of Command following, and it would be better to divide them into three Diviſions, that is to ſay, between every two Ranks to have ſome ſix foot of ground interval, that they may more diſtinctly perform the ſame.

Direction. The two laſt Ranks face about, after face all outward, and wheel to the right and left, by two and two, until they be ranked into Front, Reer, and Midſt: the laſt Rank may after move forwards unto the ſame diſtance the former ſtands at, being firſt faced to their Leader.

Reducement. Ranks, file ſix to the right and left inward by wheeling, the firſt two Ranks face about, and then every particular Rank to wheel by two and two towards the midſt of Files, until they have made twelve Files as at firſt; and after face all to the Front.

Command. Files, rank inward into the Front, Reer, and Midſt by wheeling.

Direction. Right and left Half-ranks open from the midſt ſomething more then to open *Order*, the two laſt Ranks of each Diviſion face about; after face all inward,

ward, and wheel by two and two to the right and left, until they have ranked into Front, and Reer, and Midſt to the right and left inward; the laſt Rank is after to face to the Front, taking his diſtance conformable to the reſt.

Reducement. Ranks, file ſix to the right and left outward by wheeling, the two firſt Ranks face about, and each particular Rank is to wheel by two's towards the Flanks, until they have made twelve Files, as at firſt; after facing all to the Front, and cloſing their Ranks and Files into the midſt to *Order.*

Command. Files, rank inward into the midſt by wheeling.

Direction. Right and left Half-ranks open from the midſt to twice double diſtance, after face inward, and let them know that the Bringers-up of the Front Half-files and the Half-file-Leaders are the hinges of the Motion; after face them to the Front, and they will be in two Ranks.

Reducement. Ranks, file ſix to the right and left outward by wheeling, the laſt Rank face about, and both Ranks wheel to the right and left by threes, until they have made twelve Files as at firſt; after face all to the Front, and cloſe Files into the midſt to *Order.*

Command. Files, rank outward into the Front and Reer by wheeling.

Direction. Right and left Half-ranks cloſe into the midſt to *Order*, after face outward, and wheel to the right and left: the Bringers-up and the Leaders are the hinges of the Motion; and when they are brought into two Ranks, one in the Front, and the other in the Reer, face them to the Front.

Reducement. Ranks, file ſix to the right and left inward by wheeling, the firſt Rank face about, and both Ranks are to wheel by threes towards the midſt of Files, until they have filed according unto Command; after facing to their Leader, evening their Ranks, and ſtraightning their Files.

And thus much of *Converſion*, or *Ranks ranking*, or *Files ranking*, they having more variety in them, then many times can be uſeful, except it be to preſent unto the Souldiers ſome things that are new in the Motions, which many times they love to ſee. I could upon this Subject have much more enlarged my ſelf; but conceiving what is already ſet down may be ſufficient for the knowledge of any intelligible Souldier, I come therefore briefly to treat of *Inverſion*, or of *Ranks filing*, and *Files filing.*

CHAP. XLIV.

Of Ranks filing, or of Files filing, or of Inverſion, with their ſeveral ſorts and kinds.

Command. FIles, file to the right.

Direction. The right-hand File is to move away clear of the ſtanding part, and after the next File to fall in the Reer of the firſt, and conſequently ſo all the reſt until they become one File.

Reducement. File-leaders, lead up your Files to the left; or, Files, file ſix to the left.

Command. Files, file to the right entire advancing.

Direction. The right-hand File ſtand, the reſt move away ſucceſſively, placing themſelves in one direct File before the Front.

Reducement. Files, file ſix to the right into the Reer, face all about; or, Files, file ſix to the right towards the Front.

Command. Files, file inward into the right Flank.

Direction. Half-files face about, and the outmoſt Files then upon the left as they are ſo faced, are to move away forward, and conſequently all the reſt are to fall in behind them; the like is to be performed by the Front, the outmoſt File at the ſame time is to move away, and the reſt ſucceſſively falling in until they have made one entire File, after they are to face to the Front.

Reducement. Front Half-file, file three to the left; Reer Half-file face about, and file three to the right; face to your Leader, and cloſe your Diviſions.

Command. Files, file to the right by *Diviſion.*

Direction. Half-files face about: the outmoſt File upon the right is to ſtand, the reſt are to move forward, and to place themſelves ſucceſſively into one entire File, going forward after each other, and after face to the Front.

Reducement.

Reducement. Front-half-files, file three to the right, and Reer-half-files face about, and file three to the left; face to your Leader, and close your Divisions.

Command. Ranks, file to the right, every man placing himself behind his right-hand-man.

Ranks filing by way of Countermarch.

Direction. This may be done marching or standing; if marching, the right-hand-man of the first Rank doth first move away, the rest in the same Rank do fall in behind him, and consequently all the rest, until they make one intire File; if upon a Stand, the Ranks are to open backward to such a Distance, as they may conveniently fall into one File.

Reducement. Files, rank 12 to the left; or, Files, rank as you were.

Command. Ranks, file to the right, advancing, every man placing himself before his right-hand-man.

Direction. The outmost File stand, the rest are to move forward with their right leg, placing themselves before the right-hand-man.

The Ranks are to be at twice double Distance, & the Files at order.

Reducement. Files, rank 12 to the left; or, Files, rank as you were.

Command. Ranks, file to the right, every man placing himself before his Leader, and his Bringer-up.

Direction. The Half-files are to face about, onely the right-hand-file is to stand, the rest are to move forward, filing to the right Flank, every man placing himself before his Leader, and his Bringer-up; face to your Leader.

Reducement. Front-half-files, rank 12 to the right, Reer-half-files face about, and rank 12 to the left; face to your Leader, close your Divisions.

Command. Ranks, file inward into the right Flank, every man placing himself before his Leader, and his Bringer-up.

Direction. Half-files, face about: Front and Reer-half-files are to march to such convenient distance, as the Ranks may fall into the midst of the right Flank; after they are to face about, or to face to the midst of Ranks; and then they are to move forward into the right Flank, every man placing himself as before commanded, and after face to their Leader.

Reducement. Front-half-files, rank 12 to the left, Reer-half-files face about, and rank 12 to the right; face to your Leader, and close your Divisions.

Command. Files, file to the right, every man placing himself behind his Bringer-up.

Files filing by way of Countermarch.

Direction. The outmost File stand, the rest face about, and move forward each particular File to the left, placing themselves behind their Right-hand-file, and their Bringers-up.

Reducement. Files, file six to the left, every man placing himself before his Leader.

Command. Files, file to the right, every man placing himself before his Leader.

Direction. The Right-hand-file stand, the rest move forwards, every File successively placing themselves before their Leaders, and their Right-hand-file.

Reducement. Files, file six to the right into the Reer, every man placing himself before his Bringer-up; face all about, the last six men stand, the rest are to move, and to file six to the right, placing themselves before their Bringers-up, and after to face to the Front.

Command. Files, file to the right Flank by Division, every man placing himself before his Leader, and his Bringer-up.

Direction. Half-files face about; the Right-hand-file is to stand, the rest are to move forward to the right Flank, placing themselves before their Leaders, and their Bringers-up, making one intire File to the right; face to your Leader.

Reducement. Front-half-files, face about, and file three to the right, every man placing himself before his Bringer-up; and Reer-half-files, file three to the left, placing your selves before your Leaders; face to your Leader.

Command. Files, file inward into the right Flank, every man placing himself before his Leader, and his Bringer-up.

Direction. Half-files face about, and Front and Reer-half-files move forward, until there be sufficient Distance to file into the right Flank; after face them about to the midst of Ranks, then the files may move successively into the right

Flank

Flank, placing themſelves before their Leaders, and their Bringers-up; face to your Leader.

Reducement. Front-half-files, file three to the left, every man placing himſelf before his Leader; and Reer-half-files, face about, and file three to the right, every man placing himſelf before his Bringer-up; face to your Leader, and cloſe your Diviſions.

CHAP. XLV.

Ranks wheeling into the Flanks.

They ought to be at twice double Diſtance in rank, and at Cloſe order in file.

Command. RAnks, wheel to the right, into the right Flank.

Direction. Every particular Rank is to wheel to their right hand, until they have brought their Aſpects unto the right Flank; after face to the Front.

Reducement. Files, rank 12 to the right: the firſt man is to ſtand, the reſt are to move forward to the right ſucceſſively, 12 in a Rank to the right.

Command. Ranks, wheel to the left to the right Flank.

Direction. Face all about, and Ranks wheel to the left, until you have brought your Aſpects unto the right Flank; face to your Leader.

Reducement. Files, rank 12 to the left: the firſt man is to ſtand, the reſt are to move forwards, making up 12 abreſt to the left, until they have made ſix Ranks as at firſt.

Command. Ranks, wheel outward to the right Flank.

Direction. Half-files, face about; the firſt three Ranks wheel to the right, and the three laſt Ranks wheel to the left; to your Leader.

Reducement. Front-half-files, rank 12 to the right; Reer-half-files, face about, and rank 12 to the left; face to your Leader, march up and cloſe forwards to your due Diſtance.

Command. Ranks, wheel inward into the right Flank.

Direction. Half-files, face about; Front and Reer-half-files, march from the midſt to twice double diſtance; after Front and Reer-half-files, face about; Front-half-files, wheel your Ranks to the left; Reer-half-files, wheel your Ranks to the right, to your Leader.

Reducement. Front-half-files, rank 12 to the left; Reer-half-files, face about, and rank 12 to the right; face to your Leader, and cloſe your Diviſions.

The left Flank challengeth the next place; but I ſhall ſpare that pains, in regard it is to be done by the ſame words of Command, onely altering the hand: I come therefore in the next place to ſhew how Ranks and Files may file outward to both Flanks and midſt at one and the ſame time by proper words of Command, as followeth.

CHAP. XLVI.

Of Files filing, or Ranks filing to both the Flanks and the Midſt at one and the ſame time.

Command. FIles, file to the right and left of both Flanks, and the midſt of Files.

Direction. The outmoſt File upon each Flank, and the two middle Files are to move away; the reſt are to fall in ſucceſſively behind to the right and left, filing to both Flanks, and to the midſt; after to ſtand, and even their Ranks, and ſtreighten their Files.

Reducement. Files, file ſix to right and left inward, moving between the Flanks and the middle files.

Command. Files, file to both Flanks, and to the midſt of Files advancing.

Direction. The outmoſt File upon each Flank ſtand, and ſo likewiſe the two inmoſt Files; the reſt move forth and place themſelves ſucceſſively filing, advancing toward both Flanks, and the midſt of Files.

Reducement. Files, file ſix to the right and left inward to the Reer, placing yourſelves between the Flanks and the middle files; the moving part is to face about, and to march down according to command as before expreſt, after face to their Leader.

Command.

Command. Files, file to both Flanks and the midſt by Diviſion.

Direction. The outmoſt File upon each Flank, and the two inmoſt Files, ſtand; Half-files of the other Files, face about, and march forth, and file by threes to the right and left into both Flanks and the midſt; facing to their Leader, they will ſtand in four Files eighteen deep.

They muſt be an order both in rank and file.

Reducement. The ſix middlemoſt men in each File ſtand; the three firſt and the three laſt Ranks, file ſix to the right and left inward: the three firſt Ranks face about; then moving by threes between the outmoſt File of each Flank and the middle Files, after facing to their Leader.

Command. Files, file inward into both Flanks and into the midſt of Files.

Direction. Half-files, face about; march all, and open from the midſt to twice double diſtance; face all about to the right: the two inmoſt and the two outmoſt Files ſtand; the reſt move ſucceſſively by threes, until they file into both Flanks and into the midſt; face to your Leader.

Reducement. Files, file three to the right and left inward into the Front and Reer; Half-files, face about; the three firſt and the three laſt Ranks, ſtand; the 12 middlemoſt men move inward by threes into Front and Reer, between the outmoſt and the middlemoſt Files: face to your Leader, and cloſe your Diviſions.

Command. Files, file both Flanks and to the midſt of Files, every man placing himſelf before his Bringers-up.

Direction. Face all about; the two outmoſt Files and the two middlemoſt Files, ſtand; the reſt move forth to the right and left, placing themſelves ſucceſſively before their Bringers-up, filing towards both Flanks and the midſt of Files; face to your Leader.

Reducement. Files, file ſix to the right and left inward, following your Bringers-up between the Flanks and the middle Files; the firſt ſix Ranks are to ſtand.

Command. Files, file to both Flanks and to the midſt of Files, advancing, every man placing himſelf before his Leader.

Direction. The outmoſt File upon each Flank, and the two middlemoſt Files ſtand; the reſt advance forward, placing themſelves ſucceſſively before their Leaders, filing both Flanks and to the midſt of Files.

Reducement. Files, file ſix to the right and left inward into the Reer, following your Leaders, between the Flankers and the middle Files; the ſix laſt Ranks face about; and after they have filed, they are all to face to their Leader.

Command. Files, file to both Flanks and to the midſt by Diviſion, every man placing himſelf before his Leader and Bringer-up.

Direction. The outmoſt File upon each Flank, and the two inmoſt, ſtand; Half-files of the other Files, face about; and then command them to move, filing to both Flanks and into the midſt, placing themſelves before their Leaders and Bringers-up; to your Leader.

Reducement. The ſix middlemoſt men in each File ſtand; the three firſt and the three laſt Ranks, file ſix to the right and left inward; every man placing himſelf before his Leader and Bringer-up: the three firſt Ranks face about; and then with the three laſt, they are to move forward between the outmoſt and the middlemoſt Files; that is, by threes to place themſelves before their Leaders and their Bringers-up; face to your Leader.

Command. Files, file inward into both Flanks and into the midſt, every man placing himſelf before his Leader and Bringer-up.

Diviſion. Half-files, face to the Reer; march all, and open from the midſt to twice double diſtance; face all about to the right, the two inmoſt and the two outmoſt Files upon each Flank ſtand; the reſt move ſucceſſively by threes, placing themſelves before their Leaders and Bringers-up, filing into both Flanks and the midſt; face to your Leader.

Reducement. Files three to the right and left inward, into Front and Reer, every man placing himſelf before his Leader and his Bringer-up; Half-files, face about; the three firſt and three laſt Ranks ſtand; the 12 middlemoſt men move forwards by threes, between the outmoſt and the middle Files, placing themſelves as aforeſaid; face to your Leader, and cloſe your Diviſions.

CHAP. XLVII.

Of Ranks wheeling to both the Flanks.

They are to be at double diſtance in Ranks, and at order in Files.

Command. RAnks, wheel to the right and left to both Flanks advancing.

Direction. The outmoſt men upon the right and left in every Rank are the hinges of the Motion; the reſt are to divide their Ranks by wheeling, ſix to the right, and ſix to the left, until they have brought their Aſpects unto both the Flanks; after face to their Leader.

Reducement. Files, rank 12 to the right and left inward into the Reer; face all to the right and left about inward, and begin the Motion from each File, to rank ſix to the right and ſix to the left, making up 12 abreſt in the Reer; the reſt following until they have made ſix Ranks in a breſt; face to your Leader.

Command. Ranks, wheel to the right and left towards the Reer.

Direction. Face all about. The outſide-men are the hinges of this Motion, who are to wheel from the Reer to the right and left, until they have brought their Aſpects unto both the Flanks; face to your Leader.

Reducement. Files, rank 12 to the right and left inward; the Right-hand-file is to begin to rank ſix to the left; the Left-hand-file is to rank ſix to the right, making up even abreſt 12 in number, the reſt doing the ſame.

Command. Front and Reer-half-files, wheel your ranks outward into both Flanks.

Direction. Half-files, face about; and Front and Reer-half-files, wheel outward into both Flanks, until you have brought your Aſpects unto the right and left; face to your Leader.

Reducement. Front and Reer-half-files, rank 12 to the right and left inward, towards the midſt of Ranks; Front-half-files face about, and begin the Motion from the Bringers-up of the Front-half-files, and the Half-file-leaders; ranking ſix to the right and left from each File, making 12 abreſt; face to your Leader.

Command. Front and Reer-half-files, wheel your Ranks into both Flanks.

Direction. Half-files, face about, and march all until you be at twice double diſtance in the midſt; then face all about to the right, and wheel to the right and left, until you have brought your Aſpects unto both Flanks, by wheeling inward to them; face to your Leader.

Reducement. Files, rank 12 to the right and left inward into Front and Reer; Half-files, face about, and rank in Front and Reer, ſix to the right and ſix to the left, making 12 abreſt; after face to your Leader.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of Ranks wheeling to the midſt of Files.

Command. FRont and Reer-half-files, wheel your Ranks inward to the midſt of Files.

Direction. Half-files, face about; and Front and Reer-half-files, wheel your Ranks to the right and left inward, until they face in oppoſition; to your Leader.

Reducement. Files, rank ſix to the right and left outward unto the midſt of Ranks; Front-half-files, face about, and Rank ſix to the right and left outward; Reer-half-files do the ſame to your Leader.

Command. Front and Reer-half-files, wheel your Ranks inward into the midſt of Files.

Direction. Half-files, face about; Front and Reer-half-files, march until you have attained twice double diſtance in the midſt of Ranks; face all about to the right, and wheel to the right and left inward into the midſt of Files; to your Leader.

Reducement. Files, rank ſix to the right and left outward into Front and Reer; Half-files, face about; and Front and Reer-half-files, rank ſix to the right and left outward, as before commanded; to your Leader, move forward, and cloſe your Diviſions to your double diſtance.

CHAP. XLIX.

Of Ranks wheeling to both Flanks, and into the midſt, at one and the ſame time.

They ought to be at more then Open order in Ranks, and at order in Files.

Command. FRont and Reer-half-files, wheel your Ranks to the right and left into both Flanks, and the midſt of Files.

Direction. Half-files, face about to the right; and the middle Files, and the outmoſt Files upon each Flank, are the hinges of this Motion; the reſt

reſt are to wheel their Ranks to the right and left towards both the Flanks, and to the midſt of Files; face to your Leader.

Reducement. Files, rank ſix to the right and left inward to the midſt of Ranks, and between the Flankers and the middle Files: Front-half-files, face about, and rank ſix to the right and left inward towards the midſt of Ranks, & between the Flankers, and middle Files; the Reer-half-files doing the ſame, face to your Leader.

Command. Front and Reer-half-files, wheel your Ranks inward into both Flanks, and into the midſt of Files.

Direction. Half-files, face about; and Front and Reer-half-files, march until you be at double diſtance in the midſt; after face all about to the right, and wheel your Ranks to the right and left inward into both Flanks, and into the midſt of Files; face to your Leader.

Reducement. Files, rank ſix to the right and left inward into Front and Reer, between the Flankers and the middle Files; Half-files face about, and rank ſix to the right and left inward to the Reer between the Flankers and the middle Files, the Front-half-files doing the ſame to the Front, after facing to their Leader; & Half-files move forwards, cloſing their Diviſions to the diſtance of the former Ranks.

Having dwelt thus long upon this ſubject of Inverſion and Converſion (occaſioned thereunto by their great variety and difficulty in the performance of them,) I hold it convenient to give a breathing ſpace unto the wearied Souldier, whilſt I in the mean time prepare further matter for his longing deſire.

Yet before I enter in any other diſcourſe of the *Art Military*, I hold it requiſite to give ſome admonitions to thoſe that ſhall venture upon them. For being very difficult, they are not eaſily underſtood by every puny; my advice therefore is, to wave ſuch things in time of Exerciſe, which the Souldiers are unacquainted with, providing for them ſuch matter as is both plain and eaſie; and being frequently practiſed in ſuch, he may after drill them on to harder, till by degrees he hath brought them unto ſuch perfection and knowledge, that they ſhall be able to perform and execute what is commanded; not gazing upon one another, (as I have often obſerved) neither knowing their Leaders meaning; or if they did, they are altogether ignorant how to fulfil his commands. Frequent practice therefore makes the Souldier expert, witneſs our gallant Souldiers and Citizens of *London*, who are moſt of them ſo well grounded (by frequent practice) that their Leaders can ſcarce give a word of Command, which is not eaſily apprehended by them, they being in their exerciſes ſo often inured to ſuch difficult expreſſions as theſe of Inverſion and Converſion.

CHAP. L.

Of Counter-marches, with their ſeveral ſorts and kinds, affording much variety in time of Exerciſe.

THoſe which have a longing deſire to be throughly knowing in this part or branch of *Military Diſcipline*, muſt take notice of theſe four ſorts, (*viz.*) Counter-marching of Files, next of Ranks, after the Front and Reer-half-files, and laſtly, of right and left Half-ranks: all which are performed either by intire or Diviſional Counter-marches, or elſe by the intire changing of ground; and that by many ways, the Front-half-files with the Reer, the right Half-ranks with the left: So that an expert Leader may venter ſo far in them, as to continue his Exerciſe (without reducing) almoſt for an hour, and not to expreſs himſelf twice in any one word of Command; they affording ſuch plenty and variety in them, that with pleaſure, uſing but four words of Command, he may bring each Souldier into his proper place again; obſerving theſe directions following. As firſt, to look down in the Body, where his File-leaders are, and where his Bringers-up: & likewiſe marking the ſeveral places of his Half-file-leaders, & the Bringers up of his Front-half-files, together with his Flankers & his middle Files: this ſpecial care being taken, he may begin and proceed to the Reducement, after this manner.

If by ſome former Counter-marches his File-leaders are in the place of his Half-file-leaders, and that his Bringers-up are in the room of the Bringers-up of the Front-half-files, then he may proceed in this, or the like Rude,

commanding them to countermarch their Front and Reer into the midſt; which being performed, they will ſtand in ſome pretty way of reducing; after facing them to the Front, where he meets with his Bringers-up, in ſtead of his File-leaders; which by one Counter-march will bring them up again into the Front. Yet perhaps the Flankers have inter-changed ground with the middle File-leaders: if ſo, then Counter-march their Flanks into the midſt, and face them to the Front: and if it happen that the right Flank is become the left, and the left the right; then Counter-march their Ranks to any hand, and after face them to the firſt Front they are reduced. And farther, take this for a general rule, that when Files or Ranks Counter-march to any hand, command them to Counter-march to the contrary, and it will reduce them; or countermarching your Front and Reer into the midſt, counter-marching of them back again from the midſt will bring each man into his proper place again. The ſame rule being obſerved, reduceth the Flankers, or Front and Reer-half-files, counter-marching of them from the midſt.

Counter-marches rightly conſidered, branch themſelves forth into theſe three particulars.

The { *Macedonian.* / *Lacedemonian.* / *Choreau.* }

The *Macedonian* is a Counter-march of gaining ground, for that it leaveth the ground it formerly ſtood upon, and in lieu thereof taketh the ground before the Front, and turneth their Aſpects unto the Reer.

The *Lacedemonian* is a Counter-march of loſing ground, for that it leaveth the ground it firſt ſtood upon, and in room thereof, taketh the ground which is behind the Reer; thither likewiſe altering the Souldiers Aſpects.

The *Choreau* is a Counter-march maintaining ground, keeping the ground the Battalia formerly ſtood upon, every Souldier taking anothers place; it likewiſe turns the Aſpect towards the Reer.

Thus you ſee (for all their great variety which latter ages have invented) they conſiſt but of three ſorts or kinds, either maintaining, gaining, or loſing of ground; and may be performed (as I ſaid before) either by intire or diviſional Counter-marches.

It may now be expected that I declare unto the Souldier the meaning of each particular Counter-march; briefly therefore, thus: Files counter-marching is, when every Souldier followeth his Leader; Ranks counter-marching is, when every Souldier followeth his ſide-man, whether it be to the right-hand or to the left: Front and Reer-half-files counter-marching is, ſometimes when every particular Souldier followeth his Leader or Bringer-up; or elſe when they follow their Half-file-leaders, or their Bringers-up of the Front-half-files, or the like: Right and left Half-ranks counter-marching is, when every Souldier in the Rank followeth the outmoſt men upon the right and left; or when they ſhall follow their inſide right and left-hand-men, or the like. What hath hitherto been ſpoken may be ſufficient, both for the inſtruction and direction of any diſcreet Souldier: I come in the next place to ſet them all before them as they lie in Order.

CHAP. LI.

Intire Counter-marching of Files.

Command. Files to the { Right / Left } Hand, Counter-march, maintaining ground.

Direction. File-leaders, turn off upon the ground you ſtand; the reſt moving up ſucceſſively into the File-leaders place, turning off until the Bringers-up come up into the Front; after face to your Leader.

Command. File-leaders, ſtand; the reſt paſs through to the right or left, and place your ſelves before your Leaders.

Command. File-leaders, face about; the reſt paſs through to the right or left, and place your ſelves behind your Leaders; face to your Leader.

Command.

Command. File-Leaders face to the Reer, the reſt paſs through to the right or left, following your Bringers-up, and placing your ſelves behind your Leaders; face all to your Leader.

Command. File-leaders ſtand, the reſt paſs through to the right or left, and place your ſelves before your Leaders, following your Bringers up.

Command. Files to the right and left Counter-march loſing ground, placing your ſelves before your Bringers-up.

Direction. Every File-leader turn off upon the ground he ſtands on, the reſt ſucceſſively doing the ſame until they come to the laſt Rank, who need do no more then face about; after face all to their Leader.

Command. The laſt Rank ſtand, the reſt paſs through to the right or left, placing your ſelves behind your Bringers-up, every man following his Leader.

Direction. File-leaders turn off to the right or left, the reſt following ſucceſſively until they are all clear of the Reer, then face to their Leader.

Command. Bringers-up ſtand, the reſt face about, paſs through to the right or left, and place your ſelves behind your Bringers-up.

Command. Bringers-up face about, the reſt paſs through to the right or left, and place your ſelves before your Bringers-up.

Direction. Face all to the Reer, and begin the Motion with the ſecond Rank from the Reer, moving forward, every man placing himſelf before his Bringer-up; to your Leader.

Command. Counter-march your Front and Reer into the midſt.

Direction. Half-files face about, and turn off to the left; Front Half-files turn off to the right; to your Leader.

Command. Front and Reer Half-files Counter-march to the right or left.

Direction. This is to be done diſtinctly, the Front half-files turning off to the right by themſelves, the Reer half-files turning off in like manner; face to your Leader.

Command. File-leaders, and half-file-leaders ſtand, the reſt paſs through to the right or left, and place your ſelves before your Leaders and half-file-leaders.

Command. Counter-march your Front and Reer half-files to the right and left from the midſt.

Direction. Front half-files face about, and turn off to the right; Reer half-files turn off to the left; to your Leader.

Command. File-leaders and half-file-leaders face about, the reſt paſs through to the right or left, and place your ſelves behind your Leaders, and your half-file-leaders; to your Leaders.

Command. File-leaders and half-file-leaders ſtand, the reſt paſs through to the right or left, and place your ſelves before your Leaders and half-file-leaders, every man following his Bringer-up, and the Bringers-up of the Front half-files.

Command. File-leaders and half-file-leaders face about, the reſt paſs through to the right or left, and place your ſelves behind your Leaders and half-file-leaders, following your Bringers-up.

Direction. The File-leaders and the Half-file-leaders (being firſt faced) are to ſtand; and the Bringers-up of the Front and Reer-half-files are to move forwards, until they be cleer of the ſtanding part; after they are to face to the Reer; which being ended, they are again to face to the Front.

CHAP. LII.

Diviſional Counter-marching of Files.

Command. File-leaders and Bringers-up, ſtand; the reſt paſs through to the right or left, and place your ſelves before your Leaders and your Bringers-up.

Direction. Half-files, face about; the Counter-march being ended, and faced again to the Front, command them to move forwards, and cloſe their Diviſions.

Command. File-leaders, face about; the reſt paſs through to the right or left, and place your ſelves behind your Leaders and your Bringers-up.

Direction. The two laſt Ranks from the Reer face about; and then they are to

to begin the Motion together; which being ended, face them to the Front, and the Half-files are to move forward, and to close their divisions.

Command. File-leaders and Bringers-up, stand; the rest pass through to the right or left, and place your selves before your Leaders and your Bringers-up; following the Half-file-leaders, and the Bringers-up of the Front-half-files.

Direction. Half-files, face about: this Motion is begun by the Bringers-up of each Division; which being ended, they are to face to their Leader; the Half-files moving forwards, closing their Divisions.

Command. File-leaders, face about; the rest pass through to the right or left, and place your selves behind your Leaders and your Bringers-up, following the Half-file-leaders, and the Bringers-up of the Front-half-files.

Direction. The two last Ranks from the Reer, face about: this Motion is begun by the Bringers-up of each Division, who are to lead away the rest following, until they be clear of the Front and Reer; and after to face about, placing themselves behind their Half-file-leaders and the Bringers-up of the Front-half-files; then facing to the Front, the Half-files moving forwards, closing their Divisions.

Command. Counter-march to the right and left; your Front and Reer-half-files from the midst (losing ground) every man placing himself before his Leader and his Bringer-up.

Direction. Front-half-files, face about, and turn off to the right, and the Half-file-leaders turn off to the left, and march cleer of the Front and Reer, and after the File-leaders; the Bringers-up are but to face about, and the Counter-march will be ended; then face the Half-files to the Front, let them move forward and close their Divisions.

Command. Front and Reer-half-files interchange ground to the right or left, marching cleer each from other.

Direction. Front-half-files, face about; and pass through to your own right hands, until you be cleer six foot of each other; then face to the Front, the Half-files moving forwards, and closing their Divisions.

Command. Front and Reer-half-files, Counter-march to the right, and interchange ground.

Direction. Half-files, face about, and turn off to the right; and Front-half-files at the same time doing the like, moving forwards until they be cleer one of another six foot; then facing to their Leader, close their Divisions.

CHAP. LIII.

Intire Counter-marches of Ranks.

Command. RAnks to the right-hand, counter-marching maintaining ground.

Direction. Face to the right; the Right-hand-file that was, turn off to the right, the rest moving up into the same ground, turning off likewise; to your Leader.

Command. The outmost File upon the right, face to the right; the rest pass through to the right or left, and place your selves before your Right-hand-men.

Direction. Face to the right, and pass through as before expresst; to your Leader.

Command. The Right-hand-file face to the left; the rest pass through to the right or left, and place your selves behind your right-hand-men.

Direction. Face to the right, and move forwards, and place your selves behind your right-hand-men; to your Leader.

Command. Ranks to the left-hand counter-march losing ground.

Direction. The outmost is to turn off to the left about until he hath brought his Aspect unto the right Flank; and so consequently all the rest, moving still forwards until they have gained upon the outside of the right Flank so much ground as they have lost, or that they have placed themselves before their right-hand-men, by following their left-hand-men; face to your Leader.

Command. The Right-hand-file, face to the left; the rest pass through to the right, following your left-hand-men, and placing your selves behind your Right-hand-file.

Direction.

Direction. The outmoſt File upon the left, face to the right, and march through the Intervals towards the right Flank; and when he is moved away, the reſt upon the left are ſucceſſively to do the ſame, until they have in lieu of that ground they formerly ſtood, gained ſo much upon the out-file of the right Flank; then facing about toward the left Flank, after face to your Leader.

Command. Ranks to the left-hand Counter-march, maintaining ground.

Direction. Face to the left, and the left-hand-file that was turn off to the left on the ſame ground he ſtands, the reſt moving up ſucceſſively doing the ſame; to your Leader.

Command. The left-hand-File ſtand, the reſt face to the left, paſs through, and place your ſelves on the outſide of your left-hand-men.

Direction. The left-hand-File face to the left, the reſt paſs through to the left, and place your ſelves before your left-hand-men; to your Leader.

Command. The left-hand-File face to the right, the reſt face to the left, paſs through to the left, and place your ſelves behind your left-hand-men.

Command. The left-hand-File face to the left, the reſt paſs through to the left, and place your ſelves before your left-hand-men, following your right-hand-men.

Direction. Face all to the left, and the outmoſt Files upon the right move forward upon the left, the reſt ſucceſſively doing the ſame, until you have all placed your ſelves before your left-hand-men; to your Leader.

Command. The left-hand-file face to the right, the reſt face to the left, paſs through to the left, and place your ſelves behind your left-hand-men, following your right-hand-men.

Direction. The right-hand-File that was, is to begin this Motion, the reſt are conſequently to follow until they have gained as much ground on the outſide of the left Flank as before they loſt; after face about to the right, and after to their Leader.

Command. Ranks to the right-hand counter-march, every man placing himſelf on the outſide of his left-hand-man, by following his right-hand-man.

Direction. The left-hand-file ſtand, the outmoſt File upon the right, is to turn about to the right, until he hath brought his aſpect to the left Flank; then moving forward until he be clear of the ſecond File, after the reſt are to do the like, forſaking the ground they ſtood upon, and in lieu thereof to gain ſo much upon the outſide of the left Flank, placing themſelves on the outſide of their left-hand-men, their aſpects being to the Front. Or you may command the outmoſt File upon the right to face to the left, and ſo begin to lead until he be clear of the ſecond File, the reſt doing the ſame until they have all placed themſelves on the outſide of their left-hand-men, their aſpects being to the Front; which I conceive to be the eaſier way.

Command. Counter-march your Flanks into the Midſt.

Direction. Face to the right and left outward; right Flank turn off to the right, left Flank turn off to the left, until they meet in the midſt; to your Leader.

Command. Right and left half-ranks Counter-march to the right or left.

Direction. Face all to the right: the right Half-ranks are to turn off to the right by themſelves, and the left Half-ranks in like manner; to your Leader.

Command. The outmoſt File upon the right, and the right-hand-file of the left Half-rank ſtand, the reſt face to the right, paſs through, and place your ſelves on the outſide of your right-hand-men; face to your Leader.

Command. The outmoſt File upon the right, and the right-hand-file of the left Half-rank face to the right and ſtand; the reſt paſs through to the right, and place your ſelves before your right-hand-men; face all to the right, and the motion being ended, face to your Leader.

Command. The outmoſt File upon the right, and the right-hand-file of the left Half-rank, face to the left and ſtand, the reſt face to the right; paſs through, and place your ſelves behind your right-hand-men; to your Leader.

Direction. For the ſe three laſt Counter-marches is for the moving part to begin

to

to Counter-march, who are the next Files of the ſtanding part, and ſo to follow ſucceſſively until they have performed the command, and after to face to their Leader.

Command. The right-hand-file of the left half-rank, and the outmoſt File upon the right, ſtand, the reſt paſs through to the right, and place your ſelves on the outſide of your right-hand-men, following your outmoſt Files.

Direction. The outmoſt Files are to face to the right, and to lead away until they be clear of the next, who likewiſe are to follow ſucceſſively.

Command. The outmoſt File upon the right, and the right-hand-file of the left Half-rank face to the right and ſtand, the reſt paſs through to the right, and place your ſelves before your right-hand-men.

Direction. Face all to the right; and the outmoſt Files that were, are to begin the motion, placing themſelves before their right-hand-men, the reſt following ſucceſſively; to your Leader.

Command. The outmoſt File upon the right, and the right-hand-file of the left Half-rank face to the left and ſtand; the reſt paſs through to the right, and place your ſelves behind your right-hand-men.

Direction. The outmoſt Files are to turn about until they have brought their aſpects unto the right Flank, then move away until they be clear of the ſecond File, and in like manner they are to turn off, doing the ſame until they have placed themſelves behind their right-hand-men; then facing to the left about, and after to their Leader, to even their Ranks and ſtraighten their Files.

Command. Counter-march your right and left Half-Ranks from the midſt.

Direction. Face inward, right Half-ranks turn off to the right, left Half-ranks turn off to the left; to your Leader.

CHAP. LIV.

Diviſional Counter-marches of the right and left Half-ranks.

Command. THe outmoſt File upon each Flank ſtand, the reſt paſs through to the right and left, and place your ſelves on the outſide of your right and left-hand-men.

Direction. The reſt face outward, and begin the motion by the next Files, the others following in order, & after to cloſe their Files into the Midſt to open *Order.*

Command. The outmoſt File upon each Flank face outward and ſtand; the reſt paſs through to the right and left, and place your ſelves before your outſide men.

Direction. The reſt are to face outward, and the next Files unto them that firſt faced are to begin the motion, placing themſelves before their outſide men; after face to their Leader, and cloſe Files into the midſt to *Order.*

Command. The outmoſt File upon each Flank face inward, the reſt paſs through and place your ſelves behind your outſide men.

Direction. The reſt are to face outward, and to paſs through to the right and left, placing themſelves behind their right and left-hand-men, and after to move forward, and cloſe their Diviſions, and face to their Leader.

Command. The outmoſt File upon each Flank ſtand, the reſt paſs through to the right and left, and place your ſelves on the outſide of your right and left-hand-men, following your inmoſt Files.

Direction. The inmoſt Files are to begin the motion, moving away to the right and left, until they be clear of their ſecond Files, and then they are to move away ſucceſſively until they have all placed themſelves on the outſide of their right and left-hand-men, and then cloſe files into the midſt to open *Order.*

Command. The outmoſt Files upon each Flank face outward, the reſt paſs through to the right and left, placing your ſelves before your right and left-hand-men, following your inmoſt Files.

Direction. The reſt are likewiſe to face outward, and the inmoſt Files are to begin the motion, the reſt following in order until they have placed themſelves before their outſide men; after face to the Front, and cloſe Files into the midſt to open *Order.*

Command. The outmoſt File upon each Flank face inward, the reſt paſs through

to

to the right and left, and place your ſelves behind your outſide-men, following the inmoſt Files.

Direction. The reſt are to face outward; the inmoſt Files begin to move forward to the right and left, the reſt conſequently do the ſame, until they all ſtand behind their outſide-men; then facing to the right and left about, cloſing their Diviſions by moving forwards; after face to the Front.

Command. Counter-march your right and left Half-ranks from the midſt, loſing ground, and placing your ſelves before your outſide-men.

Direction. Face inward, Right-half-ranks, turn off to the right; and Left-half-ranks, turn off to the left, and move forwards until you have placed your ſelves before your outſide-men; after face to your Leader, and cloſe Files into the midſt to open order.

Command. Right and Left-half-ranks interchange ground.

Direction. Face inward, and paſs through to your own right-hand, until you be cleer ſix foot each of other; after face to your Leader, and cloſe Files into the midſt to open order.

Command. Right and left half-ranks, Counter-march to the right and left, and interchange ground.

Direction. Face outward, Right-half-ranks, turn off to the right; Left-half-ranks, turn off to the left, and march clear each of the other; after face to the Front, and cloſe Files inward to open order.

Thus much may ſuffice to be ſpoken of all the ſeveral ſorts and kinds of Counter-marches; which if any ſhall conceive my pains fruitleſs in culling out ſuch plenty and variety, there being ſo few of them practiſed among able and knowing Souldiers; my beſt apology will be, The high and venerable eſteem I had of Antiquity neceſſitated me thereunto; as alſo to give full ſatisfaction to the Leaders of our private Meetings, who of late have laboured to inure their Souldiers in the full practice thereof, made me the willinger rather to undergo the cenſure of ſome, then to incur the diſpleaſure of many. Yet by the way, give me leave fully to declare my ſelf concerning the uſe of them: for my opinion is, that of all the Motions tending to Martial Diſcipline, theſe may the beſt be ſpared, as being of little uſe, and not ſo much as practiſed abroad upon ſervice; and therefore the fewer of them any Leader ſhall uſe in his Exerciſe, in my judgement he doth the better, not ſpending time in needleſs ſpeeches, telling of his Souldiers that this is the *Macedonian*, this is the *Lacedemonian*, or *Cherean Counter-march*. Not to lie under the cenſure my ſelf of miſpending time, I come therefore briefly in the next place to treat of Wheelings, being a ſubject more profitable for the intelligible Souldier.

CHAP. LV.

Of Wheelings, with their ſeveral uſes.

HAving proceeded thus far in ſhewing all the ſeveral ſorts and kinds of Military Motions, it will now in the next place be expected that I ſpeak ſomewhat of Wheelings, and as formerly, ſo now, to ſet before the Souldier their ſeveral kinds and uſes. Wherefore take notice of two ſorts, Wheelings Angular, and VVheelings on the Center, (which latter is commonly called the Prince of *Orange* his VVheeling) being acted or performed by the Souldier two ſeveral ways; that is to ſay, Intire or Diviſional.

Intire VVheelings to the Angles, are when the Souldiers turn their Aſpects from the Front proper to either of the Flanks or Reer, whereby they may gain the VVind or Sun, or ſome like advantage, bringing their beſt Souldiers thither for to encounter an Enemy. For the better performance of this Motion, it will be convenient to cloſe Ranks and Files into the midſt to order, and to keep their due diſtance both in Rank and File, obſerving in their Ranks their right and left-hand-men, & following their Leaders, always conforming themſelves in their Motion to the moſt commendable Poſture, which is Pikes advanced, & Muskets poyſed. Wheeling the Battail on the Center, is when they are ſo ſtraightened with ground, that they have not room to wheel to the right or left, as in the former, which

gaineth as much more ground before the Front, as formerly they ſtood on. This Wheeling brings their beſt Souldiers to either of the Flanks or Reer. I could wiſh that this Wheeling were more often practiſed amongſt us, for by it the Souldiers are better kept together in their Motion, being not ſo apt to flie out, as in the former.

Diviſional Wheelings (provided they have ſufficient number of men) are of ſingular good uſe to encounter ſeveral Enemies at one and the ſame time, which the Front of our Battalia bringing our beſt Souldiers for to skirmiſh with them. It is likewiſe uſeful to bring either Arms into Front, Reer, or both the Flanks: for ſuppoſe the Musketiers to be upon the Flanks, and fearing a deſperate charge of the Horſe to fall upon them by a Diviſion of Wheeling, the Pikes are thither brought to receive their on-ſet; and in the mean ſpace, the Musketiers have time to recruit their Bandiliers again. Much more might be ſpoken, but my intent is not to fill my Book with impertinent diſcourſes, knowing what is already ſpoken is ſufficient for the intelligible Souldier.

CHAP. LVI.

Intire Wheelings.

Command. WHeel your Battail to the { Right. / Left. / Right about. / Left about.

Direction. The right or the left-hand-men in the Front are the hinges of theſe Motions; the reſt have a greater compaſs to march then they, to bring their Aſpects unto the place commanded, following their Leaders.

Command. Wheel your Battail on the ſame ground to the { Right. / Left. / Right about. / Left about.

Direction. The Left-half-ranks moveth forwards wheeling to the right; and the right Half-ranks contrariwiſe faceth to the left ſide-wiſe falling backward, moving ſtill unto the place commanded.

CHAP. LVII.

Diviſional Wheelings.

Command. WHeel the Battail off by Diviſion from the Front.

Direction. Turn off to the right and left.

Command. Wheel the Battail off by Diviſion from the Reer.

Direction. Face to the Reer, and turn off to the right and left.

Command. Wheel the Battail inward to the Reer.

Direction. Open from the midſt to convenient diſtance, and turn off to the right and left.

Command. Wheel the Battail inward to the Front from the Reer.

Direction. Face to the Reer, open from the midſt, and wheel inward to the Front.

Command. Wheel off the Body by Diviſion from the right Flank.

Direction. Face to the right.

Command. Wheel off the Body by Diviſion from the left Flank.

Direction. Face to the left.

Command. VVheel the Body inward to the left Flank from the right.

Direction. Face to the right, and open outward to convenient diſtance to wheel inward to the left Flank.

Command. Wheel the body inward to the right Flank from the left.

Direction. Face to the left, and open outward to convenient diſtance to wheel inward to the right Flank.

Command. VVheel off your Front and Reer-half-files by Diviſion.

Direction. Half-files, face about; & Front & Reer-half-files, turn off by Diviſion.

Command. Wheel your Front and Reer-half-files inward to the midſt of Ranks.

Direction. Half-files, face about; and Front and Reer-half-files, open outward to convenient diſtance to wheel inward to the midſt of Ranks.

Command. Wheel off your Front and Reer-half-files by Diviſion from the midſt of Ranks.

Direction.

Direction. Front-half-files, face about; and Front and Reer-half-files, wheel off to the right and left by Diviſion.

Command. Wheel Front and Reer-half-files inward, both to the Front and Reer from the midſt of Ranks.

Direction. Front-half-files, face about; and Front and Reer-half-files, open from the midſt to convenient diſtance, and wheel inward into Front and Reer.

Command. Wheel off your right and left Half-ranks by Diviſion.

Direction. Face outward, and wheel off to the right and left by Diviſion.

Command. Wheel your right and left Half-ranks inward to the midſt of Files.

Direction. Face outward, and open to the right and left to convenient diſtance to wheel inward to the midſt of Files.

Command. Wheel off your right and left Half-ranks by Diviſion from the midſt of Files.

Direction. Face inward, and cauſe them to move backward to convenient diſtance, to wheel off by Diviſion from the midſt of Files.

Command. Wheel your right and left Half-ranks inward to both Flanks from the midſt of Files.

Direction. Face inward, and open to the right and left to convenient diſtance to wheel inward to both Flanks.

Command. Wheel the outward Angles to the right and left about, to the Center.

Direction. Face to the outward Angles, and cloſe Ranks and Files to cloſe order; and the Angles on the right, turn off to the right; the Angles on the left, turn off to the left.

Command. Wheel the inward Angles to the right and left about inward from the Center.

Direction. Face to the inward Angles, or to the Center, and wheel about to the right and left inward from the Center.

Theſe are all the intire and diviſional Wheelings that have hitherto been practiſed by any, according to my beſt obſervation: there are other Wheelings which may properly be term'd Doublings, which I have placed amongſt the Doublings, where they more properly belong. Now if any ſhall demand of me a reaſon why I have omitted the Reducements to each particular Command; my anſwer thereunto is eaſie: for as in the Counter-marches, ſo in theſe, they may be reduced by three or four words of Command, except a Commander ſhall of ſet purpoſe keep them off from the ſame, to make ſome experiment. After any wheeling is performed, face them after to the firſt Front, and command them to even their Ranks, and ſtraighten their Files, they will be as at firſt; and unto what hand ſoever they wheeled, command them to wheel to the contrary hand, and they will be reduced unto the firſt Front; or what part is wheeled off by Diviſion, wheel them inward again from that place, and it will eaſily reduce them. Thus you ſee that it is almoſt impoſſible for a Leader to be out, unleſs he be extreamly ignorant; therefore he need not fear to venter far in the progreſs of them, before he ſhall reduce them, provided he uſe no Doublings: which if he ſhall, great care muſt be had that he be not put to a ſtand; for the prevention whereof, let him look back unto thoſe doublings by wheelings, wherein one doth reduce another, where he may finde ſome remedy to help himſelf forth again.

CHAP. LVIII.

Of Firings, either for delight or ſervice.

THe chiefeſt thing required of the Muſketiers next their Poſtures, by which they are taught how to handle their Arms with delight both marching or skirmiſhing, is Firing; which to ſpeak the truth, is the full accompliſhment of all the reſt; for unleſs they be really performed, the reſt are of no great advantage. For to what end is it for any man to Prime, Lade or Cock, if he Preſent not anſwerably? therefore Firings are the execution of all the former; in ſo much as my advice ſhall be to all Commanders, that they be careful and diligent to have all their Muſketiers often practiſed with falſe Firing; which is, Firing in the Pan only, and falling off, as hereafter followeth, to the end that in

time of need they may not ſpend their Powder and Bullets in vain. And that they may likewiſe know where to fall off, that others may do the like, and where to place themſelves ſecureſt from danger; yet ſo as they may be ſtill aiding the one unto the other: I ſhall therefore for the good of my Country, and for the benefit of all ſuch as are herein concerned, collect forth ſome *Firings*, which ſhall be every one differing from the other in one kind or other, either in the execution or reducing, whereby the ingenious Souldier may cull forth ſuch as he beſt likes to make uſe of, what he ſhall think to be moſt fit and pertinent to his intended purpoſe, be it either for delight or ſervice; briefly therefore thus. *Firings* really conſidered, can be performed but five ways, that is to ſay, to the *Front*, *Reer*, *right* or *left Flank*, *Oblique* or *Angular*; but there is ſo much variety to be expreſſed in the performance of each of theſe, that it makes them ſeem ſo many ſeveral *Firings*, as by the following diſcourſe ſhall be fully demonſtrated.

CHAP. LIX.

Several Firings to be performed with any number of men.

THE Front being the head of the Body, and therefore the more honourable part, challengeth the ſuperiority, or firſt place; and therefore, without any further circumſtance, I come directly to the *Firings* as they lie in order, as followeth. Draw all the Muskettiers before the Pikes, before you begin your *Firings*.

Firings to the Front.

1 Two Ranks advancing ten paces, } falling in the Reer
2 By ſingle Ranks, advancing three paces, } of themſelves.
3 Fire and flank the Pikes.
4 Fire by Files, advancing 10 or 20 paces, firſt ſingle, ſecondly ranking inward; 1, 2, 3, 4, or more, falling down into their places again.
5 Fire by Ranks filing, and advancing 10 or 20 paces, and moving down, and ranking in the Reer of their own Diviſions.
6 Fire by Diviſions drawn off 10, or 20, or 30 paces, and returning again.
7 Fire even with the Front, and falling in the Reer of their own Diviſions.
8 Fire even with the Half-files, and fall in the Reer of themſelves.
9 Fire by way of *Introduction*, thus, the firſt Rank fires and ſtands, the laſt Rank paſſeth up between the Files, and placing themſelves before the File-leaders or firſt Rank, then ſtand and give fire, the reſt doing the like till the File-leaders come up again into their places, and fire the ſecond time.
10 Fire by *Introduction* after this manner: the firſt Rank gives fire and ſtands, the reſt moving forward until the next Rank hath placed themſelves before the firſt; then ſtands and gives fire, the reſt moving up and doing the like, until they have all fired twice.
11 Fire even with the Front, falling into the Reer of Pikes.
12 Fire by *Extroduction*, the firſt Rank paſſing from the Reer upon the outſide of the Pikes upon the right, until they have placed themſelves in a Rank before the Pikes, the reſt ſucceſſively doing the like, until they have fired all over, and brought themſelves as at firſt.

Here the Muskettiers are upon the Flanks again.

13 Fire by the outmoſt Files, wheeling or ranking outward into the Front, falling off likewiſe, being led off by Bringers-up, leading up next the Pikes: this done twice, reduceth.
14 Fire two Ranks together,
15 Fire four Ranks together; two kneeling, and two ſtanding upright } falling off, or falling down.
16 Fire ſix Ranks together, two kneeling, two ſtooping, and two ſtanding upright. }
17 Fire ſome Ranks drawn forth to the { right / left } or by Diviſion, and in again.

Note alſo, if you pleaſe, you may draw forth one Rank to the right, and another to the left, at one and the ſame time together.

18 Fire by Files drawn forth oblique; then face about, & move into their places.

Note alſo that ſeveral Figures may be made by theſe kinds of Firings; as the V, *the* W, *or the* Fort-battail, *and the like.*

19 Fire

19 Fire by Ranks, ranking into the Front, or Files ranking into the Front, and ranking or filing as they were.

20 Fire by Files wheeling outward or inward into the Front, and filing again as they were.

Thus much briefly of *Firings* to the *Front*: the Reer challengeth the next place, where suppose all the Muskettiers to be in the Reer of the Pikes, the Body marching.

Firings to the Reer.

1 Fire to the {right / left} {about, falling in the Front / of their own Divisions.}

2 Fire, and fall off to the right and left, and rank with the first Rank of Pikes into the Front.

3 Fire even with the Reer, and fall off before the Front of your own Divisions of Muskettiers.

4 Fire even in the Reer or last Rank, and fall off to the right and left with a swift motion, placing your selves 10, 20, or 30 paces before the Front of Pikes, still facing to the Body, and making ready again, and opening to the right and left until they be clear of the Pikes.

5 Fire by *Introduction* to the Reer twice over until they come down even with the Reer, and flank the Pikes.

6 Fire to the right and left about to the Reer, Ranks drawn forth, and in again.

7 Fire to the Reer, every Rank drawn forth clear each from other, and falling in again, and flanking the Pikes.

8 Fire to the right and left about, Files ranking downward to the Reer, and filing as they were.

9 Fire to the right and left about, Ranks ranking downward to the Reer, and ranking as they were.

10 Fire losing ground, falling off to the right and left about, just before the Front of Pikes.

11 Now if the Enemy pursue eagerly, and that you cannot make a safe retreat marching, face all about, and fire upon them by way of *Extraduction*, or by half-ranks divided, as formerly hath been shewen.

Firings to the Flanks marching.

And thus much likewise briefly concerning *Firings* to the *Reer*; in the next place I shall shew some *Firings* to the *Flanks*: for performance whereof, it will be expedient to bring all the Muskettiers upon one of the Flanks; but for order sake, I will begin with the *Firings* from the right *Flank*.

1 Fire to the right, and gather up your Files; it is to be performed after this manner, The outmost File upon the right is to face to the right, and to give fire; and after to face to the Front and stand, until the next File have fired in like manner; and then the first File gathers up unto him upon the right even abreast, and standing until the third File have faced to the right, and fired in like manner; and after facing to the Front, the other Files moving up in the like way as before; and following successively this rule until all have given fire, and then to march up and even the Front of Pikes, the Muskettiers will stand as at first, when they were brought upon the right Flank.

2 Fire to the right, File-leaders leading up their Files next to the Pikes.

3 Fire to the right, Bringers-up leading away next the Pikes; which being twice done, reduceth them.

4 Fire to the right, leading up on the contrary Flank, either by the File-leaders or Bringers-up.

5 Fire to the right, and leading up by Bringers-up between the Pikes, and passing through to their places again, doing the same, reduceth them.

6 Fire to the right, and leading up between the Pikes by the Leaders; and passing through the Pikes again to the right, they will be as at first: the like may be done to the left, or in some kind to both Flanks, at one and the same time.

7 Fire to the right by Ranks wheeling; and Ranks to rank as they were to the right, upon their marching, reduceth them.

8 Fire

8. Fire to the right by Ranks inverting or filing, and upon the March the Souldiers ranking reduceth them.

9. Fire to the right Files, filing and gathering up their Files to the left reduceth them.

These Firings being performed marching, the next shall be upon a Stand; where note, you must cast all your Muskettiers upon that Flank where you conceive the Enemy will fall on, whether right, left, or both; but for order sake we usually begin with the right; wherefore face to the right, and proceed as followeth.

Firings to the right Flank upon a Stand.

1. Fire and fall in the Reer of your selves.

2. Fire and flank the Pikes.

3. Fire even with the Pikes, and fall in the Reer of themselves.

4. Fire even with the Reer, moving forth to the right and left, by Ranks falling in the Reer of themselves.

5. Fire by extraduction by half-ranks drawn forth, and falling Rank after Rank in the Reer of the Pikes; after to reduce them as at first, cause them to double their Front by Division.

These Firings may as well be performed to both Flanks as to one, the Body being faced accordingly, which would make many Firings more; but these already set down may be sufficient for any ingenious capacity to work upon for the present; observing this rule, that in every Firing he shall make use of in time of his Exercise, he may reduce them by another; which will be more pleasing to the Souldier, by reason of the great variety it affords unto them. Now now in the last place, I know it will be expected, that I should speak something of the use of Firings: wherefore briefly thus:

Firings to the Front marching or moving, when we either pursue after, or approach to an Enemy.

Firings to the Front, maintaining ground when two Bodies encounter one another.

Firings to the Front, losing ground, when either we are forced thereunto by necessity, or that we do it out of policy, to draw the Enemy into a train or snare.

Firings to the Reer marching, when we are pursued by an Enemy, yet would continue our March until we have gained some place of importance or advantage.

Firings to the Reer upon a Stand, when we are compelled thereunto by the violent pursuit of an Enemy; or else when we have gained a place of advantage of ground, or have recovered the Wind or Sun, whereby we are the better able to encounter with them.

Firings to the Flank or Flanks marching, when we are assaulted by some Ambuscado secretly placed to hinder our passage; or supposing two Armies are marching to one and the same place, a River being betwixt them.

Firings to Flank or Flanks standing, when the Enemy chargeth on with a resolution to cut off or divide part of the Army from the other.

Having thus briefly set down several Firings to Front, Reer and both Flanks, with their uses, either marching or standing: I hold it convenient in the next place to give some short directions in time Battail, both to the Officers and their Souldiers.

First, that the Drummers have a vigilant eye upon their Commanders, whose voices are drown'd by the loud thundring of the Cannon or Muskettiers; as also by the neighing of Horses, or the lamentable cries of the maim'd and wounded Souldiers; at which time the Leaders Staff, Half-pike, or what else he carries in his hand, may be sufficient for to instruct them to continue their charge, retreat, or else to charge home.

Secondly, that the Serjeants be careful in time of Battail, that their Souldiers be at their due distance of order both in Rank and File; and that upon their Firings, whether they be Forlorns either of Files or Ranks drawn forth, or otherwise by Divisions, they see them neatly and handsomely perform'd by cocking their

their Matches, and presenting something lower then brest-high, and after Uncocking and returning them, wheeling off either to the right, left, or both, falling in the Reer of themselves, or elsewhere as shall be appointed, in an orderly manner, whereby they may decently come up again to Fire against the Enemy.

Thirdly, that the Souldiers present and give fire upon their Rests, not using that slovenly posture of popping their Matches into the Pan, their Muskets being on their left sides; which is not onely hurtful unto themselves, but much endangers their Fellow-souldiers; and by so doing, they scarce or ever do any execution against an Enemy. But here I meet with an objection framed by the Souldiers after this manner: Our Rests are of little or no use unto us in time of skirmishing; for they are, we confess, in the Military Gardens, but in time of Battail both troublesome and cumbersome unto us. To whom I reply, what if they be a little cumbersome at first, must they therefore be rejected and carelessly thrown away? nay, rather they ought frequently to practice themselves in the use thereof; which if they did, they would finde the same very serviceable unto them in the time of skirmishing; wherewith they Fire better, and in a more comely and graceful way, far more securing both themselves and Fellow-souldiers from danger; and likewise upon their March it is both a help and support unto them.

Fourthly, their eyes ought likewise in time of Battail to be fixed stedfastly upon their Captain, always conforming to him in Posture when he shall prepare to charge or retreat; and likewise they ought to be knowing and well versed in the several Beats of the Drum; which if well observed by all, there would not be so much confusion in time of Battail amongst them, as many times by sad experience hath been found, when disregarding their Officers commands and the beating of the Drum, they ignorantly and rashly run on in a disorderly manner; by which means they have cut off their own Officers and Fellow-souldiers, many times, more then they have dangered the Enemy.

Thus you see what great necessity there is of instructing and training up the Souldiers in their Postures; and how requisite it is to conform themselves to their Officers in time of Battail, performing thereby better execution against their Enemies; and by their decent and comely array preserve themselves from eminent dangers and perils.

The Souldiers having now all the ground-work of the exercising a Body of men laid down before them, in the next place he labours to make experiment thereof; but being no Officer, he cannot attain thereunto without special leave from his Superiours; and therefore (being a File-leader) he craves leave for to exercise his single File both in their Postures and Motions, contenting himself for present with that small number, whereby he is able to run through many plain things of Distances, Facings, Doublings, Counter-marchings and Wheelings. But being not fully satisfied, he presumes upon the former favour had from his Superiours, to go on to make every man in his File a File-leader; first by succession, and after (being not called away by the beat of the Drum, or by his Officers, to lead up his File and to joyn into a Body) according unto Dignity, and after endeavours to reduce them again by proper words of command.

This liberty being granted at convenient times unto a File-leader, much indeers the Souldiers good affections unto their Officers; and is a means whereby many others are brought in to be true lovers of Military Exercise, as being much taken and well pleased with the sight of the former things. And therefore, I could wish that they were not hereafter prevented, as formerly I have observed by the malice of some, who have had places of command bestowed upon them, more through favour, or by reason of their riches, then for any worth or desert found in them: They perhaps hold it a great disparagement unto them to be eclipsed; but a judicious and discreet Captain accounts it a great honour to lead such gallant men that are asable and as well knowing as himself.

CHAP.

CHAP. LX.

The file. *The way to make every man in a File ſix deep according to ſucceſſion a File-leader, by doublings, not uſing one word of command twice.*

1
2 *Command.* Files, rank two to the left } Bring the ſecond man into the } 2
3 File, to the left double. } Front. }
4 *Command.* Half-files, double your Front to the left. }
5 Files, double your depth to the left. } 3
6 *Command.* Bringers-up, double your Front to the right. }
Double your Files to the left intire advancing. } 4
Command. Bringers-up, double your Front to the left. }
Double your Files to the right intire advancing. } 5
Command. File, rank two to the right. }
Files to the right double. } 6
Reducement. File, rank to the left into the Front.
Rank, file ſix to the left.

CHAP. LXI.

The Dignity of the File. *The way to make every man in a File ſix deep File-leader according to dignity, by a doubling, not uſing one Word of command twice.*

Command. Half-files double your front to the left.
1 Files double to the right intire advancing, every man } 2
6 placing himſelf before his Leader.
4 *Command.* Front half-file double the reer to the left.
3 Files double to the left intire advancing, every man placing himſelf } 3
5 before his Leader.
2 *Command.* Bringer-up, double your Front to the right.
Files, double your depth to the right, every man falling behind his } 4
bringer-up.
Command. Half-files, double your Front to the right.
Files, double to the left intire advancing }
Files, rank two to the right. } 5
Files, to the right double. }
Bringer-up, double your Front to the left.
Files, double your depth to the left, every man falling behind his } 6
bringer-up.
Reducement. File, rank two to the left.
Files to the left double.

CHAP. LXII.

The File. *The way to make every man in a File eight deep File-leader by ſucceſſion, and that by doubling, not uſing one Word of command twice.*

1
2 *Command.* File, rank two to the left. }
3 Ranks, invert to the left. } 2
4 *Command.* Half-file double your front to the right. }
5 Double your files to the right intire advancing, every man placing } 3
6 himſelf before his Leader.
7 *Command.* Files, rank two to the right. }
8 Files, to the right double. } 4
Command. Front half-files, double your reer to the right. }
Double your files to the left intire advancing. } 5
Command. Files, rank two to the right into the reer. }
Ranks, invert to the right. } 6
Command. Half-files, double your Front to the left. }
Double your files to the left intire advancing, every man placing } 7
himſelf before his Leader.
Command. File, rank two to the left into the Reer. }
Face to your Leader. } 8
Double your Files to the right advancing. }
Reducement. File, rank to the right into the Front.
Rank, file eight to the right.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXIII.

The way to make every man in a File eight deep, a File-leader according unto dignity, by a doubling.

		The Dignity of the File.
Command. Bringer-up, double your Front to the left. Double your Files to the right intire advancing.	2	1 6
Command. Half-files, double your Front to the left. Double your Files to the left intire advancing.	3	7 4
Command. Bringer-up, double your Front to the right. Files, double your depth to the right.	4	3 8
Command. Files, rank two to the right. Double your Files to the right intire, advancing, every man placing himself before his Leader.	5	5 2
Command. Front-half-files, double your Reer to the right, following your Leaders. Double your Files to the right by Diviſion, every man placing himſelf before his Leader and his Bringer-up.	6	
Command. Front-half-files, double your Reer to the left, following your Leaders. Double your Files to the left by Diviſion, every man placing himſelf before his Leader and his Bringer-up.	7	
Command. The two firſt and the two laſt men double the four middlemoſt men to the right, following your Leaders and your Bringers-up. Files, double your depth to the left.	8	

Reducement. Half-files, double the Front to the right.
Bringers-up, double your Front to the right.
Files to the right and left double inward.
Double your Files to the left intire advancing.

Although I have here ſet down words of Command to make every man a File-leader, both by Succeſſion and Dignity, a Commander is not thereby tyed up, but may, if he pleaſe, practiſe the ſame upon a whole Company, altering but a little ſome words of Command. As for Example, we cannot ſay in a File, Double your Ranks, there being none, until there be ſome other Files joyned thereunto: and therefore if we intend a doubling by a ſingle File, we command it to rank two to the right or left, which in a Company muſt be expreſt, Ranks to the right or left double. Thus you ſee with a little alteration every man is brought up into the Front, either by Succeſſion or Dignity; whether the Files be even numbers or odd, great bodies or ſmall. But here by the way, I muſt crave pardon to ſpeak ſomething in commendation of theſe Doublings, in anſwer to them that account them but Toys: to whom I will be ſo bold as to tell them, that it is not for want of ignorance they ſo ſlightly eſteem of them; for were they truly knowing in the Art of Drilling, they muſt of force confeſs abundance of variety in them, affording much delight to him that ſhall command, and great content unto them that are commanded, perceiving themſelves to be made File-leaders by the skill and worth of their Leaders. And beſides, there may be juſt cauſe (at one time or other) many times to alter the Ranks, exchanging the one for the other, bringing thereby their beſt deſerving Souldiers into the chiefeſt places of honour; and caſting others into their rooms at the diſcretion of the Commander. Therefore, I could wiſh all Leaders whatſoever to be well skill'd and verſt in theſe Doublings; the frequent practice whereof will make them more apt in the Exerciſe of more difficult things in the *Art Military*. To which ingenious ſtudy, I leave them; and in the next place proceed to ſhew them ſeveral Figures of Battail to be performed by ſingle Files, conſiſting of ſeveral Depths of men.

CHAP. LXIV.

Concerning Figures of Battail to be performed by ſingles Files, with ſome admonitions to thoſe that ſhall practice themſelves therein.

THe great plenty and variety of matter that may be performed in the exerciſing of a ſingle File, makes me wonder at the ignorance of thoſe who are

famed abroad for able knowing Souldiers; who after they have paſſed over the Poſtures are at a ſtand, as if there were nothing elſe to be done with the ſame. But did they truely underſtand what diſhonour and diſparagement it is unto them, they would not be ſo idle and backward, but ſet times apart, often inuring themſelves to the practice thereof, going through all the Motions, Diſtances, Facings, Doublings, Counter-marches and Wheelings; and may farther, if he pleaſe, with his ſingle File draw forth divers Figures of Battail, declaring unto his Souldiers their ſeveral reaſons and uſes. The exerciſing his Company after this manner, affords unto them both content and delight; and it is likewiſe very uſeful in greater Bodies, when time of need ſhall require, as ſhall appear in the ſequel of this Book.

But here, me thinks, I hear ſome ſay, Of what uſe are your Figures? ſeeing for the moſt part in pitcht Battails, or skirmiſhes in the field, they commonly fire one againſt another in Square, or by Forlorns drawn forth from the Body, and being relieved, return into their places again. To whom, I anſwer, that in one reſpect it is true, there being ſcarce any pitcht Battail in the field fought in theſe latter times, but it hath been with even Fronts, who are firſt engaged; whether it be by Diviſions drawn off by way of Forlorns, Wings or Battail, they fight with even Fronts or Squadrons, as having every five or ſix Files divided apart from each other, having ſix foot ground interval betwixt the aboveſaid number of Files for the conveniency of the Ranks, wheeling off after they have fired. As concerning ſuch Figures as are framed like the Wedge, Saw, Sheers, or Diamond; I muſt confeſs there is little or no uſe at all, except it be for delight, or for the practice and experience of ſome young Souldier, whereby he may plainly ſee the cuſtom of the Ancients in ſetting forth ſuch ancient Figures. But to let this paſs, and to come to the place where we left; I ſhall ſhew unto the Souldier how needful it is for him to be well skilled in the framing of Figures of Battail, and likewiſe to be throughly acquainted with their ſeveral uſes. Wherefore take this for a general rule, that there was never any pitcht Battail, but there were Reſerves appointed out unto all the parts thereof, whereby they might bring off, and at time of need relieve each other; and if ſo, certainly they muſt of neceſſity carry along with them ſeveral forms and Figures of Battail, according to the diſcretion of the Major-general, or the Commanders in chief whom it ſhall concern. It will therefore be expedient (ſince there is a neceſſity of Figures of Battail, and for the ſetting apart of Diviſions for the relieving of each other) for every Commander that will be truely knowing, to have always ſome imprinted in his memory; that in time of need, he may not be to ſeek, or wanting in them. To which purpoſe I have collected ſome few, putting them to their view, being formerly practiſed by me, for the ſatisfaction of thoſe loving Gentlemen which have private Meetings in *London*; but more eſpecially for thoſe of the *Town-ditch*, unto whom I am eſpecially bound. And therefore without more delay, I ſhall lay before them certain Figures of Battail upon all the Depths of Files ſet forth in the former Table, leaving them to their own diſcretion, to make uſe of what ſhall beſt comply, and ſuit to their intended purpoſe.

CHAP. LXV.

Military experiments upon a File ſix deep, branching forth eight ſeveral Figures of Battail, with their reducement.

Command. File, rank two to the left.

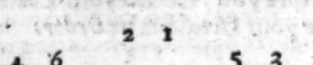
2 1
4 3
6 5

Command. The middlemoſt Rank open to the right and left to open order.

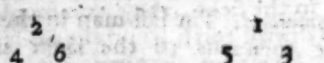
2 1
4 3
6 5

Command. The laſt Rank advance for-

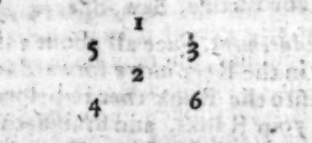
forward into the next Rank that is before you, and to open from the midſt to open order; and the firſt Rank move forward one pace.



Commmand. The firſt Rank open outward two foot beyond open order; the laſt Rank cloſe forward to *Order.*

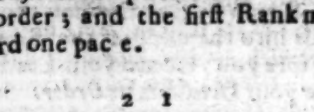


Command. Diviſion upon the left face about; march all till you be clear each of other, face all to the left, and march two paces; face to your Leader: the laſt Rank open outward to double diſtance.



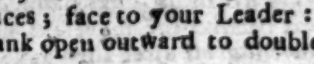
Command. The firſt Rank open outward to double diſtance; the firſt man in the Front face about, move down, and double the middlemoſt man to the right Rank-wiſe.

Command. The left-hand-man of the middlemoſt Rank face about, the middlemoſt Rank march two paces before the Front and Reer; face to your Leader, and cloſe Ranks and Files to *Order.*



Command. The ſecond Rank from the Front double the firſt to the right and left outward by *Diviſion*; the laſt man in the Reer cloſe forward to *Order.*

Command. The outmoſt men of the middle Rank face about, and move down even with the Reer; to your Leader.



Reducement. The middlemoſt man in the Reer advance forwards to the left into the Front.

Files, cloſe inward to your *Order.*

Files, to the right double.

Half-files, double your Front to the left.

Files, double your Depth to the right, every man falling behind his Bringer-up.

Files, rank two to the right.

Ranks, rank entire to the left into the Reer, every man placing himſelf on the outſide of his left-hand-man.

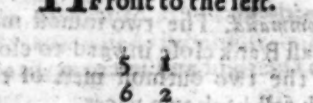
Direction. Face about; and after being faced to their Leader, they will ſtand after this manner, 6, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1.

Rank file to the right, they are reduced.

CHAP. LXVI.

Words of Command to produce the firſt Eight Figures of Battail, with their Reducement.

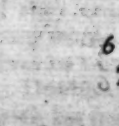
Command. HAlfe-file double your Front to the left.



Command. The laſt Rank face about, the two middle Ranks face outward; march all ſome two paces; to your Leader.

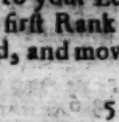
Command. The firſt Rank move forwards two paces; the third Rank

close inwards to open *Order.*

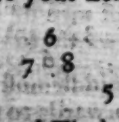


Command. the third Rank from the Front face outward, march all three paces; to your Leader.

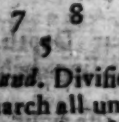
The first Rank stand, the rest face outward, and move two paces; to your Leader.



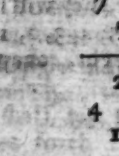
Command. The first Rank face about, march all until you be clear one of another; to your Leader.



Command. The last Rank move to the right and left, and place your selves three foot behind the Front-Divisions.

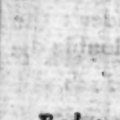


Command. Division on the right face about, march all until you be clear one of another; then face to the right, and march until you stand even abrest of each other; face to your Leader.



Command. Reer-Division face about; the last man in each Division move forwards into the midst of the Rank that is before you; face to your Leader, and close your Divisions to *Order.*

Command. The last man in the [illegible] move forwards to the right in the Rank of him that stands before you, the last Rank open outwards to *Order*; to your Leader.



Reducement. Face all about; the last man in the Reer move forwards on the left into the Rank that is before you; even your Ranks, and straighten your Files; to your Leader.

Files, double inward by Division. Double your Ranks to the left entire into the Front and Reer.

Direction. Halt-files face about; after face to your Leader; and the last Rank close forward to *Order*, and even your Ranks, and straighten your Files.

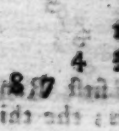
Wheel Front and Reer to the left Flank.

Direction. The last Rank face about; then face to your Leader, and Counter-march the File, they are reduced.

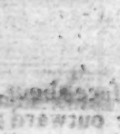
CHAP. LXVII.

Words of Command for the second Eight Figures of Battail, with their Reducement.

Command. File, rank to the left, one, three, and four; the last Rank face outwards, and move three paces; to your Leader.

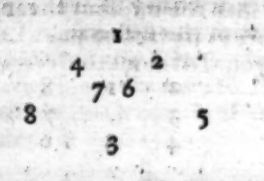


Command. The two inmost men of the last Rank close inward to close *Order*, the two outmost men of the last Rank fall back two paces.

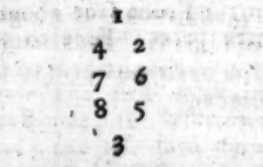


Command.

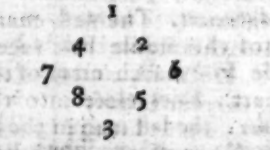
Command. The middlemoſt man in the firſt Rank face about, march all till you are clear one of another; to your Leader.



Command. Files, cloſe into the midſt to *Order*, the laſt man move forward to *Order*.



Command. The middlemoſt Rank open to the right and left to double diſtance.



Command. The outmoſt men upon the Flanks face inward, the laſt man in the Reer face about, the firſt and the laſt Rank face to the four Angles, move all three paces; to your Leader.

Command. The firſt man in the Front, and the laſt man in the Reer ſtand, the reſt face outward, and march three paces; to your Leader.

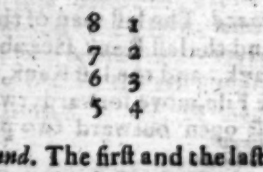
Command. The laſt men of the outmoſt Files move forwards to the right and left, until you range even abreſt with the middle-men.

Reducement. The laſt man in the Reer move forward, and ronge even abreſt with the firſt Rank. Ranks, file to the right, following your Leader; they are reduced.

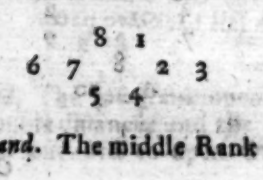
CHAP. LXVIII.

Words of Command for the third Eight Figures of Battail, with their Reducement.

Command. BRingers-up, double your Front to the left.



Command. The firſt and the laſt Rank ſtand; the third Rank double outward Rank-wiſe; the Middle-rank face outward, march all two paces; to your Leader.



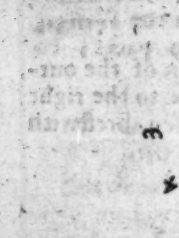
Command. The middle Rank ſtand, the reſt double to the right File-wiſe; face all to the Center, and march ſome two paces to your Leader.

Command. The Middle-rank double inward File-wiſe, and move a little forward.

Command.

Command. Half-file of the middle file double your Front to the left; Front-diviſion face to the right, and move one pace; to your Leader.

Command. The left-hand-File in the Front, face about, and march clear of the Reer; face to your Leader. The middle File double to the left Rank-wiſe; Files cloſe into the midſt to *Order*; Files rank outward into the Reer, and then begin from the right to wheel them about to the left in a Ring.



Command. Files cloſe into the midſt to *Order*, the firſt Rank cloſe inward to cloſe *Order*; the third Rank open outward to open *Order*: the laſt man in the Reer move even abreſt with the Rank that is before you.

Command. Files, open to the right and left until you ſtand ſtraight with your Bringers-up, the reſt moving forwards until they have ranged even abreſt with the firſt man.

Command. Angle-men, face to the four Angles; the middle-men in the outmoſt Files face inward; the middle-man in the Front face about: march all three paces; Face to your Leader.

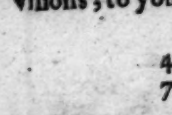
Reducement. The laſt man in the Reer of the middle File face about; middle File march clear of the ſtanding part; Files cloſe into the midſt to *Order*: the laſt man in the Reer fall in the Reer of the right-hand-File, the firſt man in the Front move to the left, and fall in the Front of the left-hand-file; cloſe your Ranks and Files forward to *Order*, and make an even Front; Files double your depth to the left, every man falling behind his bringer-up, reduceth them.

CHAP. LXIX.

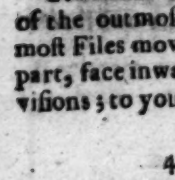
The way to make twelve ſeveral Figures of Battail, with a File ten deep, with their Reducement.

Command. FAce to the right, and wheel your Front into the midſt; Face after to your Leader.

Command. The laſt men in the Reer of the outmoſt Files face about; outmoſt Files move clear of the ſtanding part, face inwards, and cloſe your Diviſions; to your Leader.

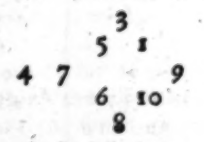


Command. The laſt man of the middle File, and the laſt Rank, face about; the firſt Rank, and the laſt Rank, and the middle File, move forwards two paces; the reſt open outward two paces; to your Leader.

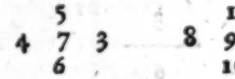


Command.

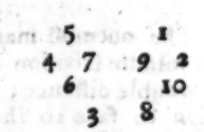
Command. The laſt man in the Front-diviſion advance forward three foot before the Front; the firſt man of the Reer-diviſion, face about, and move three foot behind the Reer; the outmoſt Files double ranks inward; Ranks, cloſe forwards to Order, and face to your Leader.



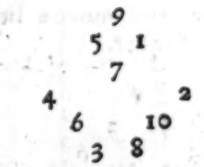
Command. The firſt man in the Front, face about; the laſt man in the Reer, ſtand; the reſt face outwards, march all until the firſt and the laſt man meet, face all to your Leader; middle-men, double to the Right rank-wiſe, and cloſe outward to Order.



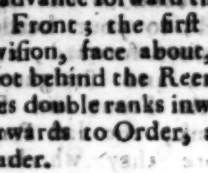
The two middle-men in the Body face about, and move cleer of the Reer three foot; face to your Leader: middle-men of the outmoſt Files cloſe inward to order.



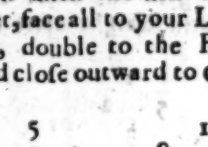
Command. Middle-man upon the right of the ſecond Rank, advance forward three foot before the Front; the three firſt men in the Front, and middle-man of the ſecond Ranks move forwards three paces, the reſt cloſing inward one pace.



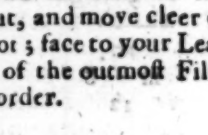
Command. The laſt Rank open outward to double diſtance, and the next Rank open outward to open Order, and the third Rank from the Reer to cloſe inward to Order.



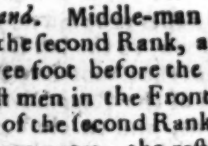
Command. The ſecond man from the Front, face about, move down and range even with the Reer: outmoſt men of the laſt Rank advance forward, and range even with the ſecond Ranks from the Front: the laſt Rank move forwards until they have exceeded three foot the next Rank that ſtands before them: Diviſions on the Wings, face outward, move two paces; to your Leader.



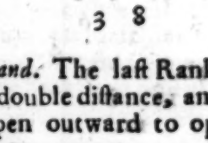
Command. Front-diviſion, face about, and march down even with the Reer; the laſt man move forwards to order, to your Leader.



Command. Middle-diviſion advance forward cleer of the ſtanding part; Diviſions in the Reer cloſe inwards to order; wheel your Reer into the midſt; to your Leader.

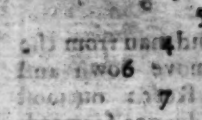


Command. The laſt Rank cloſe inward to order, and to double to the left File-wiſe; the ſecond man from the Reer move forwards into the ſecond Rank that is before you.



Reducement.

Reducement. The first man in the Front move a little to the right, the second man from the first Rank double the first man to the left Rank-wise; the first Rank wheel off by Division, and double the last man in the Reer to the right and left Rank-wise; Ranks close forwards to *Order*, & face to your Leader.

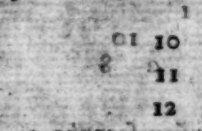


Reducement. The first and second Rank face about; the first Rank double the second to the right and left outward; to your Leader: the last Rank move forward, and even your Ranks, and straighten their Files; wheele Front and Reer to the left Flank; the last Rank face about before they wheele; then facing to their Leader, they are reduced.

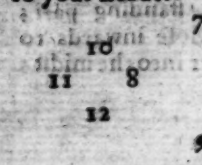
CHAP. LXX.

Twelve several Figures of Battail with a File twelve deep, with their Reducement.

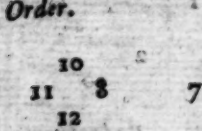
Command. FRont Half-file double your Reer to the left; face to your Leader. Half-files double your Front to the left.



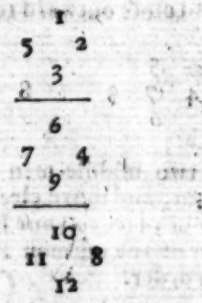
Command. The middlemost men upon each Flank face outward; the two middle-men of the last Rank, face about: Those that are thus faced, and the two middle-men of the first Rank move forward to your Leader three paces; the first and the last Rank stand, the rest move outwards two paces; face to your Leader.



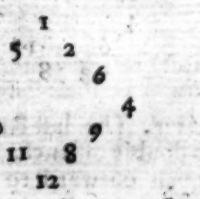
Command. The outmost Divisions open from the midst almost to twice double distance; the first Rank face about, and rank even with the midst of Ranks; face to your Leader. The last Rank double to the right File-wise, the second man from the Reer advance forward, and place himself three foot before the middle-men, the last man at the same time closing forward to *Order*.



Command. The outmost Division upon the right move away, the rest successively falling in the Reer of them until they stand straight after the first Division.

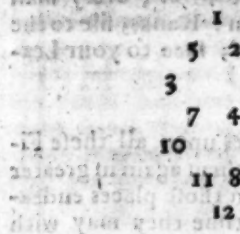


Command. The outmost man upon the left of the middle Division to open to the left to double distance; the rest of that Division to face to the right, and to move clear of the standing part; face to your Leader; the last man in the Front, face about to the last Division; the first man of the Front-Division, and the first man of the Reer-Division to move forwards, and to close to open *Order*: after facing to the left Flank, closing to the outmost man to *Order*; face to your Leader: and after face all to the Center, and move a little forward, to your Leader.

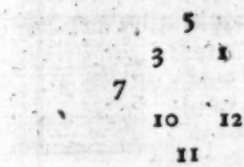


Command.

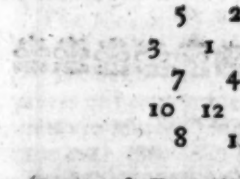
Command. The outmoſt man upon the right, and the outmoſt man upon the left, cloſe inward to *Order.*



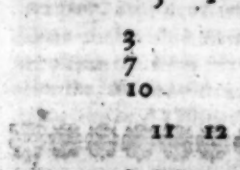
Command. The two middle men move forth to the right and left three foot clear of the ſtanding part; the firſt man in the Front face about: the firſt man in the Front, and the laſt man in the Reer, move into the ſecond that is before you: to your Leader.



Command. The two outmoſt men upon each Flank, cloſe inward to open *Order.*

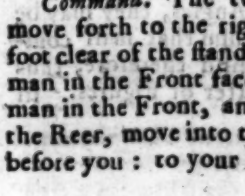


Command. Face all to Front, Reer, and both Flanks, and the four middle men move forwards into the Rank that is before them, and they will ſtand in a Square; face to your Leader.



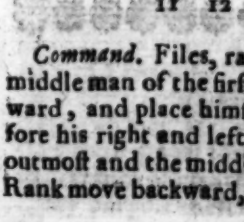
Command. Files, rank outward; the middle man of the firſt Rank move forward, and place himſelf three foot before his right and left-hand-man; the outmoſt and the middle man of the laſt Rank move backward, and place himſelf three foot behind the Reer-diviſion; cloſe forwards to open order.

Command. The firſt and the laſt Rank move to the left one pace, and after double to the right File-wiſe; the Middle-rank cloſe inward to order.



Command. The two outmoſt men of the Middle-rank, face about; move down and range even abreſt with the middle-man of the Reer-diviſion, cloſing inward to order, and facing to the Front: even men from the left, move forwards, and rank even abreſt with the middle-man of the Front-diviſion, and cloſe inward to order; the outmoſt-men open outward to double diſtance.

Command. Reer-diviſion, face about, and move two paces; the outmoſt-man upon the left, face about to the right with the laſt man in the Reer of each Diviſion; face to your Leader, and move forward two paces.



Reducement. Reer-division, face about; middle man of the first Rank of each division move forward, and rank two to the left into Front and Reer: Files close into the midst to order: Ranks, close forwards to order: Half-files, double the Front to the right intire: Ranks, rank outward into the Front, every man placing himself on the outside of his right and left-hand-men: Ranks, file to the right and left inward: Files, double your depth to the left; face to your Leader.

It might be expected that I should shew the several Charges upon all these Figures; but in regard I may, perhaps, meet with some of them again in greater Bodies, or the like; I shall for present pass them over, and in those places endeavour to give them the best satisfaction I can. In the mean time they may with ease finde out in every one of them such Charges as may instruct the Souldiers how to fight; whether it be Front, Rear, both Flanks or Angles, they may be shewn and exercised in them according to the discretion of him that shall command them, whether they be Musketiers or Pike-men. And therefore, thus much shall suffice concerning the exercising of a File for matter of Figures. In the next place followeth Exercise of greater Bodies.

The end of the first Book.

THE COMPLEAT BODY OF The Art Military.

The Second Book.

CHAP. I.

Concerning the Artillery *and the* Military Gardens, *together with the* Private Meetings, *in and about the City of* LONDON.

THe great delight in handling of Arms in *Military Exercises*, makes the City of *London* and the Suburbs thereof famous through the whole World, by reason, as I conceive, of those two great *Nurseries* or *Academies* of *Military Discipline*, the *Artillery* and *Military Garden*, from whom, as out of pure Fountains, all other our Private Meetings (as of *Townditch*, and *Cripplegate*, &c.) are derived.

The *Artillery Gardens* deserves the first place, in respect it is the greatest Meeting, from whence, as it were out of a *Nursery*, have been transplanted many able knowing Souldiers both at home and in foraign Countries, to the great honour of our Nation.

The *Military Garden* is famous likewise for the great improvement of divers worthy persons of quality daily thither resorting, whose excellent skill in *Military* Exercises hath raised many of them to high preferment here at home, and to places of honourable command abroad. The Captains in chief of these Academies are Major General *Skippon*, and Major *Henry Tyllier*, which later was the first that ever shewed in the *Military Garden* (of which I am a member) the marching of the Souldiers in a Regimental way; whose great pains amongst us deserves much honour and high commendation; shewing unto us such variety of matter in a Souldier-like way, as was never before seen by any member thereof.

Not to eclipse the fore-mentioned *Private Meetings* in *London*, but to give them that due which belongs unto them, they likewise are of great honour and fame for their frequent exercising of their Souldiers in the handling of their *Arms*, whether it be of the *Pike* or *Musket*, and instructing them in the knowledge of *Drilling*, and drawing up of Companies, and Bodies of men, furnishing both Kingdoms with able knowing Souldiers. My hearty wishes therefore are, that all and every one of them may be propt up, and supported to all ages, that when need shall require, we may draw from these *Fountains* such skilful and experienced Commanders and Officers as may be, as it were, a Bulwark to this our Nation.

Not to dwell any longer upon this discourse, I come therefore briefly to set forth several Exercises (formerly practised by me amongst those loving Gentlemen of *Town-ditch*) according to the usual numbers there appearing, whether they be great or small, practised for the most part with 24 or 32 men, and sometimes (although seldom) with 64 men, unless it were upon general days, when they were drawn forth into the field; at such times, perhaps, there might be an appearance of greater numbers, as 120 and upwards.

My purpose therefore is to pitch upon, and to make use of all and every one

of theſe numbers, making 12 Exerciſes, dividing them by threes, until I have run over them all, conceiving them ſufficient for the induſtrious to gather from thence matter enough for his intended Exerciſe. And for the more enabling of them, I ſhall endeavour (in theſe curious times) to walk along in as plain a way as poſſibly may be, giving directions unto all Words of Command, for the better performance of the ſame; wiſhing all my loving fellow-Souldiers to conceive well of my good meaning intended to them: deſiring withall to be rightly informed of what part ſoever they fall upon, that they proceed leaſurely and orderly in the ſame; which will not only be an encouragement unto the Author from whom they gather their Exerciſes, but will bring much praiſes and commendation to themſelves. But to leave every one to their own beſt thoughts, whileſt I proceed to practiſe what before promiſed concerning the ſeveral Exerciſes following.

CHAP. II.

The firſt Exerciſe of four Files ſix deep.

EAch File-leader (as being his duty) having gone over the Poſtures, ſhewing and inſtructing his File with their uſes, and neat handling of their Arms, hearing the Drums beat a Call for all to repair and ſtand to their Arms, begin to lead up their Files according to *Order*; the Leader then cloſing their Ranks and Files to cloſe *Order*, craving their ſilence, may proceed to ſhew unto them all their ſeveral Diſtances and Facings, according unto the former rule ſet down, and after he may proceed to Doublings (if he pleaſeth) as followeth.

CHAP. III.

A Doubling conſiſting of ſixteen in number, every one differing from the other, and not reduced until the laſt Word of Command.

Command. FIles, file to the right intire advancing.

Command. Bringers-up, double your Front to the left.

Command. Half-files, double your Front to the left.

Command. Front-half-files, double your Reer to the right intire.

Command. Right-half-ranks, double your left Flank intire advancing.

Command. Half-files, double your Front to the right intire.

Command. Left-half-ranks, double intire the Depth of your right Flank.

Command. Files, file to the left intire advancing.

Command. Bringers-up, double your Front to the right.

Command. Front-half-files, double your Reer to the right and left outward, following your Leaders.

Direction. Reer-half-files, face about; the File-leaders are to turn off to the right and left, the reſt are to follow them until they are marched down into the Reer, and have doubled it to the right and left outward.

Command. Half-files, double your Front inward intire.

Command. The two outmoſt Files upon each Flank, double intire the Depth of the inmoſt Files.

Direction. The two outmoſt Files face about inward, and move ſtreight down cleer of the ſtanding part; afterwards face inward, march, and cloſe your Diviſions; to your Leader.

Command. Front-half-files, double your Reer inward intire.

Direction. Reer-half-files, face about, and move outward cleer of the ſtanding part; Front-half-files, face about, march down and even the Reer to your Leader.

Command. The two outmoſt Files upon each Flank double intire, advancing the four inmoſt Files.

Direction. The two outmoſt Files move forward cleer of the ſtanding part; face inward, march and cloſe your Diviſions; face to your Leader.

Command. Double your Files inward intire, advancing, every man placing himſelf before his Leader.

Direction. The two inmoſt Files ſtand; the two outmoſt Files move forwards, and

and double your inmoſt Files intire advancing, placing your ſelves before your Leaders.

Command. Half-files, double your Front to the right, they are reduced.

CHAP. IV.

Eight ſeveral Counter-marches, with their Reducement.

Command. File-leaders, ſtand; the reſt paſs through to the right, and place your ſelves before your Leaders.

Command. The Right-hand-file, ſtand; the reſt paſs through to the right, and place your ſelves on the outſide of your right-hand-men.

Command. File-leaders and Bringers-up, ſtand; the reſt paſs through to the right, and place your ſelves before your Leaders and your Bringers-up.

Command. The outmoſt File upon each Flank, ſtand; the reſt paſs through to the right and left, placing your ſelves before your outſide-men.

Direction. Face outward, and paſs through to the right and left, placing your ſelves before the outmoſt Files; to your Leader, and cloſe your Diviſions to open Order.

Command. Bringers-up, ſtand; the reſt paſs through to the right, and place your ſelves behind your Bringers-up.

Direction. The five firſt Ranks are to face about; the next Rank to the Reer is firſt to begin the Motion; the reſt are ſucceſſively to follow, until the Leaders are become the Bringers-up.

Command. The Left-hand-file, ſtand; the reſt paſs through to the left, and place your ſelves on the outſide of your left-hand-men.

Command. File-leaders and Bringers-up, ſtand; the reſt paſs through to the right, and place your ſelves behind your Leaders and Bringers-up.

Direction. The firſt and the two next Ranks from the Reer, face about; the two firſt Ranks from the Front, and the two laſt Ranks from the Reer move forwards, placing your ſelves behind your Leaders and your Bringers-up; face to to your Leader, and cloſe your Diviſions.

Command. The outmoſt File upon each File face inward; the reſt paſs through to the right and left, placing your ſelves behind your right and left-hand-men.

CHAP. V.

Ten ſeveral Wheelings, with their Reducement.

Command. Wheel the Front-half-files inward into the midſt, and double your Reer inward intire.

Direction. Half-files, face outward, and march cleer of the ſtanding part; after face to the Reer: Front-half-files, open from the midſt to open Order, after Wheeling to the right and left inward into the Reer; to your Leader.

Command. Right and Left-half-ranks, double the depth of the Battail by Wheeling into the Front.

Direction. Right-half-ranks, wheel to the left; and Left-half-ranks, wheel to the right; to your Leader.

Command. Wheel off the Front-half-files, and double the Reer by diviſion.

Direction. Half-files, face about; and Front-half-files, wheel off by Diviſion, moving down even with the Reer; to your Leader.

Command. Wheel off your right Half-ranks, and double your left Flank to the right intire.

Direction. Face outward, and Right-half-ranks wheel about to the left and move away, and double the left Flank to the right; to your Leader.

Command. Front and Reer-half-files, double the Depth of the Battail by wheeling into the Front and Reer.

Direction. Half-files, face to the Reer; and Front and Reer-half-files wheel to the right and left inward; face to your Leader, and cloſe your Diviſions.

Command. Wheel off your Left-half-ranks, and double your right Flank by Diviſion.

Direction. Face outward, and Left-half-ranks wheel off by Diviſion, and move even with the right Flank; to your Leader.

Command.

Command. Wheel off your Reer-half-files, and double the Front to the right intire.

Direction. Half-files, face about, and wheel to the left, until you have ranged even with the Front.

Command. Wheel your Battail off by Division from the Front.

Direction. Right-half-ranks, wheel about to the right and left; Half-ranks, wheel about to the left, and move down to the Reer; face to your Leader, and close into the midst to order.

Command. Wheel off your Left-half-ranks, and double your right Flank to the left intire.

Direction. Face outward, Left-half-ranks wheel about to the right, and move forward, and double the right Flank to the left intire; to your Leader.

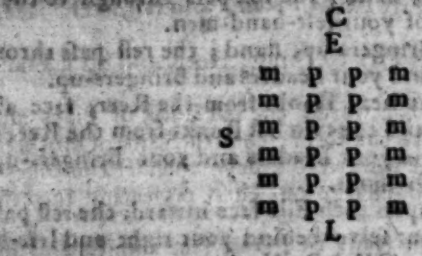
Command. Wheel off your Front-half-files, and double the Reer to the left intire.

Direction. Half-files, face about; and Front-half-files, wheel about to the right, move down and range even with the Reer; face to your Leader, reduceth them.

CHAP. VI.

Six Figures of Battail, with several Firings thereunto belonging.

Command. RAnks and Files close to order, they will stand as underneath is set forth, from which we will draw our Figures after we have fired upon this Platform three or four times.



Command. Double your Files inward intire advancing.

The first firing. Let the first two Ranks advance forward ten paces, give Fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves; after wheeling off to the right and left, placing themselves before the Front of Pikes: the next two Ranks, and so the rest successively doing the like until they have Fired once over, which reduceth them.

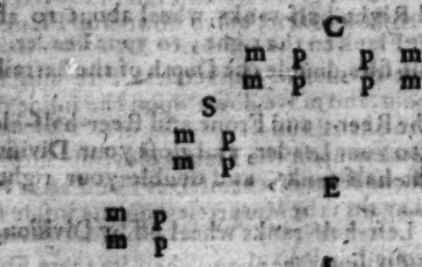
The second firing. Let the first Rank advance three paces, give Fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves; the rest doing the like until all have Fired once over, as before.

The third firing. Let them give Fire on the ground they stand, and fall off to the right and left, and Flank the Pikes.

The fourth firing. Let them Fire even with the Front, and fall in with the Reer of the Pikes; which being ended, let the Pikes charge on.

Reducement. Musketiers, double your Front by Division.

Command. The first two Ranks, stand; the rest face outward and move cleer of the standing part; to your Leader: the two last Ranks move outward side-ways two paces.

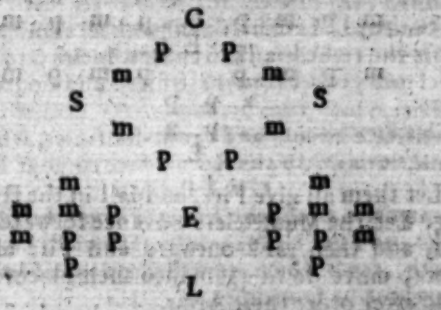


The

The first firing. Let every Division give Fire on the same ground they stand, and fall in the Reer of themselves.

The second firing. Let them advance forwards until they be cleer of the Pikes; give Fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves, after moving down into their places.

Command. Front-division, advance forward three paces; the two next Divisions move outward one pace: Pikes in each Division face about, and move two paces; to your Leader: Divisions of Musketteirs in the Reer advance forwards, and range even in Front and Reer with the Middle-divisions of Pikes; the first Rank of Pikes in the Front-division move three foot cleer of the standing part.



The first firing. Let them give Fire to the Front, and fall in the Reer of themselves.

The second firing. Let them give Fire to Front, Reer, and both Flanks altogether.

Direction. Reer-divisions, face outward; the last Rank of Pikes and Musketteirs of the Front-division, face to the Reer; the last Rank of Musketteirs move down cleer of the Reer, and close inward to order; then let the Pikes port, and after the Musketteirs have Fired, charge on, then retreating into their places again.

Command. The first and the last Rank of Pikes, face about, and move down cleer of the Reer, and close Ranks forwards to order; outmost Divisions of Musketteirs face about, move down and flank your own divisions of Pikes: The first Division of Pikes move forward, and range even abreast with your own Division of Musketteirs; the Front-division of Musketteirs closing into the midst to order.

The first firing. Let the Front-division give Fire and fall in the Reer of themselves; after wheeling off to the right and left, move down and Flank the Reer-division of Pikes.

The second firing. Let the Front-division of Musketteirs Fire and fall in the Reer of themselves; then face about, and move down upon the inside of the next division of Pikes; and after face to their Leader.

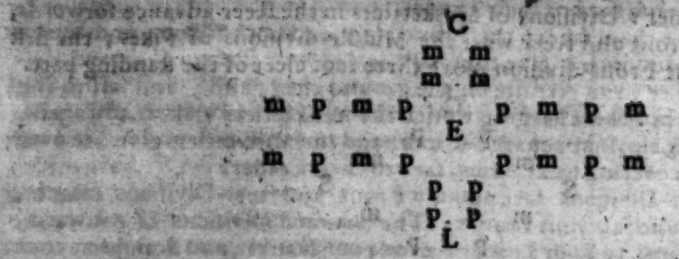
The third firing. Let the Musketteirs upon the Flanks move up into the room of the former, and Fire, falling in the Reer of themselves; and after face about, and move down into their places again; the Musketteirs on the inside moving up into their places again.

The fourth firing. Let the Reer-division face about; then let them Fire to Front

and

and Reer, and fall in the Reer of themſelves; let the Pikes charge, and after ordering their Arms, their Reer-diviſion facing to their Leader, the Muskettiers thereof may move up into their places again.

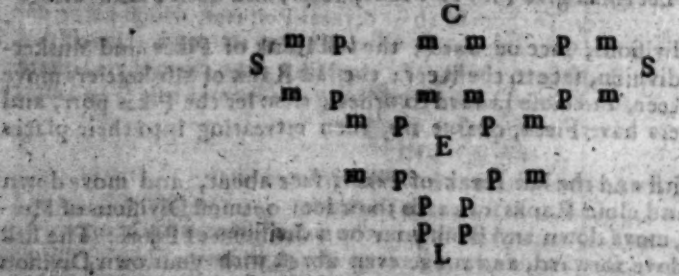
Command. The outmoſt diviſions face outward, and move two paces; face to your Leader, move up until you range even abreſt with the ſecond diviſions next the Front; Reer-diviſion move ſtreight forward two paces.



The firſt firing. Let them all give Fire, and fall in the Reer of themſelves.

The ſecond firing. Let the Muskettiers advance forwards until they be cleer of the Front-diviſion, and then rank outward and Fire altogether; after filing inward as they were, move down again into their places: the Pikes at the ſame time charging, and after order their Arms.

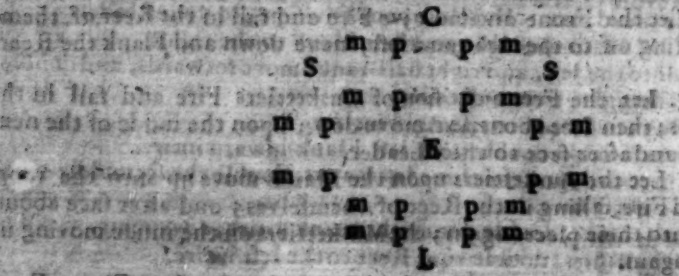
Command. Front-diviſion advance forward three paces; the outmoſt diviſion upon the Flanks move up, and range even with the Front.



The firſt firing. Direction for the ſame: let them all face to the Reer, and the middle-diviſion of Muskettiers move forwards, and flank the Reer-diviſion of Pikes; after let all the Muskettiers advance forwards three foot cleer of their own diviſions of Pikes, and give Fire, falling in the Reer of themſelves; and after facing about, move into their places again.

The ſecond firing. Let them Fire as they ſtand, and fall in the Reer of themſelves; and the Pikes in the Reer may charge on, and after facing to their Leader.

Command. The outmoſt diviſions face inward, march three paces; and the next two diviſions face outward, and move two paces; to your Leader: Reer-diviſion, move outward until you ſtand ſtreight with the Front-diviſions.



The

The first firing. Let the Front-Division of Musketteers give fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves; and after moving down in the room of them in the Reer: they at the same time moving up into the Front firing, in like manner moving down, and exchanging places with them in the Reer.

The second firing. Let the Musketteers upon the Flanks move forward even with the Front, give fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves; and after move down into their places again, and face to their Leader.

The third firing. Let them face to the Front, reer, and both Flanks, and let the Pikes port, and the Musketteers give fire.

The fourth firing. Let them give fire on the ground they stand, and fall in the Reer of the Pikes; the Pikes charging whilest the Musketteers make ready again.

The fifth firing. Let the Pikes charge at foot, and the Musketteers give fire over their heads; then recovering their Arms, face to their Leader.

Reducement. Front-Divisions face about; Front and Reer-Divisions march, and interchange ground, to your Leader; The out-most Divisions face inward, and close your Divisions, to your Leader: even your Ranks, and streighten your Files, and close to Order, they are reduced.

The Captain may now command the Musketteers to poyse their Arms, and file away to the right and left, making as it were a Street or Gallery for him to troop away the Pikes, and lodge his Colours.

CHAP. VII.

The second Exercise, with four Files six deep.

THe Souldiers being the second time summoned to appear at their place of Rendezvous, the Sergeants having drawn forth the Files; may give liberty to the Leaders thereof to exercise them in their several Postures; which being ended, their Captain or other Officers may command them to lead up their Files, and to joyn them into a Body; after which he may shew unto them their Distances, and Facings, with their several kinds, following the former rule, and after proceed to these or the like Doublings following.

CHAP. VIII.

Eighteen several Doublings with their reducements.

Command. HAlf-files, double your Front to the left.

Command. Double your files to the right intire, advancing.

Command. Front half-files, double your Reer to the right intire.

Command. Left half-ranks, double your right Flank to the left.

Direction. Face all to the right, and left-half-ranks move forward; and double your right Flank to the left, to your Leader.

Command. Double your Ranks to the left intire.

Command. Right half-ranks, double your left Flank intire, advancing.

Command. Left half-ranks, double your right Flank inward intire.

Direction. Half-files of the right half-ranks, face about; right half-ranks, move cleer of the standing part; face all to the right: left half-ranks, move forwards into the right Flank, to your Leader.

Command. The three first, and the three last Ranks, double the six middle-most intire to the left Flank.

Direction. The three first, and the three last, face to the left, march cleer of the standing part, face inward, move, and close your Divisions, to your Leader.

Command. Right half-ranks, double your left Flank to the right.

Direction. Face all to the left, and right half-ranks move forwards, and double your left Flank to the right, to your Leader.

Command. Double your Ranks to the right intire.

Command. Right half-ranks double your left Flank inward intire.

Command. The three first, and the three last Ranks, double the six middle-most Ranks intire to the right Flank.

Command. Left half-ranks, double your right Flank intire, advancing.

Command. Front half-files, double your Reer to the left intire.

Command. Half-files, double your Front to the right.

Command. Double your Files to the left intire advancing, every man placing himself before his Leader.

Command. Front half-files, double your Reer to the right, following your Leaders.

Direction. Half-files, face about; File-leaders, turn off to the left, and move down upon the right of the Reer, the rest following successively; to your Leader.

Command. Files double your Depth to the left intire; they are reduced being faced to their Leader.

CHAP. IX.

Twelve several Counter-marches, with their reducements.

Command. Files to the right hand counter-march, losing ground.

Command. Ranks to the right hand counter-march, losing ground.

Direction. Face all to the right.

Command. Front and Reer half-files, inter-change ground.

Direction. Front half-files, face about to the left.

Command. Right and left half-ranks, inter-change ground.

Direction. Face inward.

Command. File-leaders, face about; the rest pass through to the right, and place your selves behinde your Leaders; face to the Front.

Command. Counter-march your Front and Reer into the midst.

Command. Counter-march your Flanks into the midst. Face out-ward.

Command. File-leaders, and Half-file-leaders, stand; the rest pass through to the right, and place your selves before your Leaders, and Half-file-leaders.

Direction. The second Rank from the Front, and from the Half-file-leaders, are to begin the Motion, placing themselves as before commanded.

Command. The out-most File upon the right, and the second File from the left stands; the rest pass through to the right, and place your selves on the out-side of your right-hand men.

Command. Files to the left-hand counter-march, losing ground.

Command. Front and Reer half-files, counter-march to the right.

Direction. Front and Reer half-files, turn off distinctly by your selves, on the ground you stand; face to your Leader.

Command. Right and left Half-ranks, counter-march to the right.

Direction. Face to the right; and right and left Half-ranks, turn off distinctly to the right; face to your Leader, they are reduced.

CHAP. X.

Twelve several Wheelings, with their Reducements.

Command Wheel your Reer Half-files inward into the midst, and double the Front inward intire.

Direction. Right and left Half-ranks, open from the midst to double distance; Reer half-files face about, and wheel your Reer inward into the midst, moving forward, doubling the Front inward intire.

Command. Wheel off your Right half-ranks, and double your left Flank to the left intire.

Direction. Face outward right Half-ranks, wheel about to the right, and double your left Flank to the left; to your Leader.

Command. Right and left Half-ranks, double the Length of your Battail by wheeling outward to the Front.

Direction. Face outward, and right Half-ranks, wheel to the left, and left Half-ranks, wheel to the right, and after close Files into the midst to order.

Command. Wheel off your right Half-ranks, and double your left Flank by Division.

Direction. Face outward: right Half-ranks, wheel about to the right and left outward, moving forward, & doubling the left Flank to the right & left outward.

Command. Wheel your left Half-ranks inward into the right Flank.

Direction. Face outward, and open from the midst to double distance; the Front and Reer half-files, and after the left Half-Ranks may wheel inward, and double the right Flank inward intire.

Command.

Command. Wheele off your Reer Half-files, and double your Front to the left entire; Half-files face about.

Command. Wheel your right Half-ranks inward into the midst, and double the left Flank inward entire.

Direction. Face outward; and Front and Reer Half-files that were, are to open from the midst to double distance, and right Half-ranks wheel inward, and move forward into the left Flank.

Command. Wheel off your Reer Half-files, and double your Front to the right entire; Half-files face about.

Command. Wheel off your left Half-ranks, and double your right Flank by Division.

Command. Wheel off your Front Half-files, and double your Reer to the right entire: Half-files face about.

Command. Double the Depth of the Battail by wheeling Front and Reer into the midst of each Division.

Direction. Front Half-files move forward four paces, then the last Rank of each Division face about, and wheel into the midst of Front and Reer of each Division; face to your Leader.

Command. Wheel off your Front Half-files, and double your Reer to the left entire; Half-files face about.

Command. Wheel your Battail off by Division from the Reer.

Direction. Face all about, and right Half-ranks wheel about to the right and left outward to the Front; and closing Files into the midst to *Order*, they will be reduced as at first, and stand as underneath is set forth.

C
E
m p p m
S S
m p p m
m p p m
m p p m
m p p m
m p p m
L

CHAP. XI.

Several plain Firings upon this Exercise of 24 men, with Figures of Battail belonging to the same.

A *Commander* having thus passed over the Motions, may next prepare for Firings; and calling up his Serjeants, he may give them order how the Musketiers shall fire in Front and Reer: but before he begin his Firings, it will be expedient that he double his Front to the right and left inward by the Bringers-up, which being ended, he may proceed as followeth.

The first Firing. Let them fire by Divisions drawn forth ten paces before the Front of Pikes, and fall in the Reer of themselves.

The second Firing. Let them fire again, and fall off to the right and left, moving down before the Front of Pikes, and closing their Divisions.

The third Firing. Let the first Rank kneel down, the next stoop, and the last stand upright, and give fire altogether; the Pikes in the mean time are to advance their Arms, and open to the right and left, charge on to the Front, until they be clear of the Musketiers, and then face inwards, and close their Divisions; then facing all about, they may give fire to the Reer marching.

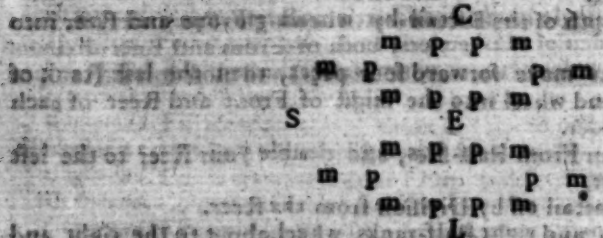
The fourth Firing. Let the last Rank face about to the left, and give fire, and fall off to the right and left, placing themselves before their Leaders of their own Divisions of Musketiers.

The fifth Firing. Let them face about to the left again, give fire, and fall off to

the right and left, and flank their Pikes, the Pikes at the same instant facing about, and charge on clear of the Muskettiers, the Muskettiers after facing inward, and close their Divisions; the Pikes may charge to the Horse, and the Muskettiers may give fire over their heads after this manner.

The sixth Firing. Let the first Rank stoop, and the other two stand upright, and give fire altogether; after recovering of their Arms, they may all face to the Front, commanding the Pikes to double the Front inward entire, and afterwards Files to double their Depth to the right and left outward, every man falling behind his Bringer-up, closing Files into the midst to *Order*, and wheeling about into the first Front, he may proceed as followeth.

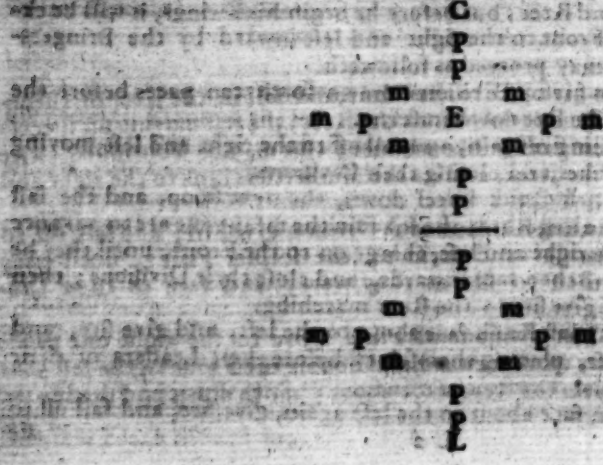
Command. Front Half-files advance forwards three paces; the middle Rank of each Division face outward, and move clear of the standing part; face to your Leader.



The first Firing. Let the inmost Divisions of Muskettiers in the Front fire, and fall off in the Reer of themselves; after facing about, move down, and interchange ground with them in the Reer; they at the same instant moving up, *firing*, and in like manner interchanging ground with them in the Reer; and at the same time the outmost men are to move up, and fire to the Front, and to fall off to the right and left, into the place of them in the Reer, they at the same time moving up, and firing in like manner: this firing may be continued twice over.

The second Firing. Let them face to both the Flanks, and let the Divisions of Pikes in the midst open outward until they be clear of the standing part, then *Porting*; let the Muskettiers give fire on the same ground they stand, and the Pikes after may charge on until the Muskettiers make ready again, and then retreating into their places again, the Muskettiers may give fire, as before is mentioned, the Pikes in like manner charging on, then retreating to their places; face all to their Leader.

Command. Inmost Divisions of Pikes move to the left one pace, and double to the right File-wise, and face to Front and Reer, and march three paces; middle File of Front and Reer-Divisions open from the midst to double Distance; face to your Leader.



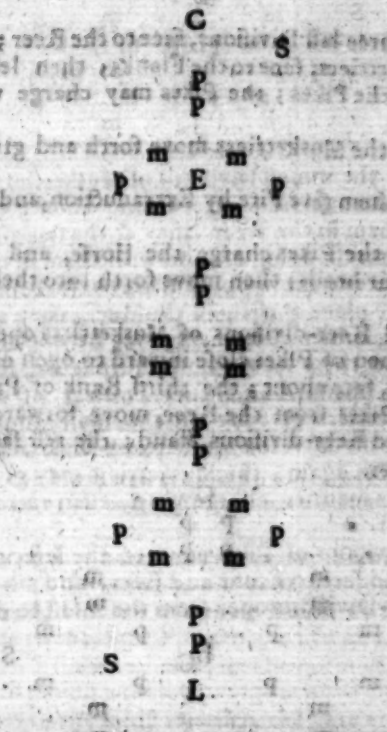
The

The first firing. Face to Front and Reer, and then give Fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves.

The second firing. Let the Musketiers move forwards, and the inmost Division rank outward into Front and Reer, and then give Fire altogether, and file as they were; the Pikes may charge whilst they make ready, and fall into their places again, they may continue upon this Firing a second time.

The third firing. Let the Musketiers, and the two outmost men of the Pikes, face to both Flanks; and likewise the Middle-divisions of Pikes are to face to both Flanks after this manner: the first two of the Reer-division are to face to the right, and the two last men of the Front-division are to face to the left; then let the Musketiers give fire to both Flanks; and the Pikes may after charge to the Front, Reer, and both Flanks until the Musketiers make ready again; this Firing may be continued twice; to your Leader.

Command. The outmost single men of Musketiers in the Front-divion, face about; the two outmost men of Musketiers, both of Front and Reer-divisions move forward and close to order; face to your Leader, and close inward to open Order.



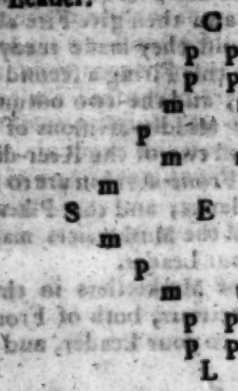
The first firing. Let them give Fire to the Front, and fall in the Reer of themselves, then face about and move down into the Reer; the rest moving up successively, giving Fire and falling off in like manner; this may be continued twice over; then face them to the Reer, and let the Musketiers rank to the right and left outward.

The second firing. Let the first Rank of each Division give Fire, and fall off to the right and left in manner and form of the former Firing, until they have Fired twice over; then to file as they were, and face to their Leader.

Command. Front and Reer-divisions of Pikes move to the right one pace; the second Division of Pikes move forward, and double the Front to the left; the second Division of Pikes from the Reer, face about; move down and double the

Pike

Pikes in the Reer to the left; to your Leader: Middle-divisions of Musketiers open outward to twice double distance; face all to the Center, and march two or three paces; to your Leader.



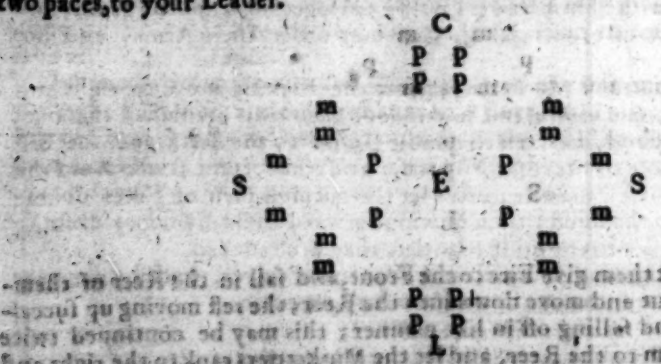
The first firing. The three last Divisions, face to the Reer; the two outmost men both of Pikes and Musketiers, face to the Flanks; then let them all give Fire, and fall in the Reer of the Pikes; the Pikes may charge while the Musketiers make ready again.

The second firing. Let the Musketiers move forth and give Fire as at first, and after fall in again.

The third firing. Let them give Fire by Extraduction, and fall again in the Reer of the Pikes.

The fourth firing. Let the Pikes charge the Horse, and the Musketiers give Fire altogether over their heads; then move forth into their first places, and face to their Leader.

Command. Front and Reer-divisions of Musketiers open outward to double distance; the outmost men of Pikes close inward to open order: the third Rank of Pikes from the Front, face about; the third Rank of Pikes from the Front, and the third Rank of Pikes from the Reer, move forwards to order; face to your Leader: Front and Reer-divisions, stand; the rest face outward, and move two paces, to your Leader.



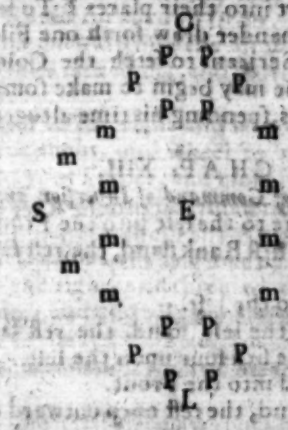
The first firing. Let the first Divisions Fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves; then wheeling off to the right and left into the place of those Musketiers in the Reer; they at the same time moving forward into their places, and firing, falling off in like manner; the Musketiers may give Fire on the ground they stand, falling in the Reer of themselves: This firing being twice performed, we proceed to another.

The second firing. Let the Front-divisions of Musketiers and those upon the Flanks give Fire, and fall in the midst of Pikes; in the mean time the last Division of Pikes may open outward until they be cleer of the standing part; then let

Pikes

Pikes charge all whilſt the Muſkettiers make ready again: This firing may be performed twice; after which, let them move forth into their places again; and face to Front and Reer, and give Fire, and fall off in the Reer of themſelves: the Pikes may charge, which being ended, face them to their Leader.

Command. The laſt Rank of Pikes of the Middle-diviſion, face about; middle-diviſion of Pikes move forward, until you range even abreſt with the midſt of the Front and Reer-diviſions of Pikes; to your Leader; the laſt man of the outmoſt diviſions of Muſkettiers, face about; outmoſt-men move forward three paces, and face to your Leader: Ranks of the Front and Reer-diviſions open from the midſt to open order; Reer-diviſions move forward two paces.



The firſt firing. Let them Fire to the Front, and fall in between the Pikes: this may be done twice; after which, face to the Front and Reer, and Fire there in the ſame manner: then let Pikes and Muſkettiers interchange ground, let them give Fire altogether unto Front and Reer; then facing about, interchange ground with the Pikes, who are to charge on whilſt the Muſkettiers make ready; then retreating, let them all face outwards, and they will ſtand in form like a Saw, after they have moved two paces.

The ſecond firing. Let the Muſkettiers give Fire altogether to both Flanks, and the Pikes to charge on; after retreating, they may order their Arms, and face all to their Leader.

Reducement. The outmoſt Muſkettiers upon the Flanks, move to right and left inward, placing themſelves in the midſt of their own diviſions; the outmoſt men of Pikes to ſtand, the reſt to double Ranks to the left; and the firſt Rank of Pikes to double to the right File-wiſe, and the ſecond Rank from the Reer to double to the left File-wiſe; after let the outmoſt men of Pikes double their inmoſt Files into the midſt; then moving forward their diviſions, evening their Front, cloſing Files to the midſt to order, they are reduced.

And now we will lodge our Colours, and repoſe our ſelves, until by the beat of the Drum we ſhall be ſummon'd to make our appearance.

CHAP. XII.

The third Exerciſe, with four Files ſix deep.

BEing the third time brought into the Field compleatly arm'd, where being drawn forth into Files, and by the Leaders thereof exerciſed, as before; they are commanded to lead up their Files; yet not preſuming to place themſelves, but leaves that to the diſcretion of their Supernour Officers, who knows beſt the deſert of each particular man. But by the way, give me leave in this place to tell the Souldiers and Leaders of our private Meetings, that this decorum is not rightly obſerved: the Souldier thinking himſelf wiſer then his Leader, preſumes to chop and change by Counter-marching of his File, making ſome part of the Reer to be more honourable then the Front, which cannot be; for the youngeſt Soul-

der

dier there is of more honor then the eldest in the Reer, in regard it is the more honorable part of the *Battalia*, therefore it is plain, that they take more upon them then becomes them; for no File-leader ought to meddle with his File in matter of motions, without consent of the superior Officers; neither ought the Leader either through favour, or out of malice, when all the Files are joyned into one compleat Body, to Countermarch the Files, (and after proceeding to other Motions) depriving thereby the Leaders thereof of their due honour; for else, why (just in the time of Exercise or Marching) should one single File, as the right or left, be Countermarched, if he bore not malice to some, thrusting them by this unsouldier-like way out of their places, and through favour or affection often times putting men of little desert into their places? To leave this discourse, not pleasing to some, let the Commander draw forth one File of Pikes, and double it by the Half-file, and send a Serjeant to fetch the Colours; and after closing his Ranks and Files to *Order*, he may begin to make some alteration in the exercising of them in their Motions, spending his time altogether upon *Inversion* and *Conversion*.

CHAP. XIII.

Thirty several Words of Command of Inversion and Conversion.

Command. RAnks, rank entire to the left into the Front.

Direction. The first Rank stand, the rest face to the left, and successively move into the Front.

Command. Ranks, rank four to the left.

Direction. The first four upon the left stand, the rest face to the left, and by fours fall successively behind the first four upon the left.

Command. Files, rank outward into the Front.

Direction. The inmost Files stand, the rest open outward to double distance, and after rank outward into the Front.

Command. Ranks, file three to the right and left outward by wheeling.

Direction. The three outmost men upon the right and left wheel to the right and left outward, the rest doing the like by threes; after close into the midst to *Order*, and face to their Leader.

Command. Files, rank inward into the Reer.

Direction. Face to the Reer, and move to the right and left inward into the Reer; to your Leader.

Command. Ranks, file six to the right and left outward, advancing.

Direction. The outmost man upon the right and left stand, the rest move outward until they be six in a File, and the next outmost men are to stand, the other doing the like, and after close Files into the midst to *Order*.

Command. Files, rank inward into the midst of Ranks.

Direction. Front Half-files face about, and right and left Half-ranks open from the midst to double distance, the rest open outward to *Order*, and move to the right and left inward to the midst of Ranks; to your Leader, and close Files inward to *Order*.

Command. Ranks, file 12 to the right and left inward, every man placing himself before the Leaders and Bringers up of the middle Files.

Direction. Ranks, open backward to double distance, the middle File stand, the rest advance forwards, and file twelve to the right and left inward, placing themselves before the Leaders, and Bringers-up of the middle Files.

Command. Files, rank six to the right and left inward.

Direction. Files, open from the midst to double distance, and move three to the right, and three to the left inward, until you have made four Ranks six abrest; after close Ranks forward to *Order*.

Command. Ranks, rank outward into Front and Reer, every man placing himself on the outside of his right and left-hand-man.

Direction. Half-Files face about, and rank to the right and left outward into Front and Reer as is commanded; face to your Leader, and close Ranks forward to *Order*.

Command.

Command. Ranks, file 12 to the right and left inward, every man placing himſelf behind the Leaders and Bringers-up of the middle Files.

Direction. Ranks, open backward to double diſtance, the middle Files ſtand, the reſt move ſide-ways to the right and left, and place your ſelves behind the Leaders and Bringers up of the middle Files.

Command. Files, rank fix to the right and left inward into Front, Reer, and Midſt.

Direction. The three laſt Ranks of the Front and Reer Half-files face about, and Files open outward to double diſtance, and move to the right and left inward into Front, Reer, and Midſt, making four Ranks fix abreſt; after face to your Leader, and cloſe Ranks forward to *Order*.

Command. Ranks, rank outward into the Midſt.

Direction. Front Half-files face about, and move outward, and rank to the Midſt, and face to your Leader.

Command. Ranks, wheel to the right and left outward.

Direction. Half-files face about, and wheel to the right and left outward into both the Flanks; face to your Leader, and cloſe Files into the midſt to *Order*.

Command. Files, rank fix to the right and left outward into Front, Reer, and Midſt.

Direction. The three laſt Ranks of the Front and Reer Half-files face about, and rank outward, three to the right, and three to the left into Front, Reer, and Midſt; face to your Leader, and cloſe Ranks and Files to their diſtance of *Order*.

Command. Ranks, file to the right entire, advancing.

Direction. The outmoſt File ſtand, the reſt move forward, and file to the right entire, advancing.

Command. Files, rank three to the right.

Direction. The firſt three men from the Front rank three to the right, the reſt ſucceſſively doing the ſame, cloſing Ranks forward to *Order*.

Command. Ranks, wheel to the left.

Direction. Ranks, open backward to open *Order*, and wheel to the left.

Command. Files, rank fix to the left.

Direction. The firſt ſix men rank fix to the left, the reſt ſucceſſively doing the ſame, until they have made four Ranks fix abreſt, then cloſe Ranks forwards to *Order*.

Command. Ranks, rank outward into the midſt, every man placing himſelf on the outſide of his right and left-hand-man.

Direction. Front Half-files face about, and Front and Reer Half-files rank outward into the midſt, placing your ſelves on the outſide of your right and left-hand-men; face to your Leader.

Command. Ranks, wheel three to the right and left outward.

Direction. The laſt Rank face about, and wheel by threes to the right and left outward towards both Flanks; face to your Leader, and cloſe Files to the right to *Order*, they will ſtand four abreſt, and ſix deep.

Command. Files, file outward entire, advancing.

Direction. The outmoſt File ſtand, the reſt advance forward, and place your ſelves before the outmoſt Files; after cloſe Files into the midſt to *Order*.

Command. Files, file to the right.

Direction. The right-hand-File ſtand, the reſt face about, and fall in the Reer of your right-hand-File; to your Leader.

Command. Files, file twelve to the right.

Direction. The firſt twelve ſtand, the other move forward, filing twelve to the right.

Command. Files, wheel inward into Front and Reer.

Direction. Files open from the midſt to twice double diſtance, after face inward, and wheele fix to the right, and fix to the left, until you have made two Ranks twelve abreſt; face to your Leader, and cloſe Ranks forwards to *Order*.

Command. Ranks wheele inward to both the Flanks.

Direction. Ranks, open from the midſt to twice double diſtance; the firſt Rank, face about; the firſt and the laſt Rank, wheel fix to the right, and fix to the left inward to both the Flanks; face to your Leader, and cloſe Files to the midſt to order.

Command. Files, file three to the right and left outward into Front and Reer.

Direction. Half-files, face about; the three firſt and the three laſt Ranks are to ſtand; the reſt are to move by threes, filing to Front and Reer to the right and left outward; and after face to the Front, and cloſe their Ranks forwards to order.

Command. Files, file to the midſt by Diviſion.

Direction. Half-files of the outmoſt Files, face about; and the outmoſt Files move forwards, and file by Diviſion unto the midſt of Files; face to your Leader.

Command. Files, rank inward into the Front.

Direction. Files, open from the midſt to twice double diſtance, and move forward to the right and left inward into the Front.

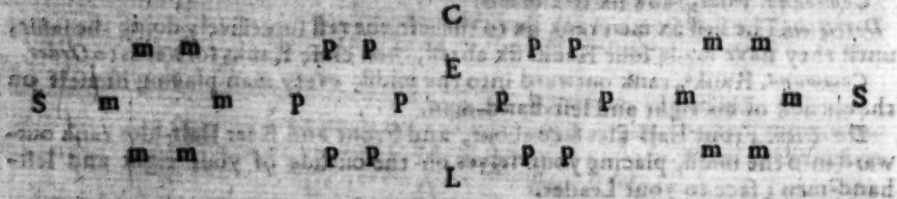
Command. Ranks, file fix to the right and left outward.

Direction. The outmoſt men are to ſtand; the reſt are to move ſide-ways to the right and left, making fix in a File; and then the next outſide men in like manner are to ſtand, the reſt ſucceſſively are to file as before.

CHAP. XIV.

Next followeth ſeveral Figures of Battail, with Firings upon the ſame, for the performance whereof,

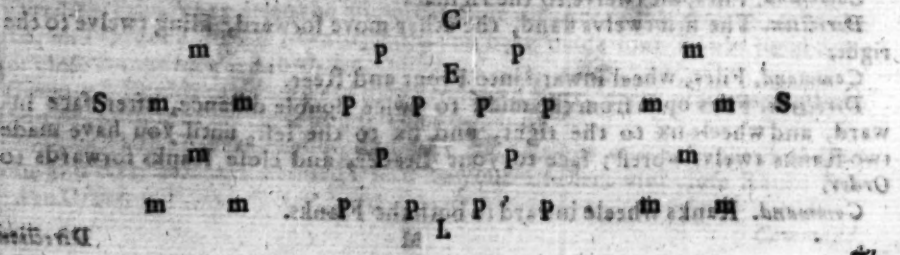
Command. BRingers-up to double their Front to the right and left inward, and Ranks and Files to open to open order, and Muſkettiers to cloſe outward to cloſe order; the inmoſt Files of Pikes cloſe outward to the ſame diſtance, and they will ſtand in four Diviſions; after let the Middle-rank in each Diviſion open outward to open order, they will produce the firſt Figure.



The firſt firing. Let the firſt Rank give Fire, and wheel off to the right and left, and place themſelves in the room of them in the Reer; and they at the ſame time moving forwards in their places, and give Fire as the firſt; after wheel off into their places again.

The ſecond firing. Let the Middle-ranks advance three foot before the Front, and give Fire; face about, and move down into their places again.

Command. The laſt Rank in each Diviſion move to the left one pace, and double to the right File-wiſe; and then advance forward, until their firſt men exceed two foot the Front of each Diviſion; then let the firſt Rank open outward to open order, and the laſt Rank cloſe inward to the ſame diſtance.

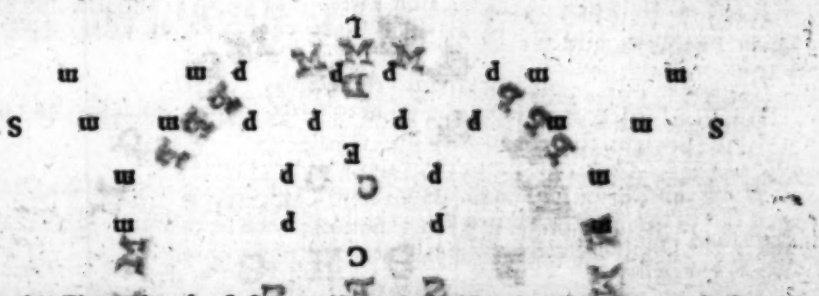


The

The first firing. Let the middle File give Fire to the Front, and fall in the Reer of themselves.

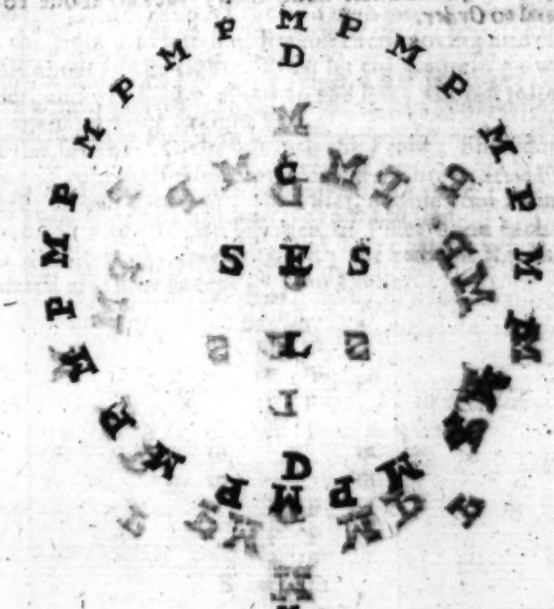
The second firing. Let the first Rank give fire on the ground they stand, and after fall off to the right and left into the room of them in the Reer; they at the same time moving forward into their ground, and give fire in like manner, and fall off into their places again, and then the Pikes may charge on whilest the Musketiers make ready again.

Command. Face all about: middle File, move forward three foot clear of the Reer; the first Rank close inward to *Order*, the last Rank open outward something more then to open *Order*.



Upon this Figure let the first man in each division kneel down, and then to give fire altogether over one anothers heads, the Pikes at the same time charging breft-high to the Horse; then face all to their first Front.

Command. The last men in the Reer double to the left Rank-wise; Files, close into the midst to *Order*; Muskettiers, double your Pikes inward entire advancing, and move forward three paces; Files, double your depth to the right and left outward of each Arms, every man falling behind his fringer-up; Front Half-files, double your Reer entire into the midst; Files, double to the right and left outward; Files, file to the right entire advancing: which being done, wheel them to the right about into a Ring, in form as followeth.

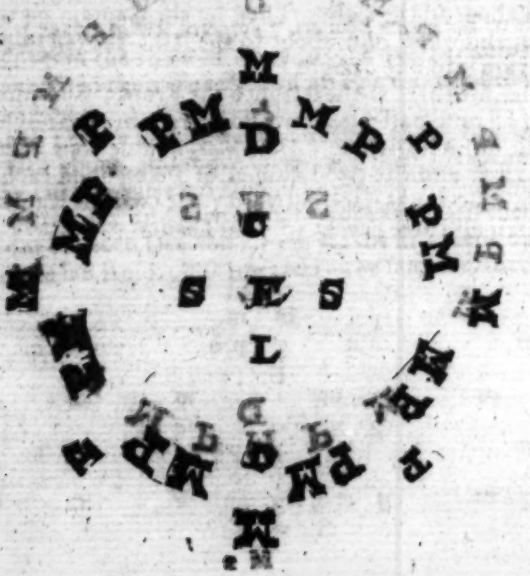


Upon

Upon this Figure let the Pikes charge round, and the Musketiers give fire all togeather; which being ended, let the Commander go to the place where the File-leader stands, and wheel them off again to the left until he hath brought them into one straight File, and then proceed.

Command. Half-files, double your Front to the right; Ranks, double to the right and left inward: Files, double outward entire, advancing: Half-files of each Arms, double your Ranks forwards to the left; Front Half-files, double the Rear to the left: Files, file to the left entire, advancing, and wheel about into a Ring; then face all to the Center, and close Files of each Arms to the right and left inward to close *Order*.

Command. Middle-men in each Division move backward, and place your selves two foot behind your right and left-hand-men; face all about to the right, and close Ranks inward to *Order*.



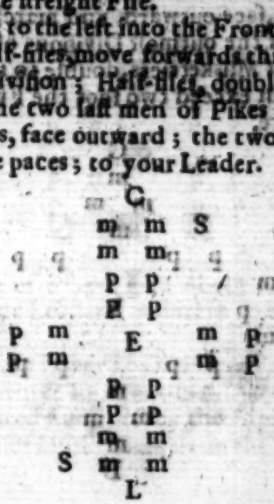
Upon

Upon this Figure let them Fire by circumduction after this manner, let the odd men of Pikes port; and then the odd Musketter, where the first Front was, is to give Fire, and to move away to the left; and the next odd man of Musketters upon the right, immediately comes stooping underneath the Pikes into the first mans place, Firing in like manner, moving away into the next odd mans place of the Musketters upon the left; the rest doing the same until the Musketter come into his place again.

Command. Face all to the Center; odd men move forwards and place your selves two foot before the right and left-hand-men; after face all to the right about.

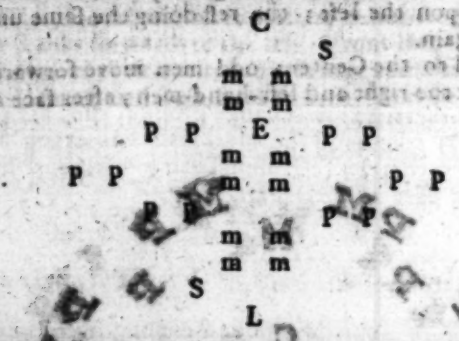
Upon this Figure you may Fire likewise by way of circumduction: the Pikes porting all round, and having performed one Firing in this manner; in the next place, let the odd Musketters and Pikes move forth again, and kneel down; the odd Pike-men charging at foot, the Musketters may give Fire altogether; then let them face to the Center, and let the odd men move forwards, and place themselves between the right and left-hand-men; then moving and closing their ring, let them face all about to the right: Then let the Captain go where the Leader of the File stands, and wheel him about to the left; the rest following until they be all brought again into one streight File.

Command. Files, file three to the left into the Front; Files, double to the right intire advancing; Front-half-files, move forwards three paces; Files, double your depth to the right of each Division; Half-files, double your Front intire into the midst. The two first and the two last men of Pikes upon each Flank, face inward; the two Middle-ranks, face outward; the two last Ranks of Musketters, face about; march all three paces; to your Leader.



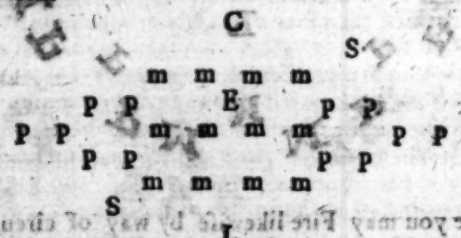
To paſs by the Firings which may be performed upon this Figure, I ſhall proceed from hence to draw another.

Command. The outmoſt diviſions of Muſketiers cloſe inward to order; Front and Reer Diviſions of Pikes, open outward to double diſtance; Pikes, double inward Rank-wiſe, and they will ſtand as followeth.



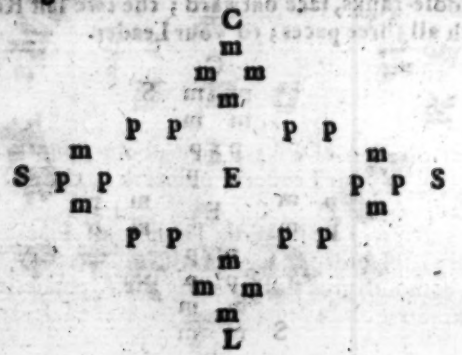
Upon this Figure Fire to the Front in their ſeveral Diviſions one after another, and fall in the Reer of themſelves; then wheel off to the right into the Reer, the reſt of the Diviſions moving forward in their room, doing the like until all have fired over twice.

Command. Muſketiers, double your Ranks outward in each Diviſion, and they will ſtand as underneath.



Upon this Figure, as in the former, they may Fire likewiſe to the Front, falling down into the Reer; and after every Rank ſucceſſively moving up into the Front, may Fire and fall off in like manner: this Firing may be done twice to the Front; and being faced to the Reer, they may there give Fire after this manner, and after face to their firſt Front.

Command. Muſketiers, double to the right and left inward File-wiſe; middlemoſt diviſion of Muſketiers, face outward, and march until you have placed your ſelves in Front and Reer of the outmoſt Diviſions of Pikes: The laſt Rank of Front and Reer-diviſions of Muſketiers, double to the right File-wiſe, and move forward until your firſt men exceed two foot the Front of each diviſion, which occaſioneth the next Figure.



It

It is now high time that we put a period to this Exercise; wherefore let the Ensign unfurl his Colours, the Souldiers shoulder their Arms, and the Drum beat a march; upon which the Ensign being in the midst may display his Colours so long as shall be convenient, and after the Leader may proceed to their reducement, as followeth.

Reducement. Middle-file of Musketiers, face about, and march cleer of your own Divisions, and double to the left Rank-wise; Musketiers, close inward to order; Pikes, double to the right and left outward File-wise: Files, close into the midst to order; Ranks, close to order; Pikes, move forward and even your Front; Pikes and Musketiers interchange ground, they are reduced.

Now the Leader may command the Musketiers to troop away, and after he may lodge his Colours, thereby refreshing both himself and his Souldiers, until the next summons by beat of the Drum.

CHAP. XV.

The fourth Exercise, consisting of four Files eight deep.

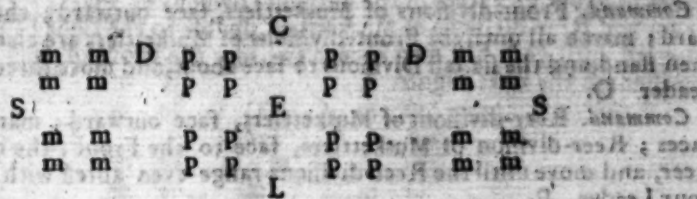
THe Souldiers upon the fourth summons coming unto the place of Exercise, make fuller appearance then before, insomuch that their Files are drawn forth eight deep; the Leaders thereof having spent some time in exercising them in each particular posture, are called upon to joyn into a body; where their Leader stands, bethinking of himself what new matter he should delight them with, there being sufficient in any one particular motion for their Exercise, pitches for present to spend his chiefest time in motions upon facing, continuing longer in them, in respect of the several Figures of Battail demonstrated by them.

Now for the more ready performance thereof, I shall onely give the several words of command for each particular Figure which may be drawn from these facings, referring the Reader to the Figures themselves, where I shall have occasion to make use of them upon Firings, which shall be made known unto him by Alphabetical letters, pointing from each facing to the Figure it produceth. To come briefly to the exercise in hand, silence being craved, and Ranks and Files closed to order, the Leader may proceed to these or the like particular facings, producing eighteen Figures of Battail Alphabetically set forth, with their reducements.

Command. Half-files, double your front to the left.

Direction. Files, open from the right to open order; Half-files, advance your Arms, and move forward to the left, and double the Front.

Command. Files, open from the midst to open order; Musketiers, close outward to close order; the inmost Files of Pikes, close outward to close order; Ranks, close to Front and Reer to order, and they will stand in eight Divisions.



Command. Reer-division of Pikes, face about; Musketiers, face outward, move all three paces, to your Leader; pointeth to the first Figure marked by the Alphabetical letter A.

Command. Musketiers, face inward; Division of Pikes, face outward, march all until the Pikes are cleer three foot of the Musketiers, to your Leader; this forms the Figure demonstrated unto you by the Alphabetical B.

Command. Reer-division of Musketiers upon the left, face about to the right;

Reer

Reer-division of Musketiers upon the right, face to the right: Front-division of Musketiers upon the left, face to the left; Divisions of Pikes, face to the Center; move all until your Musketiers be cleer three foot of Front, Reer, and both Flanks; then let them stand, and face the Divisions of Musketiers to the left, and the Division of Pikes to face about to the right, and to move all two paces; then face all to the Center, and close their Divisions a little; after face to their Leader C.

Command. Reer-divisions of Musketiers, stand; the rest, face to the Reer, march all until your Reer-division range even abrest with those upon the Flanks; to your Leader D.

Command. Reer-divisions of Pikes, face outward, march all until the Reer-divisions of Pikes be cleer of the outmost Divisions of Musketiers; then let the Reer-divisions of Pikes face to the Front; the rest face to the Reer, march all three paces; to your Leader E

Command. Divisions of Musketiers in the midst, face about; march all until the Middle-division of Musketiers range even with the Reer; to your Leader F.

Command. Front-divisions of Pikes, face to the outward Angles: Reer-division of Pikes, face about, and after face to inward Angles of the Reer: outmost divisions of Musketiers, face to your inward Angles: Front-division of Musketiers, face about; as you are now faced, move all some three paces to your Leader G.

Command. Musketiers, face to Front, Reer, and both Flanks; Divisions of Pikes, face to the Center; march all until you be even abrest in Front, Reer, and both Flanks; to your Leader H.

Command. Reer-divisions of Musketiers, face about; the outmost Divisions, face inward; Divisions of Pikes, face to the Center; march all three paces; to your Leader I.

Command. Divisions of Musketiers upon the left in the midst, and the three last Divisions of Pikes and Musketiers, to face to the Reer, and move three paces, and stand; Middle-divisions, face to the left; and the rest face to the right, and move three paces; to your Leader K.

Command. The four last Divisions, face to the left; the four first Divisions, face to the right; move all until you be cleer one of another; then face to the right, and march until you range even abrest in Front and Reer; face to your Leader L.

Command. The two inmost Divisions of Pikes, stand; the rest face inward; march all until the Middle-divisions be three foot cleer of the Front; to your Leader M.

Command. Front-divisions of Pikes, face outward; the rest, face outward; march all until the Front-divisions range even with the outmost Divisions of Pikes; face your Leader N.

Command. Front-divisions of Musketiers, face outward; the rest, face inward; march all until the Front-divisions of Musketiers are cleer of the Pikes; then stand, and the six last Divisions to face about, and move three paces; to your Leader O.

Command. Reer-divisions of Musketiers, face outward; march all some six paces; Reer-division of Musketiers, face to the Front; the rest, face to the Reer, and move until the Reer-divisions range even abrest with the Front; to your Leader P.

Command. Front-division of Pikes upon the left, face about; march all until that Division be six foot cleer of the Reer; then stand, and Front and Reer-divisions of Pikes, face to the left, and move two paces; to your Leader Q.

Command. Front-division of Pikes, face about; march all until the Front-division of Pikes range even abrest with the first Division of Musketiers; to your Leader R.

Command. The two outmost divisions of Musketiers, face about; outmost Division

diviſions of Pikes, face outward; move all until the outmoſt Muſkettiers ſtand ſtreight with the Front-diviſion of Muſkettiers; then face to your Leader S. *Reducement.* Diviſions of Pikes, face inward; the three laſt Diviſions, face about march all ſome ſix paces, Front and Reer-diviſions of Pikes, face to the left: Muſkettiers, face about; move all two paces; to your Leader: Diviſions, move forwards, and double your Front; cloſe Files inward to order, and Ranks forward to order; double Files to the left intire advancing, reduceth them.

Thus much, I conceive may be ſufficient at one time for a Leader to exerciſe his Company with the motions upon their Facings, ſo that he ſhall not need to trouble himſelf with any more then Firings: Where firſt, as is moſt propereſt, we will begin with ſome plain Firings to the Front; for the performance whereof, let the Half-files double their Front to the left; and Ranks and Files, cloſe forwards and inward to order.

The firſt firing. Let them Fire by Diviſions drawn forth ten or twentie paces, and fall in the Reer of themſelves.

The ſecond firing. Let the Muſkettiers cloſe their Diviſions before the Front of Pikes, and give Fire, and fall all off upon the right Flank.

The third firing The Body moving or marching, let the outmoſt Files face to the right, and give Fire, and lead away by the contrary ſide of their Pikes, by the Leaders of the File; the next File may do the ſame, and conſequently all the reſt until all have Fired; then let them face to the right; the Pikes in the interim charging on whilſt the Muſkettiers make ready again

The fourth firing. Let the Pikes open from the midſt, that the Muſkettiers may come up between them: two Ranks may kneel down, and the other two ſtand upright, and Fire altogether; the Pikes then charging, and after retreating, they may cloſe again into the midſt, continuing their Aſpects to the right Flank; the Pikes may port, and the Muſkettiers may ſlieve up upon the right and left of the Pikes; the firſt Rank giving Fire, and preſently falling before the Front of Pikes; the next Rank doing the ſame, falling ſtill behind their own Muſkettiers, and before the Front of Pikes, as they are then faced; and having all Fired after that manner, they may Fire again, and flank their Pikes; then facing to Front and Reer, they may give Fire to both places, and fall off to the right and left, and Flank their pikes from Front and Reer; and after face to their Leader.

Command. Files, open outward to open order; Muſkettiers, cloſe outward to order, the inmoſt Files of pikes, cloſe outward to order; Ranks, cloſe to Front and Reer to order; Reer-diviſions of pikes, face about; Muſkettiers, face outward; move all three paces; to your Leader. And now you have the Figure of battail pointed out in the firſt place unto you by the Alphabet.

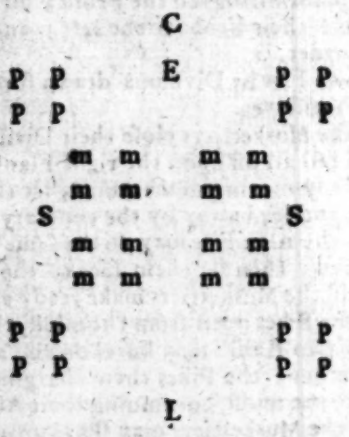
The firſt firing. Let them Fire to the Front, and fall in the Reer of themſelves; then wheel off to the right into the place of thoſe Muſkettiers in the Reer, they at

the ſame time moving up into the Front, firing in like manner, and moving down into their places again.

The ſecond firing. Let the Reer-diviſions face about; and after let them give Fire both to Front and Reer; and falling in the Reer of themſelves, the Pikes may charge while the Muſkettiers make ready again: they may Fire a ſecond time in the ſame manner.

The third firing. Face all to both Flanks; then let them give Fire, and fall in the Reer of themſelves; the Pikes after charging on three paces, and the Muſkettiers retreating three paces; after facing to their Leader, produceth this Figure following.

B

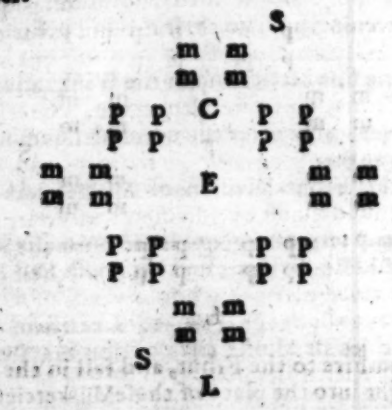


The firſt firing. Let the two firſt Diviſions advance three paces before the Front give Fire, and fall in the Reer of themſelves, and after move down into the places of them in the Reer; they at the ſame time moving up into their rooms, giving Fire, in like manner falling down into their places again: this may be perform'd twice over; after face them to Front and Reer.

The ſecond firing. Let them give Fire, their Diviſions advancing three paces before the Front and Reer, falling in the Reer of themſelves; the Pikes charging on, and the Muſkettiers retreating into their places again, facing to their Leader.

Command. Reer-diviſion of Muſkettiers upon the left, face about; Reer-diviſion of Muſkettiers upon the right, face to the right; Front-diviſion of Muſkettiers upon the left, face to the left: Muſkettiers, march all cleer of the Pikes, then ſtand; after face them in their ſeveral Diviſions to the left, and move two paces; to your Leader.

C



If

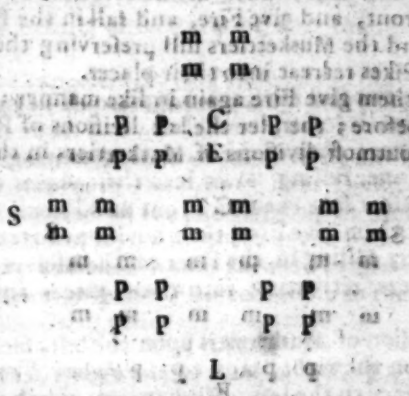
If you finde by the words of Command given to make the former Figure, that your Divisions stand too thin; you may face them all to the Center, and move forward every Division two or three paces; then face to their Leader.

The first firing. Let the Front-division of Musketiers give Fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves; after wheel off to the right into the room or place of them in the Reer; they at the same time moving up into the Front, Firing and falling off in like manner: this Firing may be performed twice.

The second firing. Let the Musketiers upon the Wings advance forward three paces; give Fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves; after face about, and move into their places.

The third firing. Let the Front-division of Musketiers move to the right two paces; Reer-division, move up upon the left of them; then let them all both in Front and Reer give Fire on the ground they stand, and fall in the Reer of themselves; the Pikes after closing forward, their Divisions may charge on, and after retreating into their places again, the Division of Musketiers upon the left in the Front in the mean space facing about, and moving down into their places.

The fourth firing. Let the Musketiers face to the Front, Reer, and both Flanks; the Pikes, face to the outward Angles of Front and Reer, and Port; then let them give Fire on the ground they stand, and fall in the Reer of themselves; Pikes may charge on to the four Angles; then ordering all their Arms, move the Reer-division of Musketiers forward even with them of the Wings; then face all to their Leader.



The first firing. Let the first division Fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves; after face about, and move down into the Middle-rank of Musketiers; they at the same time marching up into their ground, Firing, and falling off in like manner.

The second firing. Let the Musketiers upon the Wings advance forward, even abreast with those in the Front, and Fire altogether; the three Divisions falling in the Reer of themselves, and after the outmost Divisions facing about, and moving into their places again.

The third firing. Let the Front-Division of Musketiers face about, move down, and double the middlemost by division; after let the Musketiers face outward, and move three paces, and give Fire to both the Flanks, falling off to the right and left; the middle-divisions making good their ground, and firing in like manner, falling off.

Having Fired twice over to both the Flanks, face them to their Leader, and draw forth the outmost Files of Musketiers of the middle-division before the Front of Pikes, and close their Files inward to Order.

Command. Reer-division of Pikes, face outward, and move two foot cleer of the standing part; to your Leader.

The first firing. Let the first division of Muskettiers give Fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves; and after wheel about, and fall in the midst of the Reer, and range even abreast between the outmost divisions of Pikes; after face to their Leader.

The second firing. Let the three other divisions advance forwards altogether three foot before the Front, and give Fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves; the Pikes charge on, and the Muskettiers still preserving their ground, making ready again whilst the Pikes retreat into their places.

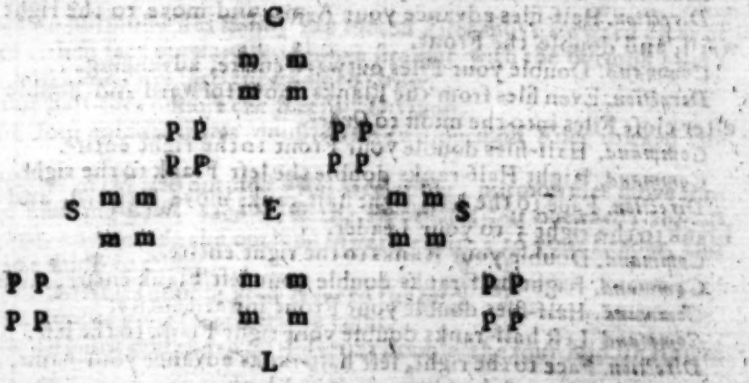
The third firing. Let them give Fire again in like manner; the Pikes charging on, and retreating as before; then let the last divisions of Pikes move inward in a streight line with the outmost divisions of Muskettiers in the Front, and they will stand as followeth.

The first firing. Let them give Fire to the Front, and fall in the Reer of themselves: this may be performed twice; then face to the Front and Reer; the last Rank of the middle-division is to face about; the first Rank are to continue their Aspects unto the Front.

The second firing. Let the Pikes port to Front and Reer, and the Muskettiers give Fire to Front and Reer, and fall in the Reer of themselves; and after the Pikes may charge on, and retreat again: they may continue this Figure twice, the Pikes charging; and after face to their Leader.

Command. Reer-divisions of Pikes, face about, and move three paces, and face to their Leader; Front-divisions of Muskettiers, face about, and move down into the

the midſt, as before, interchanging ground with the Reer-diviſion of Muskettiers: the two laſt Diviſions of Pikes move outward, until they be two foot clear of the next range of Muskettiers; middle Diviſion of Muskettiers move backward even with the Reer Diviſion of Muskettiers; to your Leader.



Upon this Figure face the three laſt Diviſions of Pikes and Muskettiers to the right about, and let them give fire to Front and Reer, and fall in the Reer of themſelves, the Pikes may afterwards charge on to Front and Reer: and retreat back again into their firſt places; they may perform this firing twice, the Pikes likewiſe charging up before, and retreating into their places again; face all to their Leader.

And now it will be expedient, having almoſt tired the Muskettiers with theſe ſeveral Firings, to end our fourth *Exerciſe*, and lodge the *Colours*; but firſt we will reduce them.

Reducement. The outmoſt Diviſion of Muskettiers on the right, move forward, and fall in the Reer of them in the Front: Reer Diviſion of Muskettiers move forward, and fall in the Reer of the left Diviſion of Muskettiers, then let them move ſtraight forwards and joyn with them in the Front, and cloſe the Pikes into the midſt to *Order*, and their Ranks forward to *Order*; let the Pikes double the Front inward entire, and after Files to double to the left entire, advancing, cloſing Files inward to *Order*; they are reduced.

CHAP. XVI.

The Fifth Exerciſe, *with four Files Eight deep.*

THe Souldiers having made timely appearance according to the Drums ſummoning unto ſuch places as was appointed by their Commander, and being by the Serjeants drawn forth into Files, the Leaders thereof being permitted to inſtruct and teach their Files the Poſtures, and handſome handling of their Arms, are forthwith by warning of the Drum to lead up their Files, and being joyn'd in a Body, according to the diſcretion of the Superior Officers, do there ſtand, ſilently expecting what will follow. The Captain, or other that ſhall Exerciſe them, firſt commands the Bringers-up to double their Front to the left, and after appoints one of the Serjeants to fetch the Colours; to which purpoſe he draws off the two inmoſt Files of Pikes; and advancing their Arms, the Drum beating a troop, they may move away, and bring them to the Company, being led thither by the Enſign, the Serjeant falling in the Reer of the Pikes; and they falling into their places again, they may be commanded, Files to double their depth to the right, every man falling behind his Bringer-up. Now the former days *Exerciſe* being chiefly ſpent in the Motions by ſeveral Firings, they may be ſpar'd in this, and in lieu thereof the Leader may out of the former plain Doublings collect one that may continue long in exerciſe before reduced, and in this Exerciſe he ſhall not need to trouble himſelf with Counter-marches or Wheelings, but fall immediately alone upon the Motions with this Doubling or the like, as followeth.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVII.

Thirty several Doublings, with their Redoublements.

Command. HAlf-files double your Front to the left.

Command. Double your Files to the right entire, advancing.

Command. Half-files double your Front to the right and left outward.

Direction. Half-files advance your Arms, and move to the right and left outward, and double the Front.

Command. Double your Files outward entire, advancing.

Direction. Even files from the Flanks move forward and double the odd, and after close Files into the midst to *Order*.

Command. Half-files double your Front to the right entire.

Command. Right Half-ranks double the left Flank to the right.

Direction. Face to the left, right half-ranks move forward, and double the left Flank to the right; to your Leader.

Command. Double your Ranks to the right entire.

Command. Right half-ranks double your left Flank entire, advancing.

Command. Half-files double your Front inward entire.

Command Left half-ranks double your right Flank to the left.

Direction. Face to the right, left half-ranks advance your Arms, and move forward to the left, and double your right Flank.

Command. Double your Ranks to the left entire.

Command. Left half-ranks double your right Flank entire, advancing.

Command. Half-files double your Front inward entire.

Direction. Front half-files face outward, and march clear of the standing part; to your Leader; half-files move forward, and double the Front inward entire.

Command. Right half-ranks double entire the depth of the left Flank.

Direction. Left half-ranks stand, right half-ranks face about, and march clear of the standing part; then face to the right, and move forward even with the left Flank; to your Leader.

Command. Front half-files double the Reer to the left entire.

Direction. Front half-files face to the right, march clear of the standing part, face all to the Reer; Front half-files move down, and double the Reer to the left.

Command. Right half-ranks double your left Flank to the left.

Direction. Face all to the left right; half-ranks move forward, and double the left Flank to the left; to your Leader.

Command. Double your Ranks to the left entire into the Reer.

Direction. Face all to the Reer, and every even Rank from the Reer move forth, and double the odd; to your Leader, and close forward to *Order*.

Command. The two outmost Files upon each Flank double entire, advancing the four inmost Files.

Command. Front half-files double the Reer to the right entire.

Command. Right half-ranks double your left Flank inward entire.

Direction. Half-files of the left half-ranks face about; left half-ranks move clear of the standing part; face all to the left: right half-ranks move forwards, and double the left Flank inward entire.

Command. The four middle ranks double your Front and Reer inward entire.

Direction. Half-files face about, the two first and the two last Ranks open outward, until you be clear of the standing part, then the four middle Ranks move forward two to the Front and two to the Reer, doubling entire to both places; face to your Leader, and close your Divisions.

Command. The two outmost Files upon each Flank, double the four middlemost Files by Division.

Direction. Half-files of the two outmost Files face about, outmost Files move clear of the standing part, then close inward to *Order*, and face to your Leader.

Command. The two first, and the two last Ranks double the four middlemost Ranks inward entire.

Direction.

Direction. The four middle Ranks face outward, and move clear of the ſtanding part; then face to your Leader: the two firſt Ranks face about, move forward with the two laſt, doubling the middlemoſt inward entire; to your Leader.

Command. The four inmoſt Files double entire, advancing the two outmoſt Files.

Direction. The two outmoſt Files ſtand, the inmoſt Files move forward clear of the ſtanding part; then face outward, and move ſtraight with the outmoſt Files; to your Leader, and cloſe Files into the midſt to *Order*.

Command. Front half-files double the Reer by Diviſion.

Direction. The four middle Files double the two outmoſt Files inward entire.

Direction. Half-files of the two outmoſt Files face about, outmoſt files move forward clear of the ſtanding part, face all to the right and left outward; inmoſt Files move forward, and double the outmoſt inward entire; to your Leader, and cloſe Files into the midſt to *Order*.

Command. Front half-files double your Reer to the left.

Command. Files, double your Depth to the right.

Command. The two firſt and the two laſt Ranks double the four middle Ranks by Diviſion.

Direction. The two firſt and the two laſt Ranks face outward, and march clear of the ſtanding part; then face inward, and move forward, doubling the inmoſt Files by Diviſion; face to your Leader.

Command. The two outmoſt Files upon each Flank double entire the Depth of the four inmoſt Files, reduceth.

CHAP. XVIII.

Plain Firings and Figures of Battail.

HAving paſſed over theſe Motions of *Doublings*, in the next place we will proceed to *Firings*; command therefore Files to open from the midſt to open *Order*, and after let the Bringers-up double the Front to the left.

The firſt firing. Let the Muſkettiers give fire even in the Front, and fall in the Reer of themſelves.

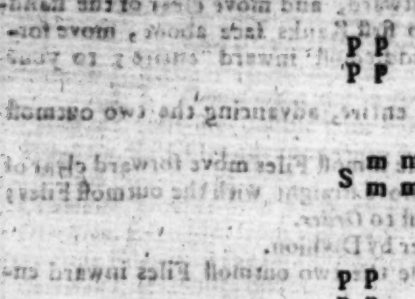
The ſecond firing. Let the firſt Rank give fire, and fall in between the Pikes, every Rank doing the ſame until all have fired; then let the firſt Rank move forth by Diviſion, give fire to the Front, and fall in again, every rank doing the ſame.

The third firing. Let them face to both Flanks and give fire, and fall off to the right and left, and flank their Pikes to Front and Reer: the Pikes may now port, and move all forward three paces; the Muſkettiers may give fire again, and fall in the Reer of the Pikes, the Pikes charging on, and after retreating to their firſt ground may charge at foot, and the Muſkettiers may give fire by two Ranks all together over their heads; after recovering their Arms, let them face to Front and Reer, and let the Muſkettiers move forth clear of the ſtanding part, then ſtand and give fire to Front and Reer, and fall off to the right and left, and flank the Pikes, who after may charge on to Front and Reer; then retreating, face all to their Leader.

Command. Half-files of Pikes face about, Muſkettiers face outward, march all three paces; Pikes face to the right and left; Muſkettiers face about to the right, march all three paces; then let the laſt Rank face about, the firſt and the laſt Rank double File-wiſe inward, advancing; Pikes face to the outward Angles of Front and Reer; Muſkettiers face to Front, Reer, and both Flanks, and move all two paces; to your Leader.

The

G



The first firing. Let the first Diviſion of Muſkettiers fire to the Front, and fall in the Reer of themſelves, and after wheel off to the Right, moving down into the place of the Reer Diviſion, who may at the ſame time move forward into their ground, and fire in like manner, wheeling off as the former did.

The ſecond firing. Let the two outmoſt Diviſions move forward into the Front, give fire, and fall in the Reer of themſelves, and after move down into their places.

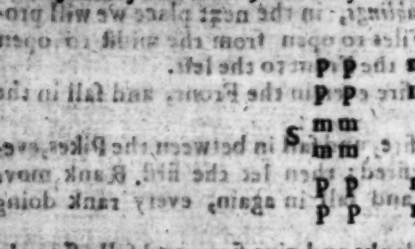
The third firing. Face all to the Reer, and let the Muſkettiers give fire there in the ſame manner as they did to the Front.

The fourth firing. Let the Muſkettiers face to Front, Reer, and both Flanks, and the Pikes face to the outward Angles of Front and Reer, then let the Muſkettiers move forth three foot clear of the Pikes, and fire to Front, Reer, and both Flanks, and fall in the reer of themſelves, after facing about, move into their places again.

The fifth firing. Let them face as before, and give fire on the ſame ground they ſtand, and fall in the Reer of themſelves; the Pikes may after charge on, and retreat into their places again.

Command. Muſkettiers move forth, and range even abreſt with the Pikes into Front, Reer, and Midſt, and they will ſtand in a ſquare as followeth.

H

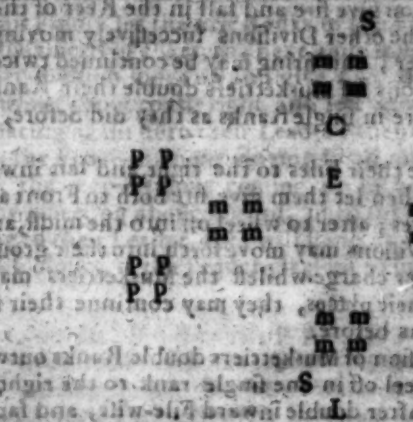


The firſt firing. Upon this Figure as they are faced to Front, Reer and both Flanks, and the Pikes to the outward Angles of Front and Reer, it will be beſt to fire on the ground they ſtand, and to fall in the Reer of themſelves; the Pikes may after charge to the four Angles.

The ſecond firing. Let them double their Ranks outward, and give fire; after face about and move three paces into the midſt of Pikes, and having made ready again, let them face about, and move forward and fire as they did before, and after diſmount their Muſkets, taking them in both hands, they may, as occaſion ſhall require, make uſe of the Butt end thereof againſt the Horſe, and the Pikes may ſtand upon their charge.

The third firing. Let the Muſkettiers double inward File-wiſe, the Pikes keep their Aſpects to the four Angles, the Muſkettiers, as before, may give Fire to Front, Reer, and both Flanks, and fall in the reer of thoſe Pikes next their right hand; and having their Aſpects unto the ſame Angles, they may fire there, if they pleaſe, by way of *Extraduction*, and move forth to the left into their places again, then let the Pikes face to the Front, and Muſkettiers upon the wings face about to the right, and Muſkettiers move forward three paces; face to your Leader forms the following Figure.

The

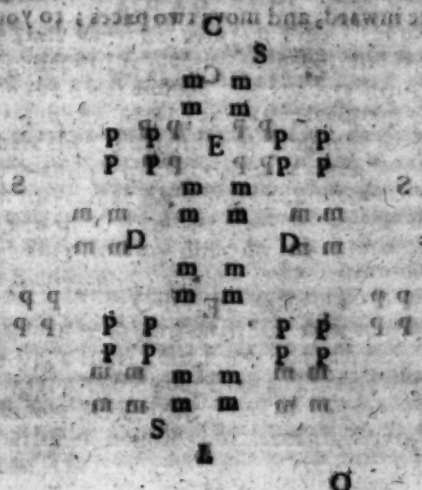


The first firing. Let the first Division give fire together, and wheel off into the Reer, the next two Divisions moving forward into their ground, giving fire all together, and wheeling off to the right and left into the Reer, the rest still moving forward until the Reer-division is likewise come up into the Front, and gives fire in like manner, and falling off to the right into his first place again; this firing may be continued twice.

The second firing. Let them give fire all together to the Front after this manner; let the middle Divisions move forth to the right and left clear of the Pikes, the Reer-division at the same time moving forward upon the outside of those in the Front, and give fire and move into their places again, making ready whilest the Pikes close forward, and charge on five or six paces, they may retreat again into their places.

The third firing. Let them face all to the Reer, and fire after this manner, the first Division kneel down, the middle Divisions move forth clear of the Pikes; the Front-division marching down into the Reer, may give fire all together, the outmost Division and the Front-division over the heads of them in the Reer, and move in, and back again into their places; then face to their Leader.

Command. The outmost Division of Musketiers upon the left in the midst, and the three last Divisions of Pikes and Musketiers face about; march all three paces, and stand: Middle Divisions face to the left, and move two paces; face all to your Leader: Divisions of Pikes face inward; Front-division of Musketiers, and the second from the Reer face about, and move little, and close your Divisions; to your Leader.



O

The first firing. Let the first Division give fire and fall in the Reer of themselves, then wheel down into the Reer, the other Divisions successively moving up into the Front, and firing in like manner; this firing may be continued twice over.

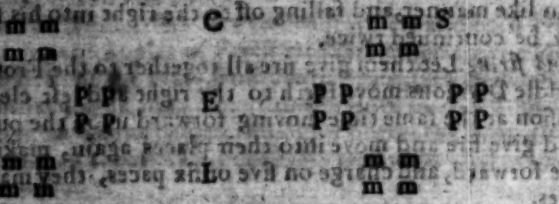
The second firing. Let the Divisions of Musketiers double their Ranks to the right and left outward, and give fire in single Ranks as they did before, until all have fired twice over.

The third firing. Let them double their Files to the right and left inward, and the Reer Divisions to face about, then let them give fire both to Front and Reer, falling first in the Reer of themselves; after to wheel off into the midst, and facing to Front and Reer, the middle Divisions may move forth into their ground, firing in like manner; the Pikes may after charge whilest the Musketiers make ready again, and after retreating into their places, they may continue their firing, as formerly, the Pikes charging on as before.

The fourth firing. Let each Division of Musketiers double Ranks outward, and fire to Front and Reer, and to wheel off in one single rank to the right and left, and rank again in the midst, and after double inward File-wise, and face to their Leader.

Command. The four last Divisions face to the left, the four first Divisions face to the right, march all until you be clear one of another; then face to the right, and move until you be even abreast in Front and Reer; to your Leader.

L

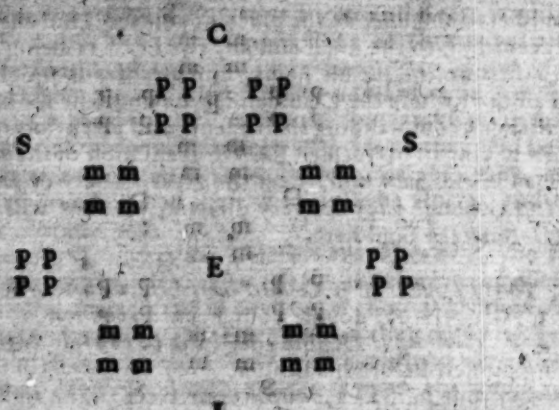


The first firing. Let the first Divisions give fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves, after wheeling off to the right and left into the Reer, they at the same time moving forwards into their places, firing and falling off in like manner; they may perform the same firing to the Reer, being thicker faced.

The second firing. Let the Reer-Divisions move to the right and left outward, clear of the standing part; then face to the Front, move up even abreast with the Front-Divisions, and let every Division fire to the Front, and fall in the Reer of themselves; the Pikes may charge, and after both they and the outmost Divisions may move down into their places.

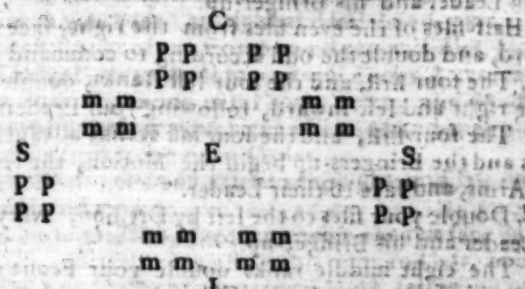
Command. The inmost Divisions of Pikes advance forward three foot before the Front, the rest face inward, and move two paces; to your Leader.

M



Upon

Upon this Figure let the firſt Ranks of the Front-Diviſion fire, and fall behind the Front-Diviſions of Pikes; the next rank may fire and fall behind the firſt, then let the Reer-diviſion move up and give fire, and fall in the reer of themſelves; and after wheel about to the right and left inward, moving down clear of the reer, and facing again unto their Leader; then they may fire a ſecond time in the ſame way, the Front-diviſions moving forth and firing firſt, and falling behind the Pikes, the reer-diviſions coming up into their places, firing and falling off again by wheeling about inward, until they be clear three foot of the reer; then facing to their Leader, they will ſtand as followeth, where the Enſign may diſplay his Colours, if the Leader pleaſeth to march upon it.



Having now ſpent much time in theſe particular *Firings*, it will be convenient to give the Souldiers ſome reſpit to refreſh their almoſt tired ſpirits, that they may more chearfully appear upon the next ſummons of the Drum; and therefore we will conclude this *Exerciſe*, and prepare for the lodging of the Colours.

Reducement. Reer-Diviſions of Pikes move ſtraight forward, until you range even abreſt with the Front-Diviſions of Pikes; Reer-Diviſions of Muſkettiers move forward, and range inward even abreſt with the Front-Diviſions; Files, cloſe into the midſt to *Order*; Front and Reer half-files, open from the midſt to double diſtance; the four inmoſt Files of Front and Reer half-files face inward and interchange ground; then let each two Files of Pikes cloſe outward to *Order*, and after to double their Diviſions to the right File-wiſe, and to cloſe Files to the left to *Order*; the two outmoſt Files of Muſkettiers upon the right double Ranks inward, and lead them away before the left half-ranks of Muſkettiers; the next two Files double Ranks outward, and lead them away behind the Reer by firſt facing them about; Pikes face to the left, and move ſtraight before the Muſkettiers, and then double the Reer inward entire; after Files to double their Depth to the right, every man falling behind his Bringer-up, they are reduced.

CHAP. XVIII.

The Sixth Exerciſe, *with four Files eight deep.*

THe Souldiers being met at the place appointed, and their Files being drawn forth according to the uſual cuſtom, the Leaders being to ſhew each Souldier how to handle and uſe his Arms, and after leads up their Files, and joyns them into a Body, where the Commander having ſent for his Colours, ſtands at the head of them, commanding their ſilence and attention to the words of Command. Now having in his former *Exerciſe* ſpent moſt of the time upon plain *Doublings*, he may in this ſhew unto them the great variety of *Doublings* by *Counter-marches*; and although they are very difficult, yet they will afford much delight and content unto the Souldiers.

CHAP. XIX.

Thirty Doublings by Counter-marches, with their Reducement.

Command. BRingers-up, double your Front to the left.

Command. Double your Files to the left entire advancing, every man placing himſelf before his Leader.

Command. Front half-files double your Reer to the right and left outward, following your Leaders.

Command. Double your Files outward entire, advancing, every man placing himſelf before his Leader.

Command. Bringers-up, double your front to the right and left inward.

Command. Double your Files inward entire, advancing, every man placing himſelf before his Leader.

Command. Front half-files double your Reer to the right and left inwards, following your Leaders.

Command. Files, double your depth to the right and left outward, following your Bringers-up.

Command. Double your files to the right by Diviſion, every man placing himſelf before his Leader and his Bringer-up.

Direction. Half-files of the even files from the right, face about; even files advance forward, and double the odd according to command; to your Leader.

Command. The four firſt, and the four laſt Ranks, double the eight middlemoſt Ranks to the right and left inward, following your Leaders & your Bringers-up.

Direction. The four firſt, and the four laſt Ranks advance your Arms, and the File-leaders and the Bringers-up begin the Motion, the reſt are to follow; after order their Arms, and face to their Leader.

Command. Double your files to the left by Diviſion, every man placing himſelf before his Leader and his Bringer-up.

Direction. The eight middle ranks double your Front and Reer to the right and left outward, following the Half-file-leaders, and the Bringers-up of the Front half-files.

Direction. The four laſt ranks of the Front and Reer half-files face about: the middle are to begin this Motion, and to advance their Arms, and to turn off to the right and left, every rank following them until they have doubled the Front and Reer: then face all to the Front, order their Arms, and cloſe their Diviſions forward to open *Order*.

Command. Double your files inward by Diviſion, every man placing himſelf before his Leader and his Bringer-up.

Direction. Half-files of the outmoſt Files face about, the outmoſt Files advance your Arms and move forward, placing your ſelves before your Leaders and your Bringers up; face to your Leader, and order your Arms.

Command. The four firſt, and the four laſt Ranks, double the eight middlemoſt Ranks to the right and left outward, following your Leaders and your Bringers-up.

Direction. The four firſt, and the four laſt Ranks, advance your Arms, and move away to the right and left, and double the eight middlemoſt Ranks; to your Leader.

Command. Front half-files, double your Reer to the right, following your Leaders.

Command. Files, double your Depth to the right, every man placing himſelf behind his Bringer-up.

Command. Right half-ranks, double your left Flank to the right, following your right-hand-men.

Direction. Face outward, and right half-ranks turn off to the left, and double the left Flank to the right; to your Leader.

Command. Double your Ranks to the right entire, every man placing himſelf on the outſide of his right-hand-man.

Command. Left half-ranks, double your right Flank to the left, following your left-hand-men.

Command. Double your ranks to the left entire, every man placing himſelf on the outſide of his left-hand-man.

Command. Double your Ranks by Diviſion, every man placing himſelf on the outſide of his left-hand-man.

Command. The inmoſt Files double the outmoſt Files, placing your ſelves on the outſide of your right and left-hand-men.

Direction.

Direction. The inmoſt Files advance your Arms, face outward, and move forward, and double the outmoſt Files, placing your ſelves on the outſide of your right and left-hand-men; order your Arms, and cloſe Files into the midſt to open Order.

Command. Double your Ranks by diviſion into the Reer.

Command. The two outmoſt Files, double the four inmoſt by following of your outſide-men.

Direction. The inmoſt Files, face inward; the reſt face outward, and turn off to the right and left toward the Reer; and double the four inmoſt Files; to your Leader.

Command. Double your Ranks by Diviſion into Front, Reer, and Midſt; every man placing himſelf on the outſide of his right and left-hand-man.

Direction. The two laſt Ranks of the Front and Reer-half-files, face about; even Ranks from the Front, Reer, and Midſt; advance your Arms, and face outward, and move forth, and double the Front, Reer, and Midſt of Ranks, placing your ſelves on the outſide of your right and left-hand-men; face to your Leader, and cloſe Ranks forward to open Order.

Command. Double your two outmoſt Files to the right and left outward, and Midſt, following of the inmoſt Files.

Direction. The two outmoſt Files, face outward; the reſt face inward; and Front and Reer-half-files diſtinctly turn off to the right and left, and double the outmoſt Files to the right and left outward; and Midſt following of the inmoſt Files; to your Leader: Files, cloſe into the midſt to Order.

Command. Double your Files to the right intire advancing, every man placing himſelf before his Leader.

Command. Bringers-up, double your Front to the right.

Command. File-leaders, double your Reer to the left.

Command. Double your Files to the left intire into the Reer, every man placing himſelf before his Bringer-up.

Direction. Face to the Reer, and even Files from the left; advance your Arms, and move forward, and double the odd, placing your ſelves before your Bringers-up; to your Leader.

Command. Files, double your depth to the left, following your Bringers-up.

Command. Half-files, double your Front to the right and left inward, every man placing himſelf before his Leader, they are reduced as at firſt.

CHAP. XX.

Plain Firings, and Figures of Battail.

HAving ſpent ſo much time upon theſe Doublings by Counter-marches, in the next place I ſhall proceed to Firings, and ſeveral Figures of Battail; where firſt command the Half-files to double the Front to the left, and then go on to your Firings.

The firſt firing. Let them fire even with the Front, and fall off, and Rank even with the Half-files, and fall in the Reer of themſelves; the Pikes may after charge on, and the Muſkettiers may give fire again, and fall in the Reer of the Pikes.

The ſecond firing. Let the Pikes port, and the Muſkettiers give fire by extraduction.

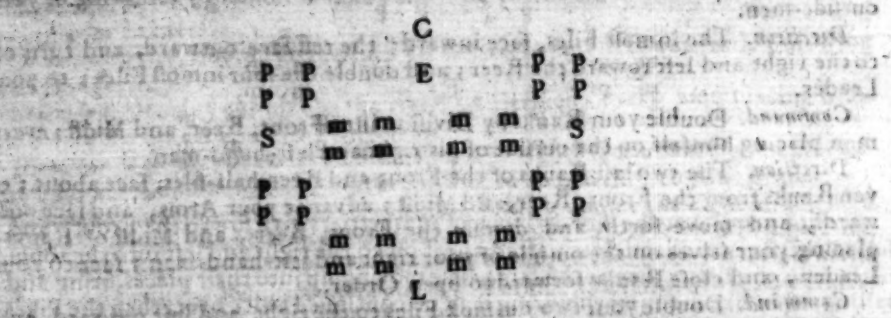
The third firing. Now the Muſkettiers being upon the Reer, fire them there upon the march; wheel them about to the right, and let them fire after this manner: face about to the right and left; let the laſt Rank fire, fall off, and Flank the firſt Rank of Pikes; and ſo conſequently all the reſt; after fire them to the Reer, and fall off to the right and left ſome ſix paces before the Front of Pikes, and in the Reer of themſelves; then face the body about, and let the Pikes charge to the Reer, and after port; the Muſkettiers may give fire to the Reer by way of extraduction.

The fourth firing. Next fire to the Reer by dividing the Muſkettiers, and bringing them even with the Reer, and ranking outward, and falling again as they were; face to your Leader.

Command.

Command. Ranks and Files, open to your open Order; Muskettiers, close outward to Order; the outmost Files of Pikes, stand; the rest close outward to Order: Front-half-files, open forward three paces: Ranks, close to Front and Reer to Order: Pikes, move forward two paces; Pikes, face outward; Muskettiers, face inward, and move cleer one of another; to your Leader.

N

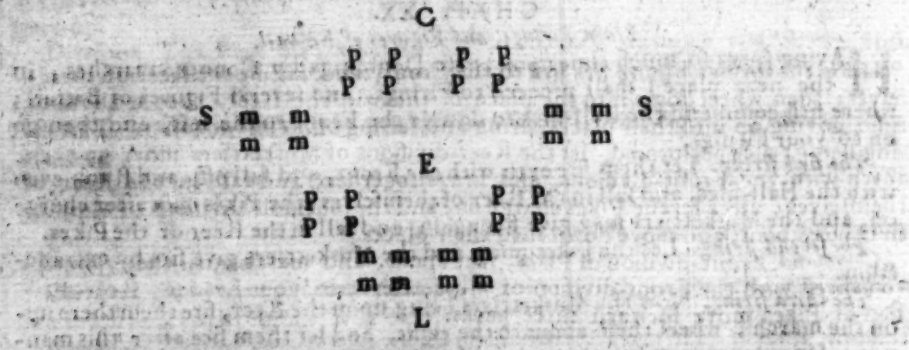


The first firing. Let them give Fire to the Front, and fall in the Reer of themselves; then wheel off to the right and left into the Reer, they at the same time moving up into their ground, give Fire, and falling off as before; the Pikes may after charge on while the Muskettiers make ready.

The second firing. Let Pikes and Muskettiers Rank outward and give Fire, and fall off in like manner, as before; after let them Fire, and fall in the Reer of the first Rank of Pikes of the Front-divisions; then the Pikes may port; then let the first Divisions give Fire, and fall in behind the Pikes; the Reer-divisions after moving up into their places, may give Fire, and face about; march down into their places; then face to their Leader: This firing being continued twice or oftener over, you may fire them to the Reer (they being thither faced) after the very same manner, the Pikes there charging; after facing all to their Leader, let them double Files to the right and left inward of each division.

Command. Front-divisions of Pikes, face outward; Front-divisions of Muskettiers, face outward; the rest face about; move all six paces; to your Leader; Reer-divisions, move forward two paces.

O



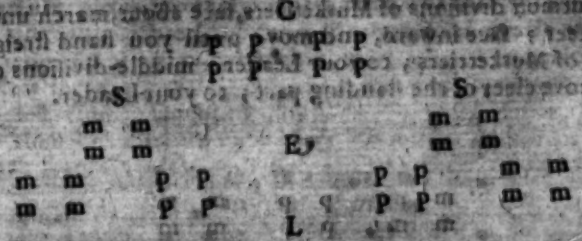
The first firing. Let the Front-divisions give fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves; then wheel off to the right and left into the Reer; they at the same time moving forward into their places may give fire, and fall off as before: this may be twice performed.

The second firing. Let the Front-divisions give fire, and fall in the Reer of the Front-divisions of Pikes; the Reer-divisions of Muskettiers moving into their ground, firing, and falling behind the Reer-divisions of Pikes; then they may move forth cleer of the Pikes, and fire, and fall in again: they may fire after the same manner to the Reer: But I shall let that pass, and go on to the next.

Command.

Command. Reer-divisions of Muskettiers, face outward, and march three paces cleer of the Reer-divisions of Pikes; then face to your Leader, and move forward until they range even abreast with the Reer-divisions of Pikes.

P

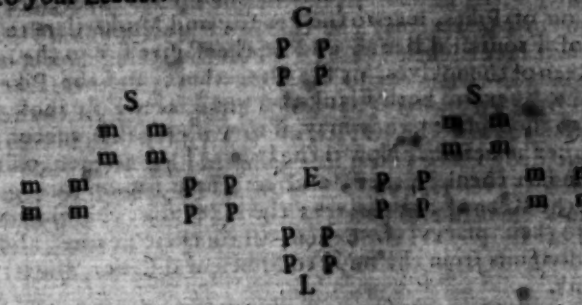


The first firing. Let the first divisions of Muskettiers give fire to the Front, and fall in the Reer of themselves; after wheel off to the right and left into the room of them in the Reer; they at the same time moving up into their places, firing and falling off in like manner: this firing may be continued twice over; then the Pikes may charge whilst the Muskettiers make ready again.

The second firing. Let the Reer-divisions move forward even abreast; then let the Muskettiers give fire altogether, and fall in the Reer of themselves: this firing may be continued twice over, and the Pikes may charge; after let those Divisions that moved, march down again into their places.

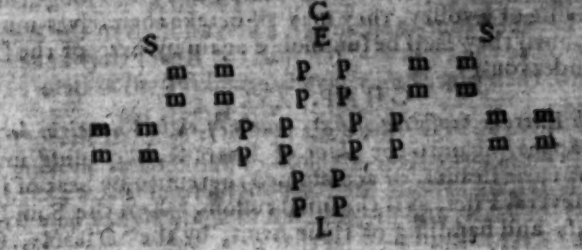
Command. Front-divisions of Pikes upon the left, face about, and move down four paces cleer of the Reer; Front and Reer-divisions of Pikes, move to the left two paces, to your Leader.

Q



Upon the former Figure fire first to the Front, and fall in the Reer of themselves; then wheel down into the place of them in the Reer, they at the same time moving up into their places, firing and falling off in like manner. This firing being twice performed, let the Reer-divisions of Muskettiers move up even abreast with the Front-divisions, and fire altogether, and fall in the Reer of themselves; after let the Pikes charge on, and the outmost Divisions of Muskettiers face about, and move down into their places.

Command. Front-division of Pikes, face about, and march until they range even abreast with the Front-division of Muskettiers; to your Leader; Reer-division of Pikes move forward three paces.



Upon

Upon this Figure let each division fire as they stand, and fall in the Reer of themselves, performing it twice over; the Pikes may charge on, whilst the Musketiers make ready again, who after may give fire by two Ranks together, as they stand in each division; the Pikes charging as before.

Command. Outmost divisions of Musketiers, face about, march until you range even with the Reer; face inward, and move until you stand streight after the Front-divisions of Musketiers; to your Leader: middle-divisions of Pikes, face outward, and move cleer of the standing part; to your Leader.

C

m m P P m m
m m P P m m

S P P E P P S
P P P P

m m P P m m
m m P P m m

L

The first firing. Let them give fire to the Front, by divisions relieving each other; after face them to both Flanks, and let them give fire upon the ground they stand, and fall in the Reer of themselves: This firing may be continued twice; and after the Pikes may charge on, whilst the Musketiers make ready again; and after retreating into their places.

The second firing. Let the middle-division of Pikes in the Reer, face about; and the middle-division of Pikes, face to the Front; and Musketiers to face to the outward Angles of Front and Reer; and let them give fire to the four Angles, and fall in the Reer of themselves, or fire altogether; and the Pikes may after charge on to Front, Reer and both Flanks, being all faced unto those places; and retreating again to their places, they may, if they please, fire a second time, and charge on in manner as before. Now if the Leader have a desire to fire to Front and Reer, let him face them thither, and let them fire on the ground they stand, and fall in the Reer of themselves; the Pikes after charging on, and retreating again into their places; face them all to their Leader, and open the Front and Reer-divisions from the midst to sufficient distance, and let the Ensign display his Colours.

Retirement. Reer-divisions of Pikes, advance forward unto the left into the Front; outmost division of Pikes, face inward, march and close your divisions; Musketiers in the Reer, move and close Ranks forward to Order; Files, double your depth to the right, every man falling behind his Bringer-up, reduceth them.

Then let the Musketiers poyse their Muskets, if they be neer the place of lodging the Colours, and to move unto that place making a guard; their Musket being rested, after which the Colours being furled up, and the Pikes advanced; the Leader being on the right hand, and the Lieutenant on the left, and the Ensign in the midst; the Serjeants following them, and in the Reer of them the Drums bearing a troop; let them march away and lodge the Colours, the Musketiers giving of a volley, they may all betake themselves unto their several habitations, until they shall be summon'd again by beat of the Drum unto their place of Rendezvous.

CHAP. XXI.

The seventh Exercise, consisting of sixty four men, eight Files eight deep.

THe Souldiers appearing unto the place of Exercise, according unto the appointment of their Leader, or accustomed thereunto by beat of Drum, are drawn forth into several Files, as is the usual custom. And the Souldiers being instructed of the use and handling of their Arms, by the Serjeants, Corporals,

or

or Leaders of the Files, ſpending ſuch time therein as ſhall be convenient until the fetching of the Colours; to which purpoſe they draw up their Files, and joyn into a Body, doubling the Front to the left by the Half-files, and ſend for the Colours. Which being brought unto the head of the Company, and the Souldiers returned unto their ſeveral places, and that the Body is cloſed in Rank and File to cloſe Order; then ſilence, and the well minding of their Directions, and their obedience is required of them, being three main properties belonging unto every Souldier. Now for more variety take in matter of Motions; the Leader may ſpend his chiefeſt time in Doublings, by Wheelings, giving upon all occaſions, the Souldiers their due diſtance unto every word of Command, and inſtructing them with their ſeveral reaſons and uſes, and ſo proceed to this that follows.

CHAP. XXII.

Two and twenty ſeveral Doublings by Wheelings, with their Reducement.

Command. WHeel off your Reer-half files, and double your Front by diviſion.

Direction. Half-files, face to the Reer, and wheel about to the right and left, until you come up even with the Front.

Command. Right and left Half-ranks, double the Depth of the Battail, by wheeling into the Front.

Direction. Right-half-ranks, wheel to the left; Left-half-ranks, wheel to the right; to your Leader.

Command. Wheel off your Front-half-files, and double the Reer by Diviſion.

Direction. Half-files, face to the Reer; and Front-half-files, wheel about to the right and left, and move down even with the Reer; to your Leader.

Command. Wheel off your right Half-ranks, and double the left Flank to the right intire.

Direction. Face outward; and right Half-ranks, wheel about to the left, and double the left Flank to the right intire; to your Leader.

Command. Wheel off your right Half-ranks, and double your left Flank by diviſion.

Direction. Face outward; and right Half-ranks, wheel about to the right and and let, and double the left Flank by Diviſion; to your Leader.

Command. Front and Reer-half-files, double the length of your Battail, by wheeling into the left Flank.

Direction. Face to the left; and Front-half-files that were, wheel to the left; Reer-half-files, wheel to the right; to your Leader.

Command. Wheel of your Left-half-ranks, and double your right Flank by diviſion.

Command. Front and Reer-half-files, double the length of the Battail by wheeling into the right Flank.

Command. Wheel your Left-half-ranks inward into the midſt, and double the right Flank inward intire.

Direction. Front and Reer-half-files, open from the midſt to more then double diſtance; after face outward; and Left-half-ranks, wheel inward into the midſt, and move forward, and double the right Flank inward intire; to your Leader.

Command. Wheel off your Front-half-files, and double the Reer to the right intire.

Direction. Half-files, face to the Reer; and Front-half-files, wheel about to the left, and move down upon the right into the Reer, and face to your Leader.

Command. Wheel your Right-half-ranks inward into the midſt, and double your left Flank inward intire.

Command. Wheel off the Front-half-files, and double the Reer to the left intire.

Command. Wheel your Reer-half-files inward into the midſt, and double your Front inward intire.

Direction. Right and Left-half-ranks, open from the midſt to more then double diſtance; and Half-files, face about, and wheel inward into the midſt, and move forward, and double your Front inward intire.

Command. Right and left Half-ranks, double the Depth of your Battail, by wheeling into the Reer.

Direction. Face to the Reer; and right-half-ranks, wheel to the left; and left-half-ranks, wheel to the right until you meet; to your Leader.

Command. Wheel your Front-half-files inward into the midſt, and double the Reer inward intire.

Command. Wheel off your left-half-ranks, and double your right Flank to the right intire. Face outward.

Command. Wheel off your Reer-half-files, and double the Front to the left intire. Half-files, face about.

Command. Wheel off your Left-half-ranks, and double your right Flank to the left intire.

Command. Wheel off your Reer-half-files, and double your Front to the right intire. Face outward.

Command. Wheel off your Left-half-ranks, and double intire the Depth of the right Flank.

Direction. Left-half-ranks, face to the left, and wheel about to the left, until you come down in the Reer of the right Flank; to your Leader.

Command. Wheel off your Reer-half-files, and double the Length of your Front to the right.

Direction. Half-files, face about, and wheel round to the left, and move forward, and double the length of the Front to the right, they are reduced.

CHAP. XXIII.

Several Firings, and Figures of Battail, with ſixty four men.

HAving paſſed over theſe ſeveral Wheelings by way of Doublings, it will be ſufficient time to proceed unto Firings; wherefore, firſt, command to open their Files from the midſt to open Order; and the Bringers-up thereof to double the Front to the right and left inward.

The firſt firing. Let them fire to the Front, by Ranks ranking outward, and after to rank as they were.

The ſecond firing. Let them give fire to the Front, by ranks ranking inward, and ranking again as they were, and cloſing again to the Body of Pikes.

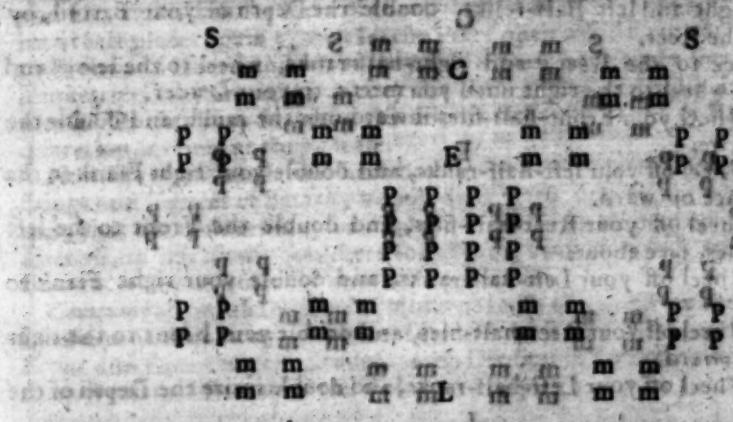
The third firing. Let the Half-files face about; and let them give fire to Front and Reer by Ranks ranking outward, and ranking in again as they were.

The fourth firing. Let them advance forwards by two Ranks, ſome ten paces before the Front and Reer, and give fire, and fall in the Reer of themſelves; then face about, and fall before the Front and Reer of Pikes; and then fire again, falling off to the right and left, and Flank the Pikes; then the Pikes may charge on, and the Muskettiers may fall in the Reer of the Pikes, and then Pikes may charge at Foot, and the Muskettiers may give fire altogether over their heads.

The fifth firing. Let the Pikes port, and the Muskettiers move forth to the right and left, and fire by extraduction; then the Pikes may charge again, and the Muskettiers may move forth as before; and the firſt Rank of each diviſion may give fire even with the Front and Reer, and ſtand; the reſt may after move forth cleer of them, and give fire, falling behind their own Diviſions of Muskettiers; then face all to their Leader, and cloſe their Diviſions forward to Order; and then proceed to Figure of Battail.

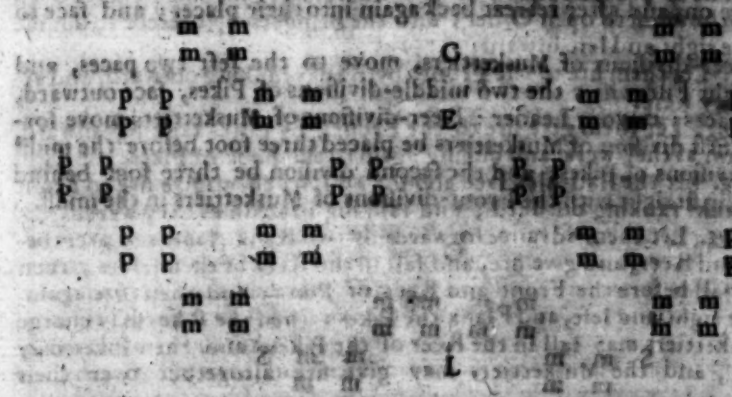
Command. Half-files, face about; Muskettiers, move forward until you be cleer of the Pikes; the two inmoſt Files of Muskettiers, ſtand; the two outmoſt Files of Muskettiers move forwards, until you be cleer of the inmoſt Files; the two outmoſt Files of Pikes, face outward, and move three foot cleer of the outmoſt Diviſions of Muskettiers; and after to face to Front and Reer, and to move forward until they range even with the Reer-diviſions of Muskettiers; then let them face all to the Front, and ſtand ſtreight in their Diviſions, both Rank-wiſe and File-wiſe; and they will ſtand as in the next Figure.

Upon



Upon this Figure let the firſt diviſions of Muſkettiers give fire, and fall in the Reer of themſelves; after wheel off to the right and left into the room of them in the Reer; they at the ſame time moving up into their places, firing and falling off in like manner. Then let the inmoſt diviſions give fire in like manner, as the former did; and wheel off to the right and left, and be relieved by their own Reer-diviſions of Muſkettiers; then let the Pikes charge on, and after retreating back again into their places.

Command. The two middle-ranks of Pikes, face outward, and move cleer of the ſtanding part; then let the firſt Rank of Pikes face about; and the firſt and laſt Rank of Pikes to move forward to Order; face all to your Leader.



The firſt firing. Let the Front-diviſions fire, and fall in the Reer of themſelves; then wheel off to the right and left into the room of them in the Reer; they at the ſame time moving forward into their places, firing and falling off in like manner: Next let the inmoſt diviſions of Muſkettiers do the ſame, who may be relieved by the inmoſt diviſions of Muſkettiers in the Reer.

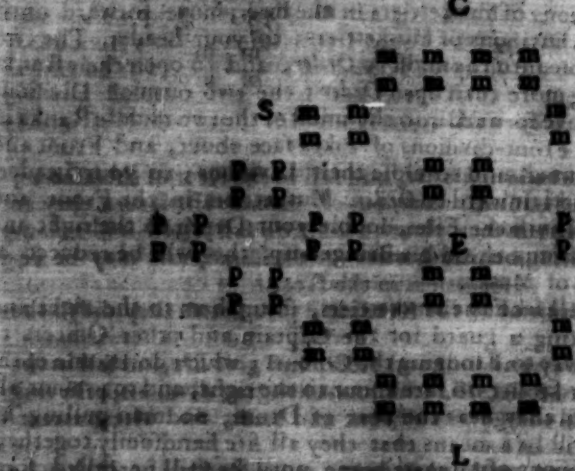
The ſecond firing. Let them all face to the Reer, and give fire as they did to the Front.

The third firing. Let them face to Front and Reer, and give fire, and fall in the Reer of themſelves firſt; after falling off, and interchanging diviſions, relieving each other; then let the Pikes charge on to Front and Reer, and after retreating back into their places.

Command. The inmoſt diviſions of Muſkettiers to move forward until they be two foot cleer of the ſtanding part; then let them face all inward, and move until the outmoſt diviſions of Muſkettiers range even abreſt with the middle-diviſions of Pikes; to your Leader.

Upon this former Figure, fire them to both Flanks; where first face them outward; let the first division give fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves; and after wheel off to the right and left into the places of the Reer-divisions, and they shove up at the same instant of time into their rooms, giving fire, and falling in the Reer of themselves; afterward into their places. Next let them fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves; and after move inward, and fall in the Reer of the next division of Pikes; and then the first division of Musketiers move forth, and give fire in the ground they formerly stood on, and fall in the Reer of themselves, and stand; and the next division of Musketiers is likewise to move forth where formerly they stood, and to fire and fall in the Reer of themselves; the Pikes may after charge on, and after retreat back again into their places; and face to their Leader.

Command. Reer-divisions of Musketiers, move to the left two paces, and double to the right File-wise; the two middle-divisions of Pikes, face outward, and move two paces; to your Leader: Reer-divisions of Musketiers move forward, until the first division of Musketiers be placed three foot before the midst of the middle-divisions of Pikes, and the second division be three foot behind the same, standing streight with the Front-divisions of Musketiers in the midst.



Upon this Figure they being faced to Front and Reer, both Pikes and Musketiers; let the first divisions give fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves, and stand; let the rest move forward until they be cleer of the Front-divisions of Musketiers, and

and fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves, and after face about and move down into their places again; then let the Pikes open a little outward, and charge all to Front and Reer; and when they shall retreat back again into their places, the Musketiers may fire again as they did before, and continue it as long as they please. Or they may fire upon this Figure either to Front or Reer, according to discretion, as long as they please.

Now in respect much time hath been spent in the Motions by wheelings in plain firings and Figures of Battail, we will draw forth one Figure more from the former, that the Colours may be displayed, and that we may conclude our seventh *Exercise*, to refresh the Souldiers for a space, until they shall again have warning from their Commander for another appearance.

Command. The last Division of Musketiers in the midst to face about, middle Divisions of Musketiers advance forward until you be three foot clear of the Front and Reer; to your Leader: each Division of Pikes face outward, and move to convenient distance for the Colours to display; to your Leader.

Reducement. Front and Reer-division of Musketiers face about, Front-division move down and double the Reer-division to the left rank-wise; to your Leader: the two first Divisions of Musketiers in the Front face about; then let them, and the two last Divisions of Musketiers in the Reer, move forward until they be even with the next Divisions of Musketiers; to your Leader. The two middle Divisions of Pikes close into the midst to *Order*, and to open their Ranks from the midst to something more then open *Order*; the two outmost Divisions of Pikes face inward, and move forward unto the midst of the two middle Ranks in the Body; to your Leader. Front-divisions of Pikes face about, and Front and Reer-Divisions to move forward and to close their Divisions; to your Leader. Files close to the right and left inward to *Order*. Musketiers in the Front and Reer, double your Pikes by Division. Files, double your Depth to the right and left outward, every man falling behind his Bringer-up, they will be reduced as at first.

Now the Serjeants may draw off the Musketiers, filing them to the right and left outward, thereby making a guard for the Captain and other Officers to march through, trooping away and lodging the Colours; which done, one of the Serjeants command the Musketiers to face about to the right, and to present all, and no man to give fire until they hear the beat of Drum; no man pulling his Tricker but once, which will be a means that they all fire handsomly together; which being ended, every man may depart home until he shall be called forth again.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIV.

The Eighth Exercise, consisting of sixty four men, eight Files eight deep.

THe Souldiers being again brought into the Field, or place of Exercise, the Serjeants, according to their wonted manner, drawing forth the Files, bids each File-leader to take his File into some convenient place apart, to exercise them in their several Postures and Charges, and after what manner they may fire, whether it be to Front, Reer, or both Flanks. Which being performed, they are called up to joyn into a Body, and commanded to close their Ranks and Files to their distance of *Order*, and the Front doubled to the right and left inward by the half-files distance before-hand, being prepared for their moving up. The Leader appoints one of the Serjeants to fetch the Colours, which being brought up to the head of the Company, the Leader for variety sake may spend the chiefest of his time in Firings, as followeth.

The first firing. Let the Musketiers move forward until their Bringers-up range even with the Front of Pikes; after let the two outmost Files of Musketiers move forward until their Bringers-up range even abreast with the Front of the two inmost Files; Let the Front or foremost Divisions give fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves; then let them face about, and move down into their places where they were last, then let the two inmost Files of Musketiers of each Division advance forwards until their Bringers-up range even with the Front of the two outmost Files, and then let them give fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves; and after face about, and march down into their places again where they were last drawn off.

The second firing. Let them give fire on the ground they stand in each Division, falling off to the right and left in the Reer of themselves.

The third firing. Let the first Rank in each Division fire as they stand, and after move inward in a straight line before the Front of Pikes, which gives way for the next Rank to fire in each Division; and after to move inward into the Reer of the first Rank, and so consequently all the rest to fire in like manner until they have all fired, and stand straight before the Pikes.

The fourth firing. Let their Ranks rank outward into the Front, and then give fire all entire in one Rank, and ranking again as they were.

The fifth firing. Let the half-files of Musketiers double the Front by Division, and give fire by two Ranks together, and after to move back again into their places.

The sixth firing. Let the two first Ranks kneel down, the other two stand upright, and give fire four Ranks together.

The seventh firing. Let the half-files of Pikes face about, and move three paces to your Leader; and then File to double their Depth to the right and left outward of each Arme; then let them give fire eight Ranks together after this manner, two kneel down, two kneeling, two stand upright, and the two last to be drawn off to the right and left, and so to fire all together; which being ended, command the Pikes by their Files to rank outward into the Front, and then open outward to the right and left, and charge on in the Front, and file again as they were.

The eighth firing. Let the Pikes open their Files from the midst to double distance, then command the Musketiers to face about, and move down into the midst of the Pikes, then let the half-files face about, and let the Musketiers be at open *Order* in their Files, and the Pikes at *Order*; and then let them give fire first to Front and Reer by *Introduction* after this manner. Let the first Rank in Front and Reer present and give fire on the ground they stand, and presently make ready again; the next Ranks may move forward, and place themselves three foot before them, and fire in like manner, and after stand; the other Ranks still moving forward into the next Rank until the first have fired, and then immediately to step before them, and fire in like manner, until all have fired twice over.

The ninth firing. Let them close their Files into the midst to *Order*, and fire on the same ground they stand, and fall in the Reer of themselves.

The tenth firing. Let them fire and fall off to the right and left into the midst of Pikes

Pikes again, then let the Pikes charge on to Front and Reer; and when they are clear of the Muskettiers, let them close to the right and left inward to *Order*.

The eleventh firing. Let the Pikes port, and let the Muskettiers be drawn forth, one whole Rank to the right, and another to the left, both to Front and Reer give fire, and fall into their places again; then let the other four be drawn forth in like manner, and fire, and fall into their places again; the Pikes, if occasion shall require, may again charge on.

The twelfth firing. Let the Muskettiers range to the right and left outward, and fire even abreast with the Reer of each Division, and move in again into their places.

The thirteenth firing. Let the Muskettiers rank outward, and move even abreast with the Front and Reer, and there present and give fire: and whilest the Pikes are charging on, they may rank again as they were, and fall in the Reer of the Pikes, and make ready again.

The fourteenth firing. The Pikes being retreated into their first ground, you may open them to the right and left, and then the Muskettiers may move forward, and fire two Ranks kneeling down, and the other two standing upright; then the Pikes may continue their charge till the Muskettiers make ready again, and after they may retreat, and fall in the Reer of the Muskettiers, and close their Divisions inward to *Order*. These firings being all upon a stand, and the Muskettiers being now in Front and Reer, they may be moved away, and may give fire upon the march to Front and Reer after this manner.

The fifteenth firing. Let the first Rank in the Front nimbly advance forward ten paces, then present and give fire, in which interim, the rest will be moved up unto them; the others having fallen off to the right and left in the Reer of their own Divisions of Muskettiers, the next Rank may give fire in like manner, until all have fired thus once over; the Reer are to fire at the same time with the Front, facing about the last Rank, who are to fall off, and to place themselves before their own Divisions of Muskettiers.

The sixteenth firing. Let them fire as before, and the first Rank of the Front-division to fall off, and flank the Pikes to the right, the rest of that Division falling off, and placing themselves in the Reer of them; and likewise the first Rank of the Reer-Division, when they have fired, let them fall off, and range even abreast with the half-files of Pikes, and still preserving themselves in their places to be right-hand-men to those which were at first, and the rest to give fire and fall in the Reer of them.

The seventeenth firing. Now the Muskettiers being all upon the right Flank, let the outmost File face to the right and fire, and lead away the Bringers-up between the Muskettiers and the outmost File of Pikes; let this be continued in the same manner until all have fired.

The eighteenth firing. The Body still marching, let them fire again after the same manner as before.

The nineteenth firing. Let them fire by Ranks wheeling to the right Flank, and after to rank to the right, so many abreast as they were at first, marching along with the Body.

The twentieth firing. Let them fire, and fall off on the contrary Flank.

The one and twentieth firing. Let them give fire upon the gathering, firing after this manner; let the outmost File upon the left, face to the left, give fire, and then face to the Front, and stand until the rest be clear; and then the next File to face to the left and fire, and after face to the Front, and then the first File may gather up even abreast upon the left of the second File; then the third File may face to the left and give fire; after face to the Front and stand, until the other two march up on the left, and joyn even abreast with him, and consequently so all the rest, until every File have fired, and that they be all moved up even abreast with the Pikes.

The two and twentieth firing. Let them wheel Ranks to the left, and fire, and after rank four to the left as they were at first, and march even abreast with the Pikes.

The

The three and twentieth firing. Let them fire to the left Flank, Ranks inverting, and after face to the Front, and to rank again as they were.

The four and twentieth firing. Let them fire by Files, filing to the right, and facing after to the left, and fire to the left Flank; and then facing to their first Front, and to lead up their Files to the left again as they were.

The five and twentieth firing. Let them fire by the outmost Files to the left Flank, and lead away by the Leader, up between, or in the middle of Pikes.

The six and twentieth firing. Let them face outward, and fire upon a ſtand after this manner by Ranks dividing, moving forth to the right and left, and fire and fall in again into their places, the Pikes may after charge on, and retreat again into their places.

The ſeven and twentieth firing. Let them fire by Ranks, ranking outward into both the Flanks, and moving forward, and firing even abreſt, and ranking again as they were, but not returning again into the midſt of Pikes from whence they were drawn forth, but fire to both Flanks, and fall in the Reer of themſelves.

The eight and twentieth firing. Let them fire again, and fall in the Reer or midſt of Pikes.

The nine and twentieth firing. Let the Pikes port, and let the Muſkettiers fire by Extraduction to both Flanks, and return again into their places.

The thirtieth firing. Let the Pikes open to the right, and the Muſkettiers move up into the midſt, and the firſt Rank give fire, and ſlieve up to the right and left, and place themſelves before the Pikes, the next Rank moving forward into his ground, and ſlieving away in the Reer of them until all have fired.

The one and thirtieth firing. Let them cloſe their Diviſions, and fire, and fall in the Reer of themſelves.

The two and thirtieth firing. Let them fire by Files ranking outward, and filing again as they were.

The three and thirtieth firing. Let them fire by Ranks wheeling outward into both Flanks towards Front and Reer; the half-files are to face about, the left half-ranks are to wheel to the right, the right half-ranks to the left, the Front-half-files doing the like, may give fire, facing after to the right and left inward, ranking as they were into the midſt of Ranks, and facing again to the Flanks.

The four and thirtieth firing. Let them fire two Ranks together, and ſlieving preſently away, and flank the Pikes.

The five and thirtieth firing. Let them face to Front and Reer, and after move outward, and facing to the outward Angles of Front and Reer, and let them fire and fall in the Reer of themſelves.

The ſix and thirtieth firing. Let them cloſe Files into the midſt to *Order*, and fire again, and let them fall off to the right and left, and flank the Pikes, then face all to their firſt Front, they are reduced.

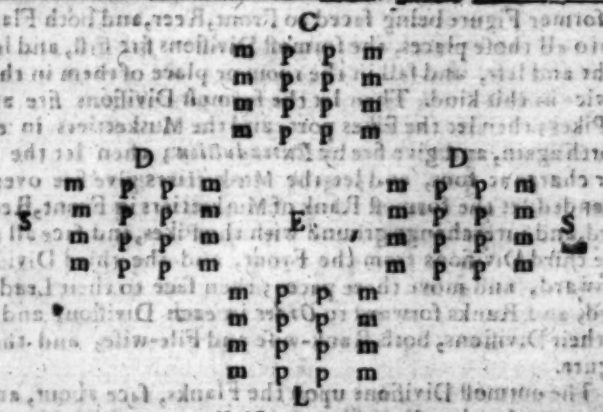
Having ſpent all this time in the plain *Firings*, we will in the next place proceed to *Firings* upon ſuch Figures of Battail as followeth.

CHAP. XXV.

Several Figures of Battail.

Command. HAlf-files double your Front to the left, Muſkettiers double your Pikes entire, advancing; Files open from the midſt to double diſtance: the two outmoſt Files cloſe outward to open *Order*, and the two inmoſt Files cloſe outward to the ſame diſtance; half-files of each Diviſion double the Front inward entire; Ranks and Files cloſe to *Order*; the four outmoſt Files upon each Flank ſtand; the four inmoſt Files upon the left face to the Reer; then let the four inmoſt Files upon the left, and the four inmoſt Files upon the right, move forward three foot before the Front and Reer, and then face to the left, and move two paces, then face all to the Front, and move ſtraight in their Diviſions, both Rank-wiſe and File-wiſe, they will ſtand as followeth.

The



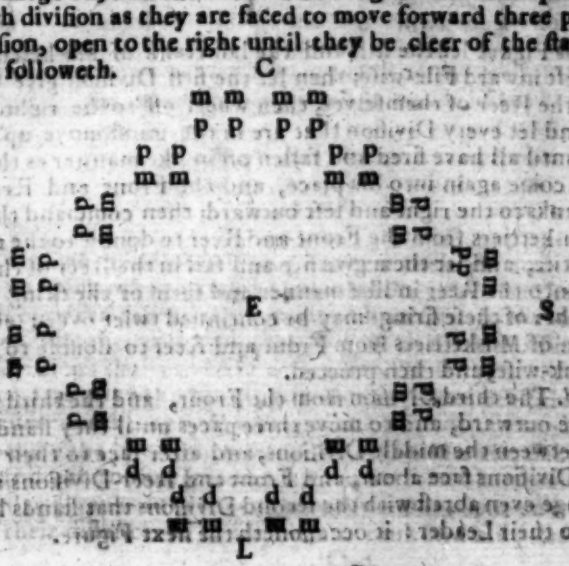
The first firing. Let the Front-division of Muskettiers move forward, until they be cleer of the standing part; then give fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves; and then closing their Files into the midst to Order before the Front of Pikes, the Reer-division of Muskettiers may move forward unto the Front of the first division of Pikes, and there rank outward, and give fire altogether, and file again as they were, and after face abour, and move down again into their places; the two outmost divisions of Muskettiers may next move forward some six paces; there stand and rank inward, and fire; face about, and file again as they were, and move forward to the Front of their own divisions of Pikes; & face to their Leader.

The second firing. Let the Front-division of Muskettiers fire, and fall off to the right and left, and flank their Pikes; and at the same time let the Reer-division of Muskettiers move forward as they did before, and fire even abrest with the first divisions of Pikes, & fall in the Reer of themselves; then face abour, and move down into their places, and face to their Leader; then let the two outmost divisions upon the Flanks give fire on the ground they stand, and fall off to the right and left, and flank the Pikes: they may fire to the Reer in the same manner, being thither faced.

The third firing. Let them face to Front, Reer, and both Flanks, and fire the first Rank of each division, and fall off to the right and left in the Reer of the Pikes; and the last Rank at the same time move forth, and give fire, and fall into their places again: but before they thus fire, the Front and Reer-divisions are to be wheeled to the left, and then let them fire by * Extraduction; and the Pikes may after charge on, and then retreat back again into their places.

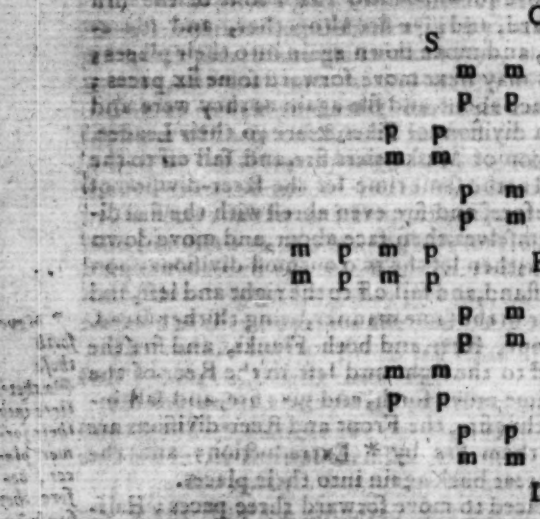
* *Move forth those Musketiers into their former places, before they fire by Extraduction.*

Command. Each division as they are faced to move forward three paces; Half-files of each division, open to the right until they be cleer of the standing part, they will stand as followeth.



Upon the former Figure being faced to Front, Reer, and both Flanks, fire then according unto all those places, the formost Divisions fire first, and let them wheel off to the right and left, and fall in the room or place of them in the next Divisions, firing twice in this kind. Then let the formost Divisions fire and fall in the Reer of the Pikes; then let the Pikes port, and the Muskettiers in each Division may move forth again, and give fire by *Extradition*; then let the Pikes charge on, and after charge at foot, and let the Muskettiers give fire over their heads, which being ended, let the formost Rank of Muskettiers in Front, Reer and Flanks move forward, and interchange ground with the Pikes, and face all to the Front; and after the third Divisions from the Front, and the third Divisions from the Reer, face inward, and move three paces; then face to their Leader, and close Files outward, and Ranks forward to *Order* in each Division; and stand straight and even in their Divisions, both Rank-wise and File-wise, and then proceed to the next Figure.

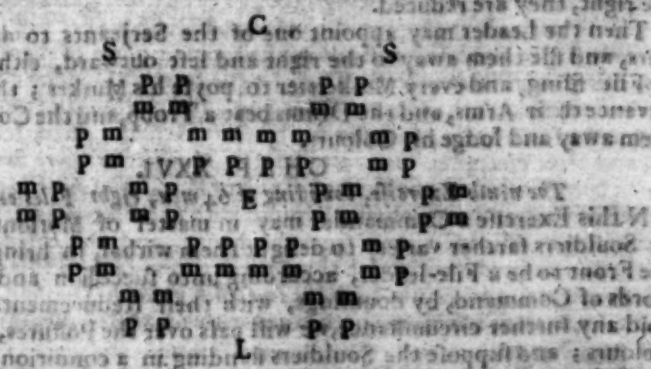
Command. The outmost Divisions upon the Flanks, face about, and move down two paces; to your Leader. Half-files of the two outmost Divisions double to the right and left inward Rank-wise, and after move that part that doubled two paces to the right and left inward; face all to your Leader.



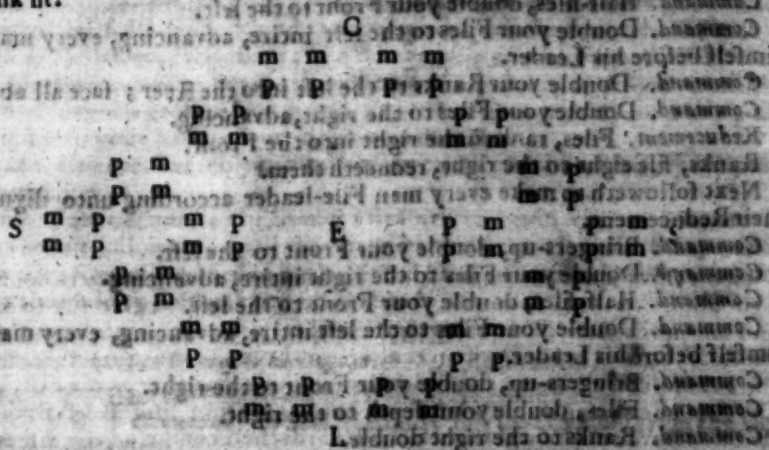
Upon this Figure let the first and the last Rank of Muskettiers double to the right and left inward File-wise; then let the first Division give fire to the Front, and fall in the Reer of themselves, then wheel off to the right about down into the Reer, and let every Division that are in the midst move up successively into the Front until all have fired and fallen off in like manner as the first, and every Division be come again into his place, and the Front and Reer-Divisions have doubled Ranks to the right and left outward; then command the first and the last Rank of Muskettiers from the Front and Reer to double to the right and left outward File-wise, and let them give fire and fall in the Reer of themselves, and after fall off into the Reer in like manner and form of the firing of the former Divisions; either of these firings may be continued twice over: after command the first Division of Muskettiers from Front and Reer to double to the right and left inward Rank-wise, and then proceed.

Command. The third Division from the Front, and the third Division from the Reer to face outward, and to move three paces until they stand straight in Front and Reer between the middle Divisions, and after face to their Leader. Then let the Front-Divisions face about, and Front and Reer-Divisions move forward until they range even abreast with the second Divisions that stands before them, and then face to their Leader: it occasioneth the next Figure.

Upon



Upon this Figure you may fire them to Front, Reer, and both Flanks; therefore face the two outmost crosses to the Flanks, which contains on each side four divisions of Pikes and Muskettiers; and let the rest face to Front and Reer, and let all the Muskettiers in the Reer of each division of Pikes, move forth to the Angles of the Pikes, give fire, and fall back again into their places; and whilst the Pikes are charging on, the Muskettiers may make ready again, and fire in like manner as before, and fall back again into their places; the Pikes charging on to Front, Reer and both Flanks as before; and retreating again into their places. Then face them all to the Front, and let the second division from the Reer face about; and then the second division from the Front, and the second division from the Reer, move forward until they be three foot cleer of the Front and Reer; then face them to their Leader, and they will stand in a convenient Figure for marching, wherein the Colours may display so long as a Commander shall think fit.



Reducement. The two middle-divisions, face to the right and left outward, and march cleer of the standing part; to your Leader; then let them double to the right and left outward file-wise. After let them face to Front, Reer and both Flanks, and close their Files into the midst to Order. Then command Front and Reer-divisions that formerly wheeled to the left, to wheel back again to the right; then face all to the Front, and let the Front-division face to the right, and move three paces; and then face to their Leader; then let the Reer-division move up upon the left of them in the Front, and let the Pikes in each division double their depth to the right and left outward, and let them close files into the midst to order, & ranks forward to order, & to move up even with the front, they standing in their distance of order, both in rank and file, let the half-files

double their Front inward intire, and after Files to double their depth intire to the right, they are reduced.

Then the Leader may appoint one of the Serjeants to draw off the Musketteers, and file them away to the right and left outward, either by Ranks filing, or Files filing, and every Musketter to poyse his Musket; then the Pikes may advance their Arms, and the Drums beat a Troop, and the Commander may lead them away and lodge his Colours.

CHAP. XXVI.

The ninth Exercise, consisting of 64 men, eight Files eight deep.

IN this Exercise a Commander may in matter of Motions present unto the Souldiers farther variety to delight them withal, in bringing each man into the Front to be a File-leader, according unto succession and dignity, by proper words of Command, by doublings, with their Reducement. Therefore, to avoid any further circumstance, we will pass over the Postures, and fetching of the Colours; and suppose the Souldiers standing in a condition to be exercised, begin first to make them all File-leaders by succession as followeth.

Command. Ranks to the left double.

Command. Files to the left double.

Command. Half-files, double your Front to the right.

Command. Double your Files to the right intire advancing, every man placing himself before his Leader.

Command. Ranks to the right double.

Command. Files to the right double.

Command. Front-half-files, double the Reer to the right.

Command. Double your Files to the left intire, advancing.

Command. Double your Ranks to the right into the Reer; face all about.

Command. Double your Files to the left, advancing.

Division. Every even File from the left move forward to the left, and by three steps double the odd, advancing.

Command. Half-files, double your Front to the left.

Command. Double your Files to the left intire, advancing, every man placing himself before his Leader.

Command. Double your Ranks to the left into the Reer; face all about.

Command. Double your Files to the right, advancing.

Reducement. Files, rank to the right into the Front.

Ranks, file eight to the right, reduceth them.

Next followeth to make every man File-leader according unto dignity, with their Reducement.

Command. Bringers-up, double your Front to the left.

Command. Double your Files to the right intire, advancing.

Command. Half-files, double your Front to the left.

Command. Double your Files to the left intire, advancing, every man placing himself before his Leader.

Command. Bringers-up, double your Front to the right.

Command. Files, double your depth to the right.

Command. Ranks to the right double.

Command. Front-half-files, double your Reer to the right, following your Leaders.

Command. Double your Files to the right by division, every man placing himself before his Leader and his Bringer-up.

Command. Front-half-files, double your Reer to the left, following your Leaders.

Command. Double your Files to the left by division, every man placing himself before his Leader and his Bringer-up.

Command. The two first and the two last Ranks double the four middlemost Ranks to the right, following your Leaders and your Bringers-up.

Division. The four middle-ranks stand; the File-leaders are to turn off to the right

right, and the next Rank is to follow them until the Leaders Rank even with the Bringers-up of the Front-half-files; and at the same instant of time the Bringers-up are to move forward to the right; the rest following until the Bringers-up range even abreast with the Half-file-leaders; to your Leader.

Command. Files, double your depth to the left.

Reducement. Half-files, double your Front to the right.

Bringers-up, double your Front to the right.

Then divide every four Files distinctly apart, making five divisions.

Files, double to the right and left inward in each division, and close Files into the midst to Order.

Files, double to the left intire, advancing; reduceth.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Eight several Counter-marches, with their Reducement.

Command. Files to the right-hand, Counter-march, maintaining ground.

Command. Ranks to the left-hand, Counter-march, losing ground.

Command. Counter-march your Front and Reer-half-files into the midst of Ranks.

Direction. Half-files, face about, and turn off to the left; and Front-half-files, turn off to the right until they meet the Front and Reer into the midst; to your Leader.

Command. Right and Left-half-ranks, Counter-march into the midst of Files.

Direction. Face outward; Right-half-ranks, turn off to the right; Left-half-ranks, turn off to the left; to your Leader.

Command. Files to the left-hand, Counter-march, losing ground by following your Leaders.

Command. Ranks to the right-hand, Counter-march, maintaining ground.

Command. Counter-march your Front and Reer-half-files to the right and left, following the Half-file-leaders, and the Bringers-up of the Front-half-files.

Direction. Half-files, face about; the Bringers-up of the Front-half-files and the Half-file-leaders are to begin the motion; the rest are to follow until they have gained so much ground beyond the Front and Reer, as they formerly possest in the midst; to your Leader, and close your divisions.

Command. Counter-march your Half-ranks to the right and left, by following of the inmost files.

Direction. Face outward; the inmost Files are to begin the motion moving forward, the rest following, until they have gained so much ground beyond the Flanks as they formerly possessed in the inmost Files; to your Leader, and close Files into the midst to Order, they are reduced.

CHAP. XXIX.

Ten several Wheelings, with their Reducement.

Command. Wheel the Battail off by Division from the Front.

Command. Wheel the body off by Division from the right Flank; face to the right.

Command. VVheel the Battail off by Division from the Reer; face about.

Command. VVheel the body off by division from the left Flank.

Command. VVheel your Battail inward to the Reer from the Front.

Direction. Open outward to convenient distance; to your Leader.

Command. VVheel your battail inward to the left Flank from the right.

Direction. Face to the right, and open to convenient distance, to your Leader.

Command. VVheel your battail inward to the Front from the Reer.

Direction. Face about, and open to convenient distance, and wheel inward into the Front.

Command. VVheel your battail inward to the right Flank from the left.

Close Ranks forward to close Orders, and Files into the midst to close Order.

Command.

Command. VVheel the outward Angles of Front and Reer to the right and left about into the Center; face to the outward Angles.

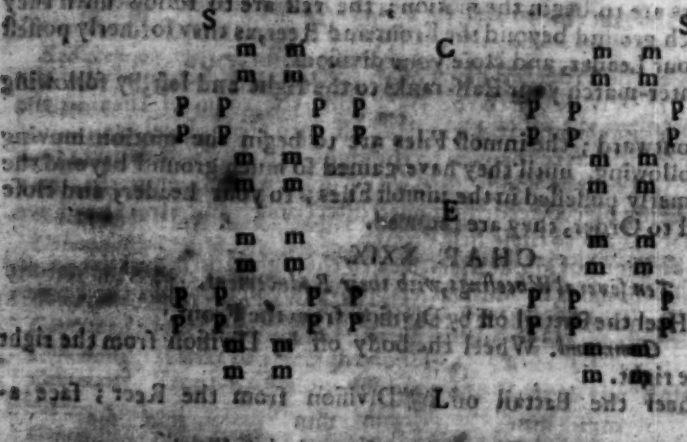
Command. VVheel the inward Angles to the right and left about from the Center.

CHAP. XXX.

Plain Firings, and Figures of Battail.

IN the next place I will proceed to some plain firings; wherefore, first, double your Ranks forward to the left by Half-files, and fire even with the Front of Pikes, and fall in the Reer of themselves; then fire, and fall between the Pikes; then move forth after this manner; one Rank drawn forth to the right, and another to the left, fire, and fall in again as before. Then command the first Rank to stand, and the rest to move forth, both Pikes and Musketiers to the right and left, until each Rank be cleer of other; then let the Pikes charge, and Musketiers give fire altogether, and after fall behind each Rank of Pikes; then let the Pikes charge at Foot, and let the Musketiers give fire over their heads: after let Pikes port, and let the Musketiers come forth again, and give fire by extraduction; and after command the Ranks to face to the right and left inward, and to close their Divisions; then let the Musketiers move forth again into their first places, and Flank their Pikes. And having passed over some half a dozen firings after this manner, then command Half-files to double their depth to the right intire, and proceed to Figures of battail, and firings which comes in the next place to view for a Leader, to spend his time further in the exercising of his Souldiers therein.

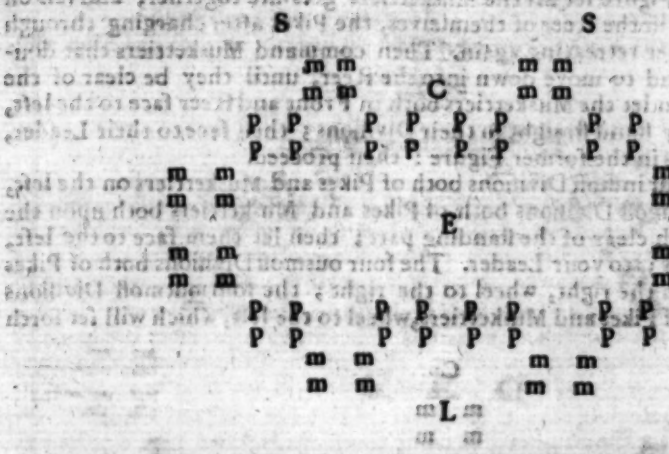
Command. Half-files, face to the Reer, and march six paces; to your Leader; Half-files of Musketiers of each Division, face to the Reer. Musketiers, march all until you be cleer of the Pikes; to your Leader. The two middlemost Ranks of Pikes of each division, face outward, and move cleer of the Musketiers; to your Leader; The first and third Ranks of Pikes in the body, face to the Reer, and close Ranks into the midst to Order, the following Figure will appear.



The first firing. Let the Front-divisions give fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves, the rest of the Divisions moving up into their ground, and fire, wheeling off to the right and left, having all fired over once, they will be reduced.

The second firing. Let the four inmost Divisions of Musketiers face outward, and move cleer of the Pikes; then face to their Leader; then let the eight last divisions of Pikes and Musketiers face to the Reer; then let them fire to Front and Reer, falling in the Reer of themselves; there being intervals for the Pikes to move forward upon their charge, and being retreated back into their places, will produce the following Figure.

After

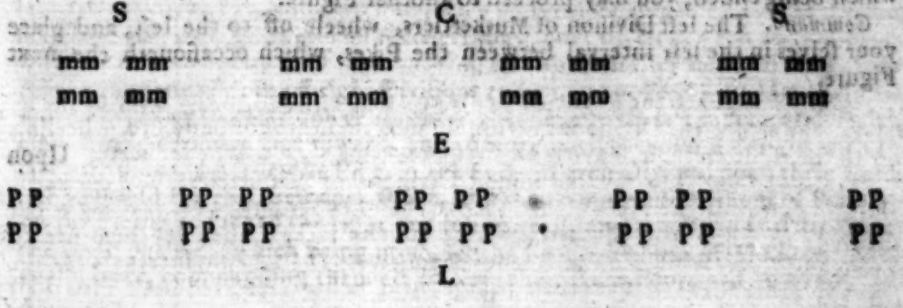


After the Figure is reduced unto his first aspect, command the Muskettiers, or Divisions upon the wings, to face to the right and left inward, and to march until they stand as in the first Figure; then face to their Leader: and command the eight first Divisions of Pikes and Muskettiers to face outward, marching until you perceive an interval for the eight Reer-divisions to move up, and make an even range with the Front-divisions; which being done, they will appear as followeth.

Upon this Figure let the Front-divisions of Muskettiers give fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves; then wheel off to the right into the room of them in the Reer, they at the same time firing, and wheeling off into their places again.

Then let the Commander face them all to the right, and they will stand in four crosses, with Muskettiers on the wings File-wise; upon which facing they may march, the Officers being placed according unto discretion; and after they have marched, let them face again to their first Front.

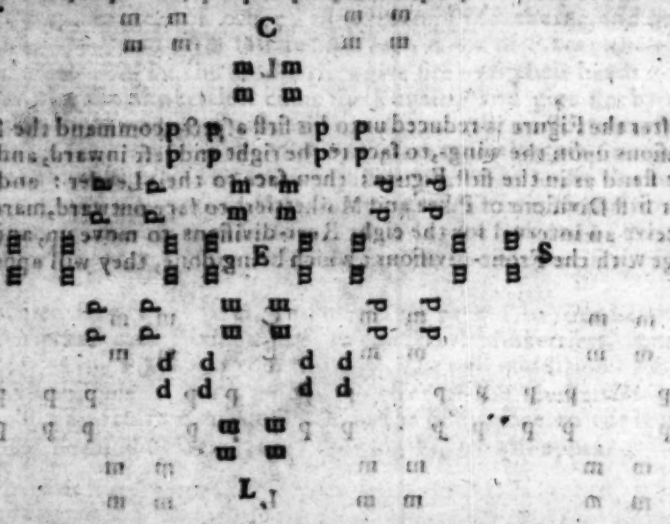
Command. Front-divisions of Muskettiers, face to the right, and move two paces; to your Leader. Reer-divisions of Muskettiers, move up, and double the Front-Divisions to the left Rank-wise, which produceth the next Figure.



Upon

Upon the former Figure let all the Muskettiers give fire together, and fall off to the right and left in the Reer of themſelves, the Pikes after charging through the intervals, and after retreating again. Then command Muskettiers that doubled to face about, and to move down into the Reer, until they be clear of the Pikes, and ſtand; then let the Muskettiers both in Front and Reer face to the left, and march until they ſtand ſtraight in their Diviſions; then face to their Leader, and they will ſtand as in the former Figure: then proceed.

Command. The four inmoſt Diviſions both of Pikes and Muskettiers on the left, face to the Reer; inmoſt Diviſions both of Pikes and Muskettiers both upon the right and left, march clear of the ſtanding part; then let them face to the left, and move three paces; to your Leader. The four outmoſt Diviſions both of Pikes and Muskettiers upon the right, wheel to the right; the four outmoſt Diviſions upon the left both of Pikes and Muskettiers, wheel to the left, which will ſet forth the next Figure.



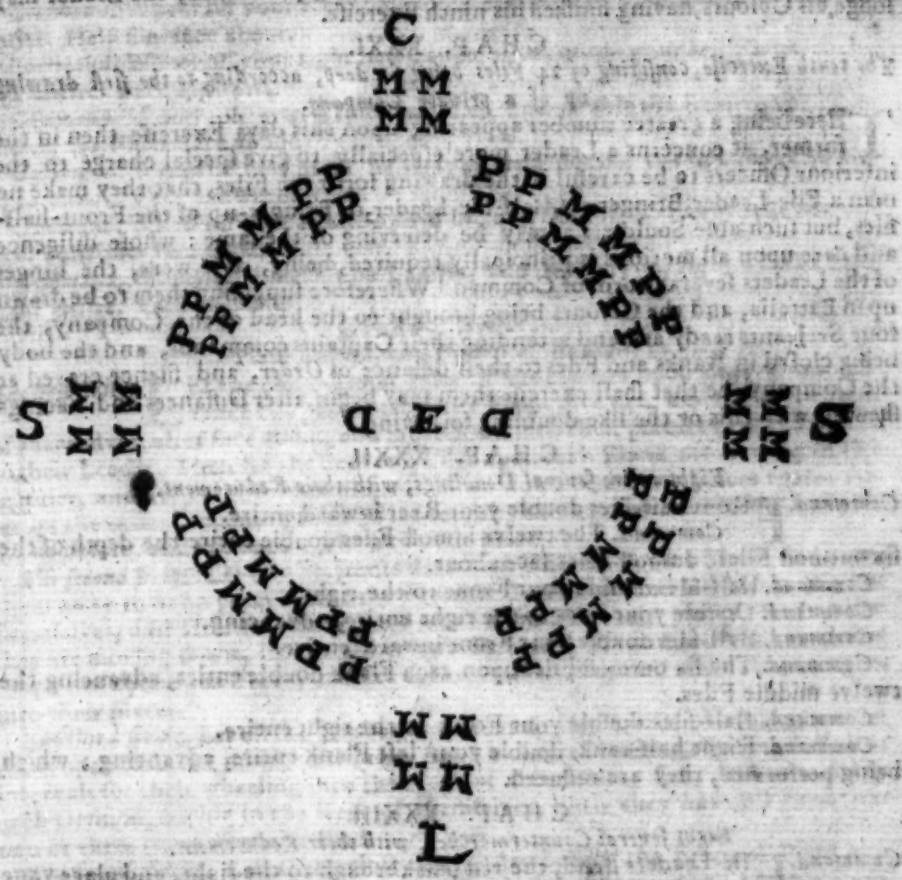
The firſt firing. Let them face to the Front, Reer, and both Flanks, and give fire, and fall in the Reer of themſelves; after wheeling off to the right your Diviſions on the outſide of the Pikes into the place of the Reer-Diviſions, which are to advance forward into the Front, performing the like as the other Front-Diviſions.

The ſecond firing. Let the Front-diviſions of Muskettiers move to the right two paces; after command Diviſions of Muskettiers to double to the left Rank-wiſe, and let them give fire in Front, Reer, and both Flanks all together: the Pikes may after charge to all theſe places, whileſt the Muskettiers make ready again, and retreat again into their places.

The third firing. Let them give fire again, and fall in the Reer of themſelves; which being ended, you may proceed to another Figure.

Command. The left Diviſion of Muskettiers, wheele off to the left, and place your ſelves in the left interval between the Pikes, which occaſioneth the next Figure.

Upon


C
M M
M M
P P
P P
M M
P P
M M
P P
P P
M M
P P
M M
P P
P P
M M
P P

face to their Leader, they are reduced. Which being performed, the Leader may lodge his Colours, having finished his ninth Exercise.

CHAP. XXXI.

The tenth Exercise, consisting of 24 Files being six deep, according to the first drawing up of a private Company.

THere being a greater number appearing upon this days Exercise then in the former, it concerns a Leader more especially to give special charge to the inferiour Officers to be careful in the drawing forth the Files, that they make no man a File-Leader, Bringer-up, Half-file-Leader, or Bringer-up of the Front-half-files, but such able Souldiers as may be deserving of the same; whose diligence and care upon all motions is principally required, being, as it were, the hinges of the Leaders several words of Command. Wherefore supposing them to be drawn up in Battalia, and the Colours being brought to the head of the Company, the four Serjeants ready at hand attending their Captains commands, and the body being closed in Ranks and Files to their distance of *Order*, and silence craved at the Company, he that shall exercise them may begin, after Distances and Facings shewed, with this or the like doubling following.

CHAP. XXXII.

Eight entire several Doublings, with their Reducement.

Command. FRont half-files double your Reer inward entire.

Command. The twelve inmost Files double entire the depth of the six outmost Files. Inmost Files face about.

Command. Half-files double your Front to the right.

Command. Double your Files to the right entire, advancing.

Command. Half-files double your Front inward entire.

Command. The six outmost Files upon each Flank double entire, advancing the twelve middle Files.

Command. Half-files double your Front to the right entire.

Command. Right half-ranks double your left Flank entire, advancing; which being performed, they are reduced.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Eight several Countermarches, with their Reducement.

Command. FIle-Leaders stand, the rest pass through to the right, and place your selves before your Leaders.

Command. The right-hand-file stand, the rest pass through to the right, and place your selves on the outside of your right-hand-men.

Command. Countermarch your Front and Reer into the midst of Ranks.

Direction. Half-files face about and turn off to the left, Front-half-files turn off to the right, to your Leader.

Command. Countermarch your Flanks into the midst of Files, face outward.

Command. Files to the right hand Countermarch, maintaining ground.

Command. Ranks, to the left hand Countermarch, losing ground.

Command. Countermarch your Front and Reer half-files from the midst of Ranks, maintaining ground.

Direction. Front-half-files face about, and turn off to the left, the rest turn off to the right, every man moving up into his Leaders ground, to your Leader.

Command. Countermarch your right and left half-ranks from the midst of Files, losing ground.

Direction. Face inward, and turn off every Rank on the ground they stand, face to your Leader, and close Files into the midst to open *Order*, they are reduced.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Eight entire Doublings by Wheelings, with their Reducement.

Command. WHeel off your Reer half-files, and double your Front to the right entire. Half-files face about.

Command. Wheel off your left half-ranks, and double your right Flank entire to the left. Face outward.

Command. Wheel off your Reer half-files, and double your Front to the left entire. Half-files face about.

Command. Wheel off your right half-ranks, and double your left Flank to the left entire. Face outward.

Command. Wheel off your Front-half-files, and double the Reer to the right entire. Half-files face about.

Command. Wheel off your right half-ranks, and double the left Flank to the right entire. Face outward.

Command. Wheel off your Front-half-files, and double the Reer to the left entire. Half-files face about.

Command. Wheel off your left half-ranks, and double your right Flank to the right entire. Face outward.

CHAP. XXXV.

Plain Firings, and Figures of Battail.

The first firing. LEt the two outmoſt Files of Muſkettiers upon each Flank advance ten paces before the Front give fire, and fall in the Reer of themſelves, after face about, and move down into their places again; then face to their Leader. Then let the next two Files upon each Flank move away in like manner, and fire as the former did, and move down into their places again. After let the other remaining Files be led forth by the other two Serjeants, and give fire as before, and fall back again into their places.

The ſecond firing. Let two Serjeants draw four Files upon each Flank, and move them away 10 or 20 paces before the Front, and give fire, and fall in the Reer of themſelves, and after face about, and move down into their places. And whileſt they are moving down, let the other two Serjeants draw forth the remaining four Files upon each Flank, and fire as the former did, and after return again into their places.

The third firing. Let all the Muſkettiers move forth cleer of the Pikes, and let them open from the midſt, until they ſtand in four Diviſions, leaving ſufficient intervals for their wheeling into the Reer of themſelves; firſt, let them fire in each Diviſion, falling in the Reer of themſelves, until they have all fired over two or three times after this kind.

The fourth firing. Let them cloſe their Files before the Front of Pikes into the midſt to *Order*, then let the two firſt Ranks kneel down, the next two ſtoop, and the laſt two ſtand upright, and give fire ſix Ranks all together; then let the left half-ranks of Muſkettiers be wheeled about to the left into the Reer of the Pikes, and the right half-ranks move to the left until they ſtand ſtraight before the Front of Pikes.

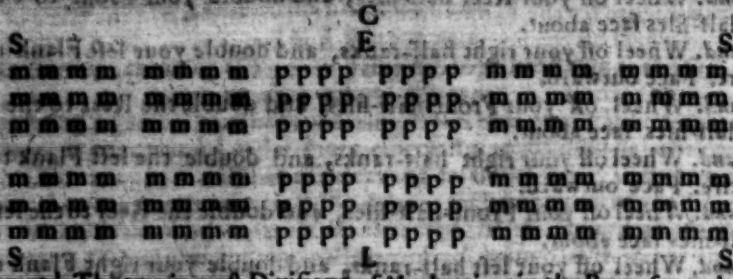
The fifth firing. Let the half-files face about, and let them give fire to Front and Reer after this manner by two Ranks drawn off ten paces before the Front and Reer, and fall off to the right and left into the Reer of themſelves: then facing about, let them open outward, and give way for the next two Ranks to come forward into their places, who are to fire and fall off as the former did, the other two Ranks doing the ſame. This firing may be continued as long as the Leader pleaſeth.

The ſixth firing. Let them give fire on the ground they ſtand, and fall off to the right and left into the Reer of themſelves.

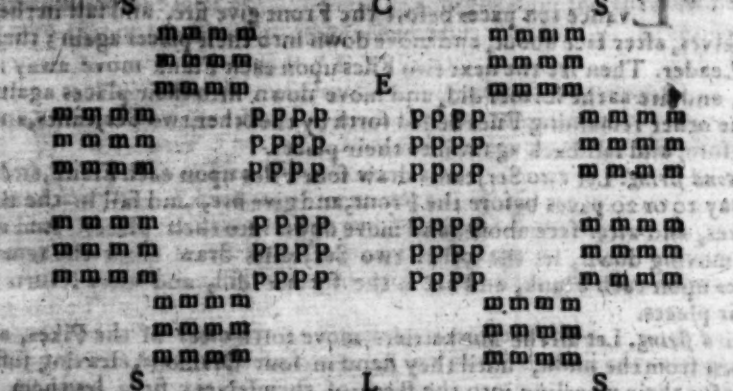
The ſeventh firing. Let them rank outward into Front and Reer, and give fire all together, and rank again as they were.

The eighth firing. Let them give fire on the ground they ſtand, and flank the Pikes, thoſe in the Front flanking the Pikes on the right, they in the Reer flanking them on the left; after let the Pikes charge on, and being retreated into their places, let them face all to their Leader, and in the next place proceed to Figures of Battail.

Command. Files, open outward to open *Order*; Ranks, open backward to your open *Order*; then let every four Files cloſe outward to *Order*; and Ranks cloſe to Front and Reer to *Order*, they will ſtand in twelve Diviſions as followeth.



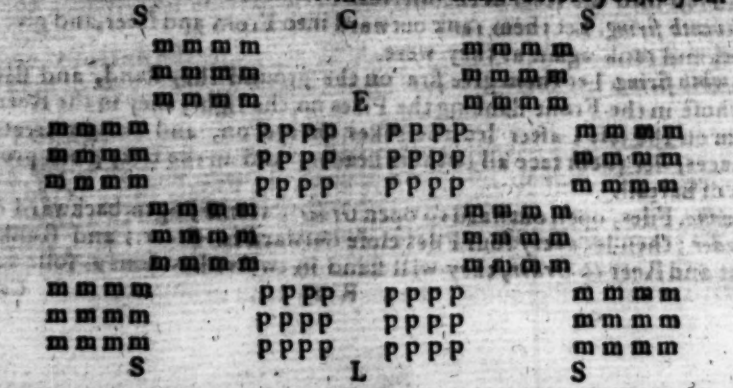
Command. The two inmost Divisions of Muskettiers in the Reer, face about; inmost Divisions of Muskettiers in Front and Reer, move forward clear of the standing part, and stand; Pikes face outward, Muskettiers upon the Flanks face inward, the rest face about to the right, move all two paces; to your Leader.



The first firing. Let the Front-divisions of Muskettiers give fire, and fall in the reer of themselves; then wheel off to the right & left into the room of them in the reer, they at the same time moving up into their ground, firing, & falling off in like manner as before. Then let the Front-divisions upon the Flank fire, & fall in the reer of themselves, and after wheel off to the right and left into the ground of those divisions that stand in the reer of them, they at the same time relieving them, firing and falling off as before: then let the Pikes charge on, and after retreat into their places.

The second firing. Let them face to Front and Reer, and let the first Divisions give fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves; then wheeling off to the right and left, and interchange ground with the next Divisions, who are at the same instant of time to move up into their places, and to give fire in like manner, and to fall off and return where they were before; then let the Pikes charge on to Front and Reer, and after retreat into their places, and face all to their Leader.

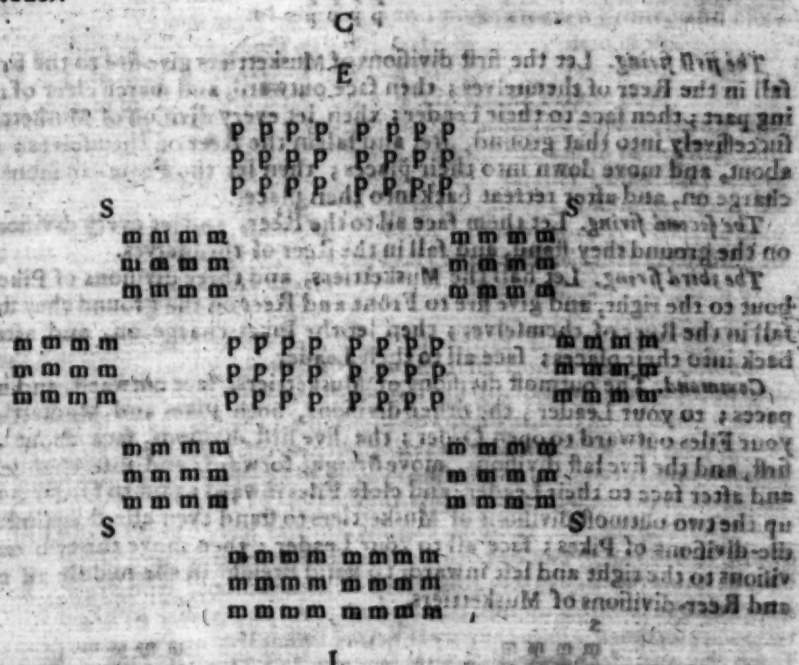
Command. The four last Divisions next to the Reer both of Pikes and Muskettiers, face about, move down, and range even abrest with the Reer; Reer-divisions of Muskettiers that are faced to the Front, move forward, and place your selves three foot short of the next Divisions that stands before you: to your Leader.



Upon

Upon this Figure let the Front-divisions give fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves; then wheel off to the right and left, and range even abreast with the next divisions; yet keeping themselves distinctly from the other divisions. Then let those divisions of Musketteirs that stood in the Reer of them, move forward into their ground, and give fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves; after face about, and move down again into their first places; then let those that first fired move up again into their ground, and let the outmost divisions begin to fire after this manner; let the first divisions fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves, and after fall off to the right and left, and place themselves in the room of the Reer-divisions, who are likewise to move up into their ground, and there to fire, and fall off as before; the Pikes may after charge on, and retreat back again into their places. The same firings may be performed to the Reer, they being thither faced: but to let that pass, we will fall upon the next Figure; wherefore,

Command. Divisions of Pikes, move forward until your Reer-divisions range even abreast with the outmost divisions of Musketteirs; Reer-divisions of Musketteirs face inward, and move streight in the Reer of the Reer-divisions of Pikes; to your Leader.



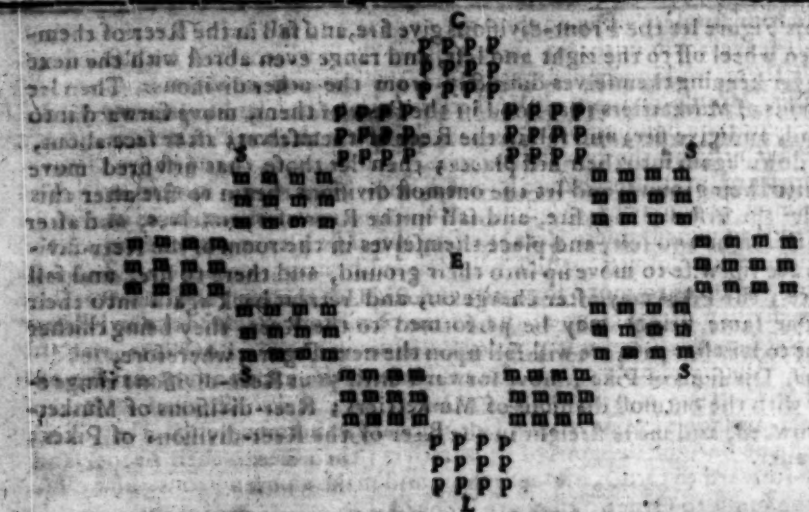
The first firing. Let the two last divisions of Musketteirs face about, and the other divisions of Musketteirs to face to the right and left outward, and let them give fire on the ground they stand, and fall in the Reer of themselves; the Pikes may charge on, whilst the Musketteirs make ready again.

The second firing. Let them face all to the Reer, and let the Reer-divisions move forth to the right and left outward, and give fire altogether, and fall in the Reer of themselves.

The third firing. Let the four first divisions of Musketteirs, and the two first divisions of Pikes face to the Front, and let them give fire to Front and Reer, and fall in the Reer of themselves; then face all to the Front, and proceed farther.

Command. The Front and Reer-divisions to move outward two paces: Reer-division of Pikes upon the left, face about; Reer-divisions of Pikes, move three foot before the Front and Reer; to your Leader; divisions that moved outward, close inward to your first ground, then they will stand as followeth.

The

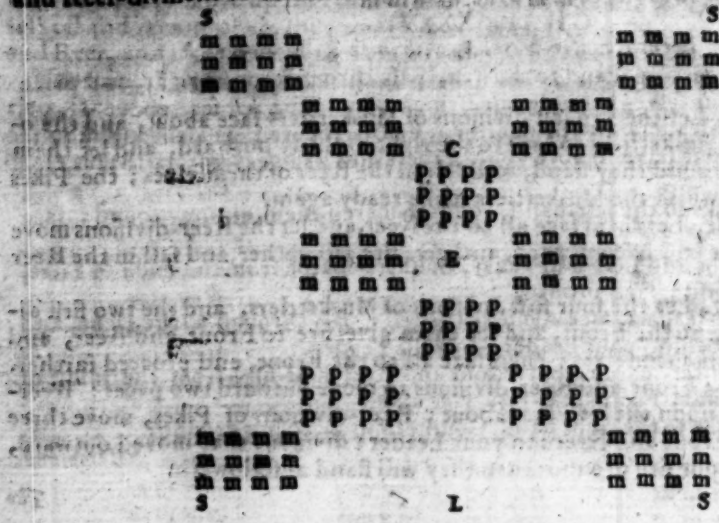


The first firing. Let the first divisions of Muskettiers give fire to the Front, and fall in the Reer of themselves; then face outward, and march cleer of the standing part; then face to their Leader: then let every division of Muskettiers come successively into that ground, fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves; then face about, and move down into their places; then let the Front-divisions of Pikes charge on, and after retreat back into their places.

The second firing. Let them face all to the Reer, and let every division give fire on the ground they stand, and fall in the Reer of themselves.

The third firing. Let half the Muskettiers, and three divisions of Pikes, face about to the right, and give fire to Front and Reer on the ground they stand, and fall in the Reer of themselves; then let the Pikes charge on, and after retreat back into their places; face all to their Leader.

Command. The outmost divisions of Muskettiers, face outward, and move two paces; to your Leader; the other divisions, both Pikes and Muskettiers, open your Files outward to open Order: the five first divisions, face about; the five first, and the five last divisions, move streight forward, and interchange ground; and after face to their Leader, and close Files inward again to Order; then lead up the two outmost divisions of Muskettiers to stand even abrest against the middle-divisions of Pikes; face all to your Leader: then move the two outmost divisions to the right and left inward, to stand streight in the middle of the Front and Reer-divisions of Muskettiers.



Upon

Upon this Figure several firings might be performed, to Front, Reer, both Flanks, and four Angles, all at one and the same time; but being so easie to the view, I shall leave them unto the discretion of those which shall be pleased to make use of them, and in the next place endeavour to reduce them.

Reducement. Middle-divisions of Muskettiers upon the Flanks, face outward, and move cleer of the standing part; to your Leader; the five first Divisions, face about; the five first and the five last Divisions, open Files outward to open Order, and move forward, and interchange ground, and close Files inward again to Order; outmost Divisions, face about, and move down again into your first places; face all to your Leader. Here the Captain, if he please, may command the Ensign to display his Colours; which being ended, he may proceed, commanding Reer-division of Pikes to move forward, and to place themselves in the Reer of the outmost division of Pikes upon the left in the Front; then let the Front-division of Pikes move down, and place themselves in the Reer of the second division of Pikes upon the right; then close Pikes into the midst to Order. Inmost divisions of Muskettiers move forward to Order, and march up even with the Front; Reer-division of Muskettiers, face outward, and move until they stand streight with the outmost divisions of Muskettiers; then face to their Leader, and close Ranks forward to Order, and march up and make an even Front, and close Files into the midst to Order; they are reduced.

CHAP. XXXVI.

The eleventh Exercise, with 24 Files six deep.

THe Souldiers being met at the place appointed, and the Officers being vigilant and careful in their several places, in drawing forth the Files, and joyning them into a Body; the Leader without any further delay may crave their silence, and close their Ranks and Files to Order; and after some distances and facings shewn unto them, drawn forth from the former Rule, he may proceed to this following doubling, making every man a File-leader according to succession, and after reduce them again.

Command. Ranks to the left, double.
Command. Files to the left, double.
Command. Half-files, double your Front to the left.
Command. Files, double your depth to the left.
Command. Bringers-up, double your Front to the right.
Command. Double your Files to the left intire, advancing.
Command. Bringers-up, double your Front to the left.
Command. Double your Files to the right intire, advancing.
Command. Ranks to the right, double.
Command. Files to the right, double.
Reducement. Files, rank to the left into the Front.
Rank, file six to the left, they are reduced.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Eight Counter-marches, with their Reducement.

Command. BRingers-up, stand to the rest, pass through to the right, and place your selves behind your Bringers-up. The rest face about.

Command. File-leaders and Bringers-up, stand; the rest pass through to the right, and place your selves before your Leaders and Bringers-up; Half-files, face about.

Command. Ranks to the left-hand, counter-march, maintaining ground; face to the left.

Command. Right and Left-half-ranks, Counter-march from the midst of Files, maintaining ground; face inward.

Command. File-leaders, face about to the rest; pass through to the right, and place your selves behind your Leader; to your Leader.

Command. Counter-march your Front and Reer-half-files from the midst of ranks, losing ground; Front-half-files, face about.

Command. Ranks to the right hand, Countermarch, losing ground.

Command.

Command. Counter-march your right and left-half-ranks, every man placing himself on the outside of his right and left-hand-man, they are reduced.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Eight several Wheelings, with their Reducement.

Command. Wheel your right and Left-half-ranks inward to the midst of Files. Face outward.

Command. Wheel the battail off by division from the Reer.

Command. Wheel the battail inward to the right Flank from the left. Face to the left.

Command. Wheel Front and Reer-half-files inward to the midst of Ranks. Half-files, face about.

Command. Wheel off your right and Left-half-ranks by division from the midst of Files. Face inward.

Command. Wheel off your Front and Reer-half-files by division from the midst of Ranks; Front-half-files, face about.

Command. Wheel off your Front by division.

Command. Wheel your battail inward to the left Flank from the right; face to the right.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Plain Firings, and Figures of Battail.

The first firing. LEt them give fire to the Front by Intraduction; where, first, command to open their Files outward to open Order, and then let the first Rank give fire on the ground they stand; then let the next Rank move forward, and place themselves before the first Rank, and give fire likewise, and stand; and so successively every Rank is to move forward, and place themselves before the Rank that fired, until all have given fire: this being twice performed reduceth them, and is tearm'd a firing of gaining ground.

The second firing. Let them fire by Files inward to Order, and fire on the ground they stand, and fall off to the right and left into the Reer of themselves.

The third firing. Let them close their Files, ranking outward into one intire Rank into the Front, all at one and the same time, and to File again as they were.

The fourth firing. Let the Musketiers double Ranks to the right and left outward, and give fire three Ranks together; the first kneeling, the second stooping, the third standing upright, and after to double Files to the right and left inward.

The fifth firing. Let them fire again, and fall off to the right and left, and flank the Pikes, who may after charge on, and after retreat back again into their places.

The sixth firing. Let them face outward, and give fire to both Flanks on the ground they stand, and fall in the Reer of themselves.

The seventh firing. Let the Half-files of Musketiers face outward, and move cleer of the standing part; then let every division give fire again, and fall in the Reer of themselves, and then close their divisions.

The eighth firing. Let them give fire eight Ranks together (*viz.*) two kneel down, two stooping, two standing upright, and the last two to be drawn forth, and so fire them altogether.

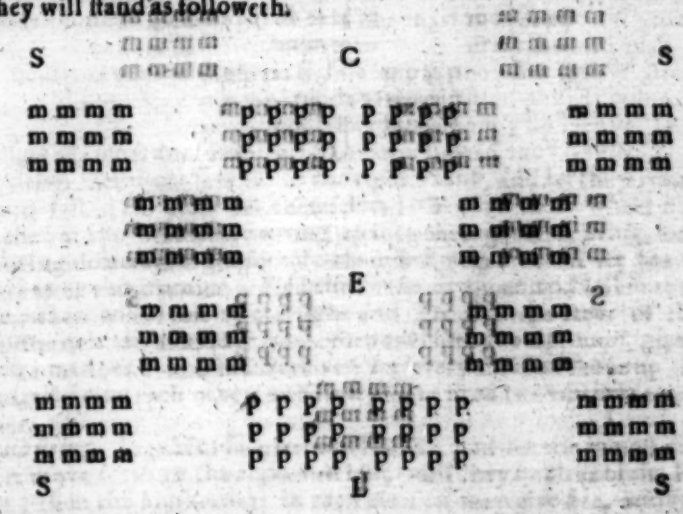
The ninth firing. Let the four first Ranks upon each Flank fire again, and fall off to the right and left, and flank the Pikes, and let those Musketiers face to Front and Reer, and draw forth the last Rank of Musketiers upon the Flanks to the right and left outward, and place them in the midst of those intervals upon the Angles; the Pikes being impaled, then Fire them to Front, Reer, and both Flanks, and four Angles, and fall in the Reer of themselves. This firing may be continued as long as a Leader shall think fit; then face about those Files standing at the Angles, and move them in the Reer of those divisions of Musketiers upon the Flanks, from whence they were first drawn forth; then let them face all to their Leader.

The tenth firing. Let the Musketiers in Front and Reer face outward, and march cleer of the standing part; then let them face to Front and Reer, and give fire,

and

and fall in the Reer of themſelves; then let the Reer-diviſions of Muſketiers face to the Front, and the outmoſt diviſions of Muſketiers in the Front, face to the Reer; then let the outmoſt diviſions move, and cloſe ranks forward to Order; and let the Pikes charge on, and being retreated back again into their places, face all to the Front, and proceed to Figures of Battail according to the next direction.

Command. Half-files of Pikes, face about; Half-files of the four outmoſt Files of Muſketiers, face to the Reer; the four outmoſt Files, and the body of Pikes, move forward cleer of the ſtanding part; to your Leader: then let them face outward, and move two paces; then face to Front and Reer, and move the like; face all to your Leader, and cloſe Ranks forward, and Files inward in each diviſion; they will ſtand as followeth.



The firſt firing. Let the Reer-diviſions face about; then let the firſt diviſions give fire, and fall in the Reer of themſelves; then wheel off to the right and left, and fall in the room or place of the next diviſions, and they at the ſame time are to move up into their ground, giving fire, and falling off in like manner.

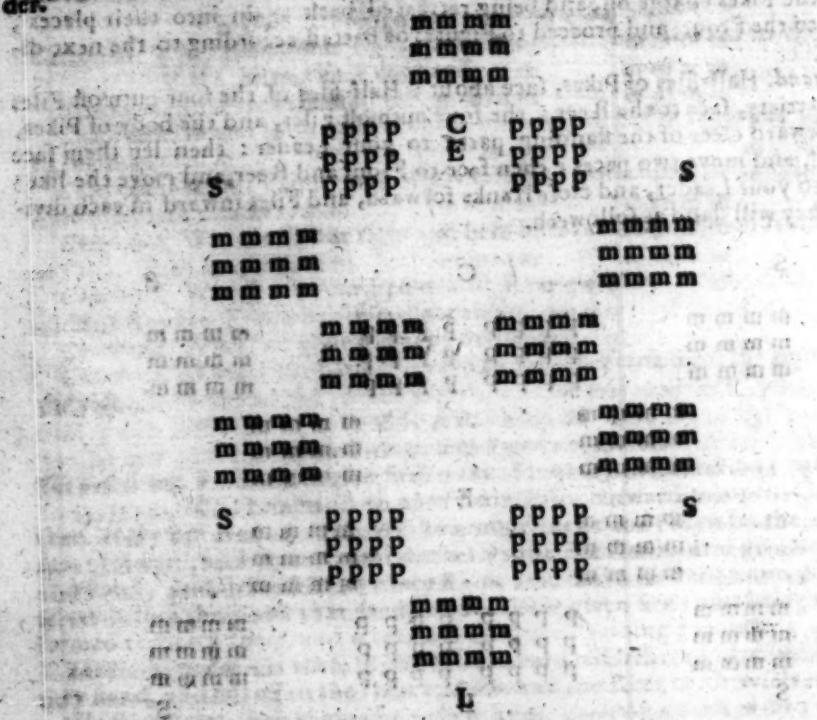
The ſecond firing. Let them give fire on the ground they ſtand in each diviſion, and fall in the Reer of themſelves; then let the Pikes charge on, whilſt the Muſketiers make ready again.

The third firing. Let the Reer-diviſions of Muſketiers move up, and range even abreſt with the firſt diviſion; then let them fire altogether, and fall in the Reer of themſelves; then let thoſe that formerly moved up, face about, and march down again into their places; then let the Pikes charge on again as before, and being retreated, let them face all to both Flanks, and give fire in form and manner as they did to Front and Reer.

The fourth firing. Let the middle-diviſions of Muſketiers advance forward until they be cleer of the ſtanding part; then let them all fire, and fall in the Reer of themſelves, and the middle-diviſions to move back again into their places; then face to their Leader, and move the inmoſt diviſion of Muſketiers upon the right in the Reer, to the left three paces, then proceed.

Command. Inmoſt diviſions of Muſketiers in the Reer, double to the right hewiſe, and after that diviſion that doubled to face about, and paſs through the Intervals of Pikes, and place themſelves three foot behind the Reer; and the other diviſion that was doubled to advance forward through the interval of Pikes, and place themſelves three foot before the Front; then face to their Leader. Let the ſecond diviſion of Muſketiers from the Front ſtand, and all the reſt move forward three paces; then move the ſecond diviſions of Muſketiers to the right and left inward, until they ſtand ſtreight between the Front and Reer-diviſions of

Pikes; Front-division of Musketiers, face about, and let them and the Reer-division move forward and inward three paces; and after face to their Leader.

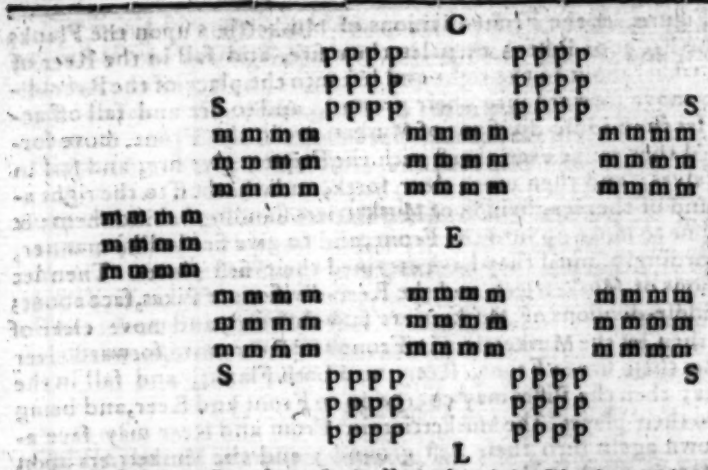


The first firing. Let the Front-division of Musketiers fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves, then wheel off to the right by the outmost divisions of Musketiers, and come down into the place or room of them in the Reer; and they at the same time are to move streight forward up into the Front, and to give fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves; then to wheel off to the right, as the Front-divisions did, until they come into their places again. Then let the first outmost divisions give fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves; and after wheel off to the right and left into the ground of the Reer-divisions, who at the same time are to move forward into their places, and give fire, and fall off as the former did. The same firings may be perform'd to the Reer, they being thither faced.

The second firing. Let them face to both Flanks, and give fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves in each division; then let the Pikes charge on to both Flanks, and being retreated back again into their places, let the Reer-divisions of Musketiers move forth cleer of the standing part; then let them double Ranks to the right in each division, and give fire altogether; after let them double Files to the left, and fire again four Ranks together, two kneel down, and two stand upright; then let the Pikes charge on, and being retreated, you may farther proceed.

Command. Front-divisions of Musketiers, face about, and march into your first places; face all to your Leader: middle-divisions of Musketiers, face outward, and move cleer of the standing part; Front-divisions of Musketiers, face about; Front-division, and Reer-division of Musketiers, move forward until you be cleer of the next divisions of Pikes that stand before you; face all to your Leader, and they will stand as followeth.

The

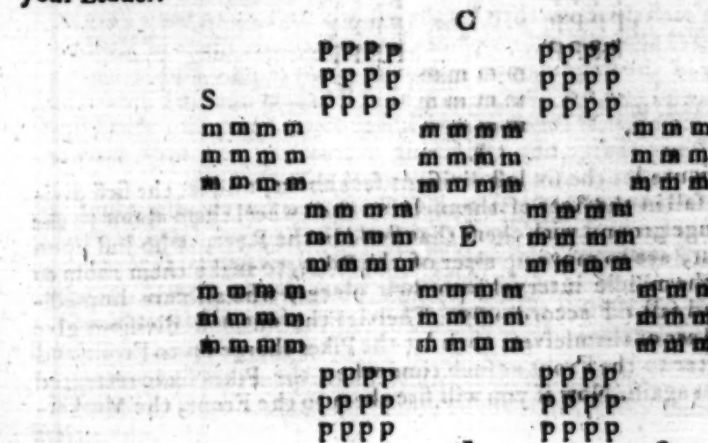


The first firing. Let them face all to the right Flank, and let the Front-division give fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves; then let them wheel down into the Reer, they at the same time moving up into their ground, firing, and falling off, and moving down accordingly into their first places; then let the other six divisions fire after this manner: First the Front-divisions, and fall in the Reer of themselves; then wheel off to the right and left into the Reer of their own range, and the next division may move forwards into their ground, give fire, and fall off in like manner: and so successively let every division move up into their first ground, relieving each other, until they have fired two or three times over in this manner.

The second firing. Let them face to both Flanks, and let the inmost divisions of Muskettiers move forth to the right and left, until they be cleer of the Pikes, who are to port; then the Muskettiers in each division may give fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves; then the Pikes may charge on, whilst the Muskettiers make ready again; and being retreated into their places again, you may proceed to another Firing.

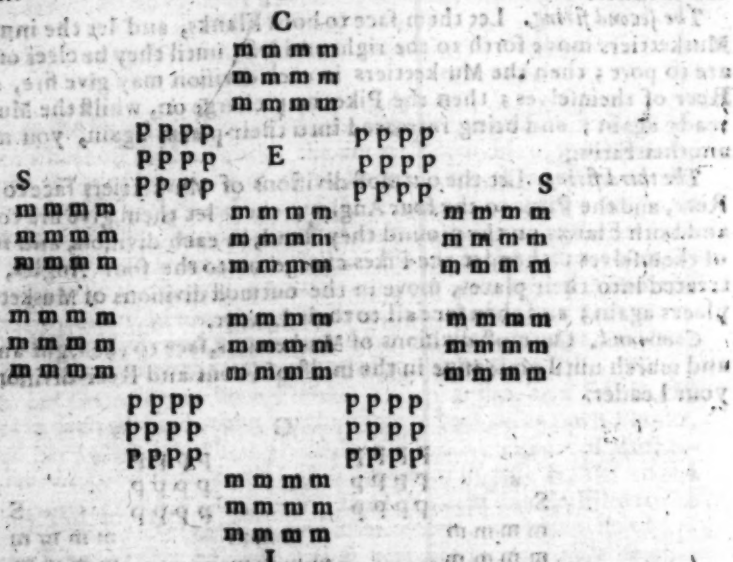
The third firing. Let the outmost divisions of Muskettiers face to the Front and Reer, and the Pikes to the four Angles; then let them give fire to Front, Reer, and both Flanks on the ground they stand, in each division, and fall in the Reer of themselves; then let the Pikes charge on to the four Angles, and being retreated into their places, move in the outmost divisions of Muskettiers into their places again; and then face all to their Leader.

Command. Outmost divisions of Muskettiers, face to the right and left inward, and march until you range in the midst of Front and Reer-divisions of Pikes; to your Leader.



Upon the former Figure, let the Front-divisions of Muskettiers upon the Flanks move even with the Front of Pikes; then let them fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves; then wheel about to the right and left into the place of the Reer-divisions, who are to move forward into their ground, and to fire and fall off accordingly. Then let the middle-divisions of Muskettiers in the Front move forward likewise, until they range even abreft with the Front; give fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves; and then move cleer forth, and wheel off to the right about into the ground of thereer-division of Muskettiers standing behind them; & they at the same time to move up into the Front, and to give fire in like manner, and to fall off accordingly, until they have attained their first places. Then let the three last divisions of Muskettiers, and the Reer-divisions of Pikes, face about; and let the two middle-divisions of Muskettiers face outward, and move cleer of the standing part; then let the Muskettiers in Front and Reer move forward cleer of the Pikes, and let them fire to Front, Reer, and both Flanks, and fall in the Reer of themselves; then the Pikes may charge on to Front and Reer, and being retreated back into their places, the Muskettiers in Front and Reer may face about, and move down again into their first ground; and the Muskettiers upon the Flanks are to face inward, and to move into their places where formerly they stood; then face them all to their Leader, and proceed.

Command. Reer-division of Muskettiers in the midst, face about; middle-divisions of Muskettiers move forward three foot before the Front and Reer; Division of Muskettiers in the midst upon the right, face to the left Angles, and move until you stand even and straight in the next range of Muskettiers; the next division of Muskettiers in the midst upon the left, face about; and then likwise face to the left Angle, and move down into the next range of Muskettiers to them, and to stand streight in the Reer of the Reer-division; face all to your Leader, produceth the next.



Upon the former Figure, let the six last divisions face about, and let the first divisions give fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves; then wheel them about to the right, and interchange ground with them that stand in the Reer, who just upon their wheeling about, are to move up cleer of the Pikes, to make them room to fall down through the middle interval into their places, who also are immediately to give fire, and fall off accordingly. Then let the outmost divisions give fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves; then let the Pikes charge on to Front and Reer; face them after to the Front at such time when the Pikes have retreated back into their places again. Now if you will fire them to the Front, the Muskettiers

tiers ſtand in ſuch good order, that you may fire them by diviſions, by their ſeveral turns as long as you pleaſe, they relieving each other. After you may fire them to Front, Reer, and both Flanks, the Muſkettiers ſtanding in fit condition for the ſame. But fearing to keep the Souldiers too long in Exerciſe, debarring them thereby of their wonted refreſhment, I will haſten to the Reducement, and for preſent lodge the Colours, and conclude the eleventh Exerciſe.

Reducement. Outmoſt Diviſions of Muſkettiers face outward and move ſix paces to your Leader. The two firſt Diviſions of Muſkettiers in the midſt face to the right, and move clear of the Pikes; then face to the right and left inward, and move, and interchange ground, then ſtand, and face to your Leader. The two laſt Diviſions of Muſkettiers in the midſt, face to the left, and move clear of the Pikes; face all to your Leader. Then let every Diviſion cloſe forward to *Order*, and move up even abreſt with the Pikes, they are reduced.

CHAP. XL.

The twelfth Exerciſe, conſiſting of 24 Files, ſix deep.

THe place of Exerciſe appointed for the Souldiers to meet, they upon a juſt ſummons make full appearance, being indeed the very life of any Exerciſe, affording much comfort to him that ſhall lead them. And therefore ſeeing their readineſs and forwardneſs (as in duty they are concerned) the Leader cannot chuſe but forthwith to give order unto his Officers for the compleating up of the Body; who knowing his commands, go nimbly and chearfully to work in drawing forth the Files, and joyning them together, after fetching the Colours, and bringing them to the head of the Company. So that nothing being wanting, the Leader craves their ſilence and attention, commanding them to their diſtance of Order, both of Rank and File, and after ſome few diſtances ſhewen unto them, he may proceed in the next place to ſuch Facings as followeth.

Command.
- Face to the right and left outward, and move four paces.
- Face to Front and Reer, and move three paces.
- Face to the outward Angles in the Front.
- Face to the inward Angles in the Front.
- Face to the inward Angles of the right Flank.
- Face to the inward Angles in the left Flank.
- Face to the outward Angles in the Reer.
- Face to the inward Angles in the Reer.
- Face to the outward Angles both of Front and Reer.
- Face to the inward Angles both of Front and Reer.
- Face to the midſt of Files.
- Face to the midſt of Ranks.
- Face to the Centre.
- Face to the outward Angles of Front and Reer from the Centre.
- Face all about to the right.
- Face to Front, Reer, and both Flanks from the Centre.

As you were. / To your Leader.

CHAP. XLI.

A Doubling to make every man a File-Leader by dignity.

Command. HAlf-files double your Front to the left.

Command. Double your Files to the right entire, advancing, every man placing himſelf before his Leader.

Command. Front-half-files double your Reer to the left.

Command. Double your Files to the left entire, advancing, every man placing himſelf before his Leader.

Command. Bringers-up double your Front to the right.

Command. Files double your depth to the right, every man falling behind his Bringer-up.

Command.

Command. Half-files, double your Front to the right.
Command. Double your Files to the left entire, advancing.
Command. Ranks to the right double.
Command. Files to the right double.
Command. Bringers-up double your Front to the left.
Command. Files double your depth to the left, every man falling behind his Bringer-up.
Reducement. Ranks to the left double. Files to the left double.

CHAP. XLII.

Several Wheelings, with their Reducements.

Command. WHeel off your Reer-half-files, and double your Front by Diviſion
Command. Right and left half-ranks double the depth of your Battail by wheeling inward to the Reer. Face to the Reer.
Command. Double the length of your Battail by wheeling inward to Front and Reer. Half-files face about.
Command. Front and Reer half-files double the depth of your Battail by wheeling outward to the right Flank. Half-files face about, and wheel to the left; Front half-files wheel to the right.
Command. Front and Reer half-files double the length of your Battail by wheeling inward to the left Flank; face all to the left.
Command. Front and Reer half-files double the depth of both Flanks by wheeling to the right and left outward. Half-files face about.
Command. Front and Reer half-files double the length of the Battail by wheeling inward to the midſt of Ranks. Face inward.
Command. Front and Reer half-files double the depth of your left Flank by wheeling to the right and left outward. Half-files face about.
Command. Front and Reer half-files double the length of your Battail by wheeling inward to the right flank. Face to the right; and as they then ſtand, right half-ranks wheel to the left, and left half-ranks wheel to the right until the right Flank meet together, they are reduced.

CHAP. XLIII.

Plain Figures, and figures of Battail.

The firſt firing. LEt two Ranks advance forward ten paces and give fire, and fall in the Reer of themſelves, and after wheel off to the right and left outward, and move down in the Reer of their own Diviſions of Muſkettiers; and then the next two Ranks are to move forward, and to give fire, as the former did, and ſo conſequently all the reſt, until all have fired, and reduced back again into their places.

The ſecond firing. Let them fire even with the Front, and fall in the Reer of themſelves, and let the Pikes charge on whilſt the Muſkettiers make ready again.

The third firing. Let ſingle Files be drawn off, and Ranks inward into the Front, and fire, and File again, face about, and move down into their places; then let two Files be drawn off clear, and let the inmoſt Files rank inward, the outmoſt Files rank outward, and give fire, and File again as they were, and fall into their places.

The fourth firing. Let the four outmoſt Files upon each Flank be drawn off until they be clear of the Front; then let them cloſe before the Front of Pikes; face then the inmoſt Files of Muſkettiers to both the Flanks, and let them give fire to the Front and both Flanks on the ground they ſtand, and fall in the Reer of themſelves.

The fifth firing. Let them give fire all together, ſix Ranks at once in the Front, and four in the Flanks, obſerving the former Rules in firing ſo many Ranks together, as you may find in the place of deſcription of firings.

The

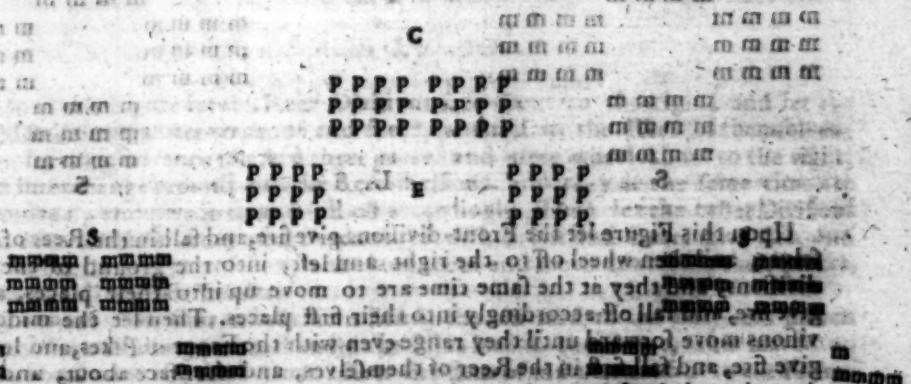
The ſixth firing. Let thoſe Muſkettiers upon the Flanks face to the Reer, and move clear of the Pikes; then cloſe to the right and left inward to Order; then let the half-files of Pikes face about, and let the Muſkettiers give fire to Front and Reer, and fall in the Reer of themſelves.

The ſeventh firing. Let the Pikes move forth to the right and left outward, until they be clear of the Muſkettiers; then let the Muſkettiers give fire in an oblique manner, thus; let every two Files open to the right and left outward to ſomething more then open Order; then cloſe the two firſt Ranks of the four inmoſt Files to the Front to Order, and let the other two Ranks cloſe likewiſe almoſt to that diſtance; but the two laſt Ranks only are to face to their Front, and after in the ſame kind cloſe the four Ranks inward to the Reer of the four outmoſt, in manner and form there, as the other Files were to the Front, and ſo let them give fire in each Diviſion, an oblique way, two Ranks kneel down, two kneeling, and two ſtand upright.

The eighth firing. After the former firing, cloſe the four inmoſt Files to the right and left outward to Order, and to joyn with the outmoſt Files, when their aſpects being to the outward Angles of Front and Reer, let the Pikes port, and Muſkettiers give fire to the four Angles, and fall in the Reer of themſelves; then let the Pikes charge on whilſt the Muſkettiers make ready again, and after retreat back into their places again.

The ninth firing. Let them give fire again the firſt rank in each Diviſion, and wheel about to the right, and move down into their firſt places where before they were drawn forth, and every rank conſequently fall in the reer of them; then let the Pikes cloſe into the midſt to Order, and face all to their Leader.

Command. Muſkettiers face to the right and left outward, and move twelve paces; then face to the reer, and move likewiſe twelve paces; after face to their Leader. Front-half-files of each Diviſion move forward three paces; right and left half-ranks of each Diviſion move outward two paces; Front-Diviſions of Pikes and Muſkettiers ſtand, reer-diviſions of both Arms move to the right and left outward, until you be clear of the Front-diviſions; then cloſe ranks and files in each Diviſion to Order, and face to their Leader, they will ſtand in the firſt Figure.



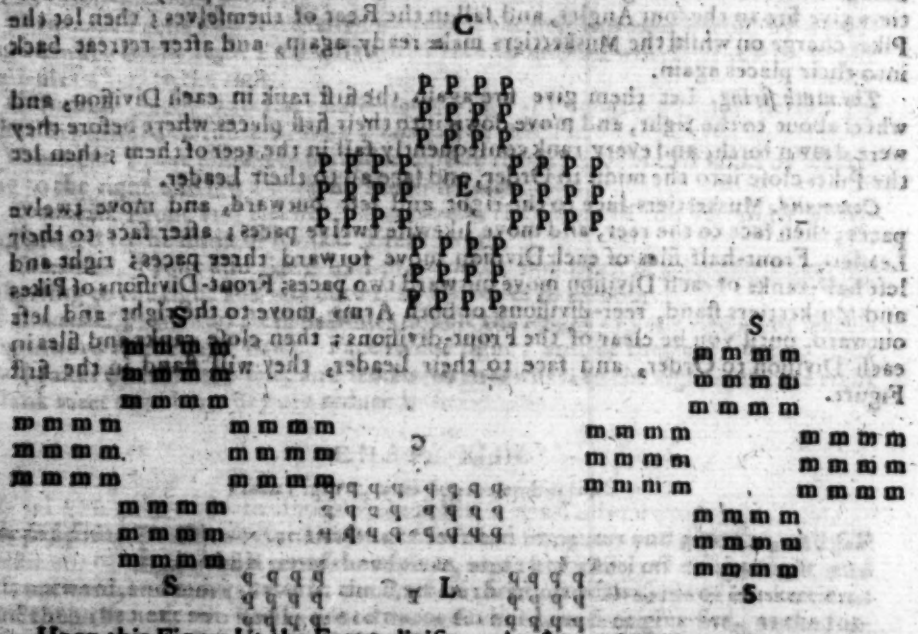
The firſt firing. Let the Front-diviſions of Muſkettiers move forward, and range even abreſt with the Front of Pikes, give fire, and fall in the reer of themſelves; then face about and move down into their own ground again, and face to their Leader; then let the outmoſt Diviſions of Muſkettiers move in like manner as the former did, and give fire, and fall off in like manner, and down again into their places. Let the Muſkettiers in the next place face outward, and move three paces, and after face to the Front; then let the reer-diviſions of Muſkettiers advance forward until they range even abreſt with the Front-diviſions; then let

them

them give fire all together in each Diviſion, and fall in the Reer of themſelves, and after let the outmoſt diviſions that moved up, move down again into their places; then let the Pikes charge on, and after retreat into their places.

The ſecond firing. Let the outmoſt Diviſions of Muſkettiers in the Front move forward before the Front of Pikes, and the inmoſt Diviſions of Muſkettiers in the Front, let them likewiſe move at the ſame time before the Reer-diviſions of Pikes; then let the Pikes port, and Muſkettiers in each Diviſion give fire on the ground they ſtand, and after fall in the Reer of themſelves; and thoſe Muſkettiers that formerly moved forth from their places, let the Serjeants wheel them off to the righe and left into their firſt ground, and face to their Leader.

Command. Inmoſt Diviſions of Muſkettiers in the Front, face to the Reer; Diviſions of Pikes upon the left in the Front face about to the right; Diviſions that are thus faced, move down three foot clear of the Reer of each Arms. Front-diviſions both of Pikes and Muſkettiers, and thoſe that laſt moved, face to the left, and move two paces; face all to your Leader; and Muſkettiers move forward until your middle Diviſions range even abreſt with the Reer-diviſions of Pikes, and they will ſtand as followeth.

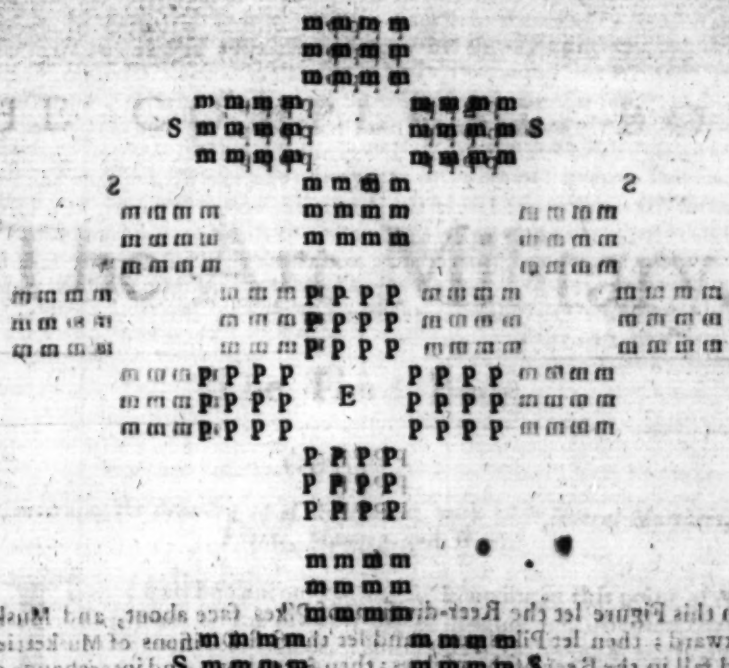


Upon this Figure let the Front-diviſions give fire, and fall in the Reer of themſelves, and then wheel off to the right and left, into the ground of the Reer-diviſions; and they at the ſame time are to move up into their places, and to give fire, and fall off accordingly into their firſt places. Then let the middle Diviſions move forward until they range even with the Front of Pikes, and let them give fire, and fall firſt in the Reer of themſelves, and after face about, and move down into their places again, and face to their Leader; then let the Pikes charge on, and after retreat back again into their places. They may fire to the Reer after the ſame manner as they did to the Front, they being thither faced; and after they have all fired, face again to their Leader.

Command. Let the four Diviſions of Muſkettiers upon the right move away, and let the Diviſions of Pikes fall in the Reer of them, and the four Diviſions of Muſkettiers on the left to fall in the Reer of the Pikes; then ſtanding ſtraight in their Diviſions both Rank-wiſe and File-wiſe, and they will ſtand as followeth.

Upon

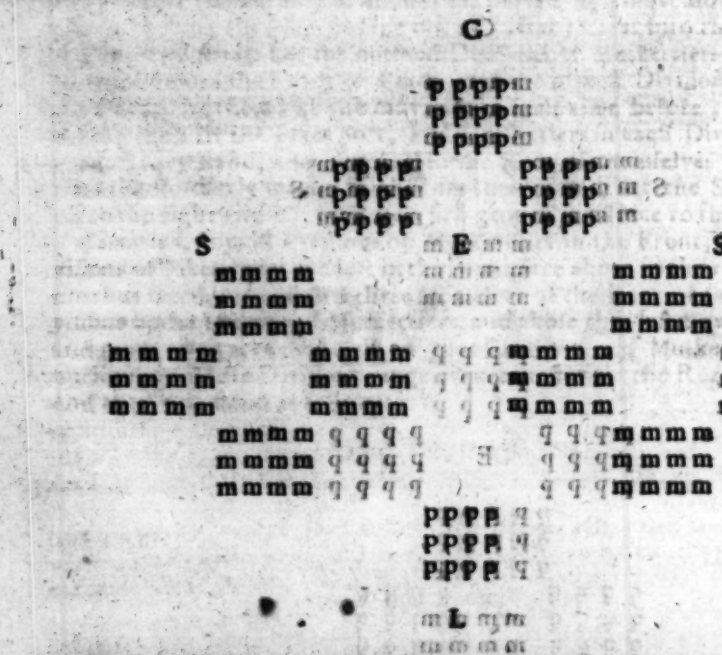
C)



L

Upon this Figure let the Reer Divisions face about to the right, and let the first Divisions give fire to Front and Reer, and fall in the Reer of themselves; then let them advance forward three paces, and after wheel about to the right, and interchange ground with the Reer-divisions, and they at the same time are to move up and give fire, and fall off accordingly. Then let the other Divisions move forward until they range even abreast with Front and Reer, give fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves, after face about and move down into their places; then face all to their Leader.

Command. **The four first divisions stand, the rest face to the left, and march cleer of the standing pars; then let the Pikes face to the Front, and march up even abreast with the Musketiers; Reer-divisions of Musketiers face to the Front, and move up likewise; Musketiers face inward, move all three or four paces until they stand in form of the second Figure; face all to your Leader. Reer-division of Pikes face about, and move down three foot cleer of the Reer; to your Leader; which produceth the last Figure.**



Upon this Figure let the Reer-division of Pikes face about, and Muskettiers face outward; then let Pikes port, and let the first Divisions of Muskettiers give fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves; then face about, and interchange ground with the Reer-divisions, and faces again to Front and Reer, and let those that came up into their room give fire in like manner, and fall off and down again into their places. Then let the next Divisions give fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves, and let the Pikes charge on; and being retreated back again into their places, command the two middle Divisions of Muskettiers to face to the Reer, and move down and range even with the Reer; then let every Division of Muskettiers give fire on the ground they stand, to both flanks and Reer, and fall in the Reer of themselves; the Pikes may charge on again, and those Muskettiers that moved down into the Reer, may face about and move back again into their places, and face all to the Front.

Reducement. Reer-division of Pikes advance forward to the left into the Front, the two inmost Divisions of Muskettiers face about, and march clear of the Reer; then face to the right and left outward, and place themselves behind the Reer-divisions of Muskettiers: outmost divisions of Muskettiers face inward, and move straight in the Reer of the Front-divisions, and let the Pikes fall in the Reer of their Front-divisions, and face all to their Leader. Half-files of Muskettiers double your front to the right and left inward, and after move forward, and even the Front, they are reduced.

The end of the Second Book.

THE COMPLEAT BODY OF The Art Military.

The Third Book.

CHAP. I.

Concerning the drawing up of Regiments, with their ſeveral Numbers, Fronts, Manner and Ways.

HE that ſhall be deſirous to be truly knowing in this point of *Military Diſcipline*, in the drawing up of Regiments, whether they be of leſſer or greater Bodies, as in ſome 6, others 7, 8, 10, or 12 Companies, they muſt be drawn up into *Battalia*, either in one, two, or three Sqnadrons (or grand Diviſions) of Pikes flanked with Muskettiers, having always in the Reer a ſufficient number of Muskettiers for the guard of the Bagage, Gaunon, or to be Convoys for to convey Ammunition and Victual to the reſt of their fellows; who are to be drawn forth (by the diſcretion of the Major) from each particular Company, according to their ſeveral ſtrengths, as in greater Companies more Files then in thoſe which be leſſer, ordering them timely relief, whereby the ſeveral duties amongſt the Souldiers throughout the Regiment by an equal way may take their turns. Now for as much as the true ſtating of the Dignities of every particular Officer, in the opinions of many, differ very much, and our former Military Authors have been very ſparing in their pains in ſetting down their due places of honour; I ſhall, for ſatisfaction of thoſe which deſire to be rightly informed, collect out of the many forms practiſed abroad and at home, one good way to perfect it.

But here, by the way, I muſt crave pardon from the courteous Reader, by reaſon I foreſee certain Objections like rubs or blocks lying in my way, to digreſs a little from my intended purpoſe, to give anſwers unto each of them: which are,

Firſt, That I ſeem to ſlighten the pains of former Authors.

Secondly, That it will be a means to occaſion much idleneſs in the Souldiers.

Thirdly, That it is too great a knowledge to be laid open to their view.

To the firſt I anſwer, That the reaſon, as I conceive, why they have been ſo ſparing of their pains in this kind, was not for want of Abilities or knowledge amongſt any of them, whoſe works for the moſt part I highly honour and eſteem, but rather believe that they left it forth for the curious ſearch of ſuch who are called unto *Field-Officers* places, knowing well, that before they are capable of that preferment, they muſt be good proficients in this part of *Military Exerciſe*.

2. Although many that know but a little, may be puft up with high conceits of themſelves, conceiving what the Author hath done, 'twere eaſie for any man to perform the ſame; yet to them of riper Judgements, the more variety in this kind is preſented to their view, the more painful they are in the curious practiſe

thereof, thinking every moment loſt which is not ſpent in the ſearching after, and informing of their Judgements in this point of *Military Diſcipline*.

3. If it had not been for the worthy pains and labours of our Anceſtors publiſhed to the view of the world, this our age might have been ignorant both in this, and all other Sciences; for from them we borrowed our firſt light, God putting it in their hearts to publiſh their ſeveral gifts to after-Generations, which though at this day much refined, yet for our firſt grounds and principles we are beholding unto them. Therefore, give me leave, according as God hath inabled me, not to conceal or keep back any thing which may concern the good and welfare of my Countrey; for, I conceive there is none worthy to receive benefit from thoſe that have gone before him, if he conceals that good to ſuch as ſhall come after him. And if I happen to lie under the hard cenſure of ſome for my pains, it makes no matter, ſo the major part receive benefit thereby; for as I gathered ſomewhat of others, ſo my deſire is, that others may do the like by me.

The opinions of Souldiers in the drawing up of Regiments are very various both in their Forms and Figures, according to the cuſtom of their Countreys, commands of their Generals, or Officers in chief, which nevertheleſs may prove very good and ſerviceable when need ſhall require. I ſhall therefore for the ſatisfaction of the ingenious Souldier ſet before them the beſt Collections drawn from them all, ſuch as may be moſt uſeful for to fight againſt the enemy, according to the ſituation of the place, the number of men, and aptneſs of ground to contain them, which in the next place comes to be handled.

CHAP. II.

The manner of drawing up a Regiment conſiſting of ſix Companies, containing in it a Colonel, *a* Lieutenant-Colonel, *a* Major, *and three* Captains, *every one having* 108 *men in a Company, and the three Field-Officers* 144. *which makes compleatly up* 756 *men, whereof two thirds are Muſkettiers, and one third of Pikes, the Files being ſix deep.*

THe general place of Rendezvous being appointed out unto the Major, it is his care to take a timely view thereof, that there be ground and room ſufficient enough for the drawing them up. And having received Orders from his Colonel, Major General, or other ſuperiour Officers for the Regiments marching thither, he may appoint the Companies to march either of theſe two ways; either by ſucceſſion or dignity. If by ſucceſſion, firſt the Colonels Company moves away; next the Lieutenant Colonels in the Reer of him; then the Majors, and ſo conſequently all the reſt from the eldeſt to the youngeſt, who brings up the Reer of all. If by Dignity, firſt the Colonels Company; and in the Reer of him, the youngeſt Captain; and after him the eldeſt; then the Majors; then the ſecond Captain; the Lieutenant Colonel bringing up the Reer of all. But it concerns the Major before their marching to give notice to the Lieutenant Colonel and the eldeſt Captain to countermarch their Ranks of their two particular Companies, as ſoon as they come into the place of the general Rendezvous before he ſhall draw them up, to preſerve the honour of the right File-leaders, and Bringers up of both Arms. He is likewiſe to be there beforehand, attending their marching in, and after the Colonels Company have made Alt, to draw up each particular Company on the left of him, all in one even range, commanding them to cloſe Ranks forward to Order, and Files into the midſt unto the ſame diſtance. He is likewiſe to inform himſelf of the Captains, Lieutenants, and Serjeants, how many Files of Pikes and Muſkettiers they have in each particular Company, and accordingly he is to enter it down in his Paper-Book, and to make uſe thereof as followeth.

He is to require one ſingle File apiece of Muſkettiers to be drawn off from the three ſmalleſt Companies, and two Files apiece from the greater, which makes nine Files, and contains 54 men, which are to be led away by an able Serjeant into the Reer, for to be a guard to the Bagage, or other occaſions. From thence he may proceed, commanding all the Muſkettiers to ſtand, and the Pikes to advance their Arms, and move forward ten or twelve paces; and then to ſtand, and cloſe

their

their Files outward to Order; three of their Colours moving with their Pikes to the right hand; the other three moving away to the left. After he may command Musketiers to close their Files outward to Order, and they will stand in four Divisions, two of Pikes, and in the Reer of them, two of Musketiers, as underneath is set forth; the Captains being all upon the head of the Pikes, with their Ensigns, and the Lieutenants in the Reer; the Serjeants attending upon the Flanks of each division.

This Squadron contains 22 files of Pikes.

This Squadron contains 20 files of Pikes.

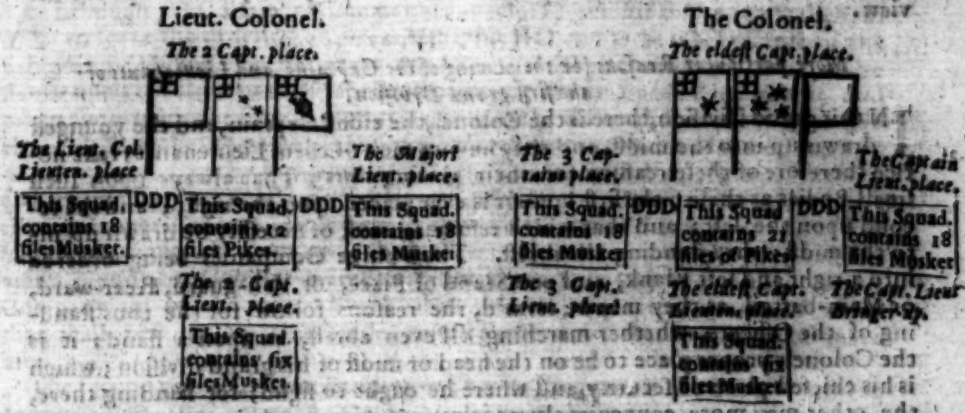
This Squadron contains 39 files of Musketiers.

This Squadron contain 36 files of Musketiers.

This Squadron contains 4 files of Musketiers.

This Squadron contains 5 files of Musketiers.

This being done, command each division of Musketiers and Pikes to face outward, and to move to such convenient distance, that being faced to the Front, there may be room sufficient upon the subdividing of each division of Musketiers for their moving up, and flanking each body of Pikes. After which the Major may assign unto every Captain and Lieutenant his due place of honour, as they stand all abreast; and that they may also naturally fall into their proper places upon the march, which shall be set forth in the next Figure standing in two grand Divisions, the one in the Reer of the other, which may happen sometimes for want of ground; but provided they have ground enough, they ought to stand in one even range, as in *folio* 5. The Major, after they are thus drawn up in one even range, will finde three Files of Musketiers more in the second grand Division, and two of the Pikes, then is in the first; therefore he must take from thence one File of each Company, and add them to nine Files in the Reer, which maketh them twelve, and then he will have ballanced the divisions equal, taking off one File of Pikes, and placing it amongst the eldest Captains Pikes.



CHAP.

CHAP. III.

The Reasons follow for the placing of the Captains, their Colours, and their Lieutenants, after the manner before set down.

WHat hath formerly been declared concerning a Rank or File, six abreſt, or six deep, may be ſatisfactory in ſome kind unto this point, which takes his rule from hence. For all private Companies, ſmaller Bodies, or ſingle Files, muſt, or ought to be as neer as they can conformable to greater Bodies, as to Regiments, and conſequently they to Brigades. Therefore take notice that this rule ought ever to be obſerved in the drawing of Regiments, that the right Flank, as neer as may be, ought to be ſuitable with the left, both in ſtrength, number, and dignity; and likewiſe to be ſo when they are drawn forth upon a long march, the Front equal with the Reer. Now, ſuppoſe theſe two grand diviſions ſtood even abreſt; we will begin to examine the firſt worth, which is the Colonels; and the fourth worth, which is the eldeſt Captains, and placed upon the right and left of the firſt grand diviſion, with the ſecond and third worth, who are the Lieutenant-Colonel and Major, drawn up upon the right and left of the ſecond grand diviſion; and you ſhall finde they are every way equivalent in number, worth and dignity, with that of the firſt.

In the next place, there are no more to place, but the fifth and ſixth worth, who are the ſecond and third Captains: and therefore ſince it is the firſt place of honour among the Captains in a Regiment, to lead the firſt Body or Stand of Pikes; it muſt then conſequently follow, that the ſecond place of honour muſt be to lead the ſecond grand diviſion of Pikes; and therefore the fifth worth is brought into and placed between the ſecond and third, that he may ſtand there to lead the ſecond Body of Pikes; wherein the Lieutenant-Colonel, the Major, and his own Colours are placed: ſo that there remains no more but the ſixth worth, or youngeſt Captain to place, who is to be drawn up between the Colonel and eldeſt Captain. Now if we ſhall further proceed to ballance it more cleerly, conſider them by dividing them by two's in their places; as firſt, we will begin with the Colonel, the firſt worth, who hath joyned to him the youngeſt Captain, which is the ſixth worth, and they two make the number (7); then compare the Lieutenant-Colonel, who is the ſecond worth, unto the ſecond Captain joyn'd with him, which is the fifth worth, and they make alike the ſame number; after that compare the Major and elder Captain, who are drawn up into the midſt of the Regiment, whoſe places carry the third and fourth worth, and their number is ſuitable with the reſt. And thus much may be ſpoken in general: now I ſhall come more particularly to give further ſatisfaction, both for them, and for all the reſt; and therefore I will give reaſons for the placing of the Officers of the firſt grand diviſion; and cleering that, the ſecond will quickly be laid open to the view.

CHAP. IV.

More particular Reaſons for the placing of the Captains and Lieutenants of the firſt grand Diviſion.

IN this grand Diviſion, there is the Colonel, the eldeſt Captain, and the youngeſt drawn up into the midſt, and they having each of them Lieutenants; take notice therefore of theſe reaſons for their placing thus; That always upon ſuch ſmall Bodies as theſe, the firſt honour is ever placed upon the right, and the ſecond upon the left; and that which remains, muſt of neceſſity be drawn up into the midſt; they ſtanding all abreſt. Theſe three Companies being ordered into a right and left Flank, and one Stand of Pikes, or Van-guard, Reer-ward, or Main-battail, as they may be term'd, the reaſons follow for the thus ſtanding of the Officers, whether marching all even abreſt, or upon a ſtand: it is the Colonels proper place to be on the head or midſt of his grand diviſion; which is his chiefeſt place of ſecurity, and where he ought to fight; for ſtanding there, the other may more conveniently repair unto him for their orders, as occaſion ſhall require. Now the Colonel being a Field-Officer, is not abſolutely tyed to any one place to fight, as the reſt are, many occaſions calling him from thence;

thence; the eldest Captain therefore is appointed to take charge of the Body of Pikes, whether it be upon a March to lead them, or upon a Stand to fight them, he ought never to forsake them, but upon special command from his Colonel, or other Field-Officers. Now the reason why the first Body of Pikes is the most honourablest place to lead, is, as I conceive, because the Colonels Colours are there flying; and besides, being the more ancienter Arms, far more honour is it to lead them; for most commonly the gallantest men of the Infantry desire rather to trail Pikes, then to carry Muskets. Moreover, it hath been a constant practise in most places, that the eldest Captain should have that place to lead on foot, although many times his Colonel being on horse-back, may be a little before him. Having spoken of these two, it remains to speak something of the youngest Captain, who is appointed either upon the Marching all abrest, or upon a Stand, to take charge of the Reer-ward, or left Flank of the first grand Division to fight them; but upon the long March, it is more honourable for him to fall down in the Reer, and to bring up his own Lieutenant, coming up into his place; for it is greater honour (though many times not believed) to bring up a grand division, then to lead a Sub-division. In the next place, it may be supposed that the Captain-Lieutenants place is too honourable to lead the Van-guard. To which I answer, That the Colonel himself is confined thither; for upon the long March he draws off the Van-guard, and leads them himself, being attended on horse-back by the Martial and Quarter-master of his own Regiment. Now leading away the Musketiers of his own particular Company, the Captain-Lieutenant being subservient unto him, marcheth afoot upon the head of the first Division of Musketiers, and takes charge of them, as assisting to his Colonel, and fighting them, if he receives no command to the contrary, when they are all drawn up again even abrest, it concerning him especially to be there resident in the absence of his Colonel, for the better regulating of them. The eldest Captains Lieutenant is always placed in the Reer of the Pikes, either upon a Stand, or upon a March, it being very honourable unto him to bring up a grand Division of Pikes. The third Captains Lieutenant is ordered to bring up the left Flank, except it be upon the long March, and then he is to exchange places with his own Captain. There is yet one place vacant, which is to bring up the right Flank; and the Captain-Lieutenants Bringer-up many times through courtesie is called a Lieutenant, therefore a Major may be so courteous as to assign him that place. And here I shall conclude with the reasons of the places of the Officers of the first grand Division.

CHAP. V.

Reasons for the placing of the Officers of the second grand Division.

ALthough the Colonel is Commander in chief, yet his discretion is such, as to leave the ordering of places to his Major; and as he takes charge of the first grand Division, so he leaves the second to his Lieutenant-Colonel, who stands upon the head or midst of the same, being drawn up all even abrest; and many times leads the second grand Division, as the Colonel doth the first, as was the practise in the Regiments upon their March under the command of the Earl of *Essex*, General of the Parliaments Forces. To such as shall approve of this way (which may be very good) they shall not need to Counter-march the Ranks of the Lieutenant-Colonel, as is before expressed, before the drawing up of the Lieutenant-Colonels Company, but draw them up on the right of that Division, and to Counter-march the Ranks of the Majors, and draw his Company up on the left. But I shall leave that to the liberty of those that shall best fancie this kinde, and proceed to that which is of more use.

The second grand Division standing in an even range with the first, it will be convenient for the Lieutenant-Colonel to be upon the head thereof. As concerning the Major, he being an Officer at will, hath no certain place assign'd unto him, by reason of his moving as occasion shall require to both Divisions, where-

by

by he may give orders unto them all, minding the good order of the Regiment throughout every part. But if he will take his place, to march in the propereſt place for him, if they march all abreſt, will be in the Front, between the Colonel and Lieutenant-Colonel; but in the long march, in the midſt of both grand Diviſions, whereby he may have freer acceſs unto them both, whoſe vigilant eye in the well ordering of the Regiment is chiefly concern'd, obſerving all the paſſages, whether there be need of ſub-dividing their Diviſions; and if at any time they ſhall be divided, when there is ground ſufficient enough, he muſt give order again for the drawing them all up even abreſt, it being far more graceful to the Regiments marching. In the next place, the ſecond Captain may claim it as his due, to lead the ſecond Body of Pikes, as the eldeſt Captain challengeth the firſt; and the reaſon given for his place, may ſuffice for both. The eldeſt Lieutenant in this grand Diviſion, which is the Lieutenant-Colonels Lieutenant, is aſſigned unto that place, where he is ſet down for to be an aſſiſtant there unto his Lieutenant-Colonel, for the well regulating of his men which march in the Reer, as the Captain-Lieutenant is to the Colonels men, who march in the Front; and his Lieutenant-Colonel bringing up the whole Regiment, is the ſecond place of honour. Some may conceive the Majors Lieutenant hath too great a place of honour in leading the Van of the ſecond grand Diviſion. To which I anſwer, If the Lieutenant-Colonel marcheth not there himſelf, but ſhall bring up the Regiment; certainly it muſt be cleer, that it is the Majors due, for to march there himſelf at times convenient; and being ſo, there is good reaſon in his abſence his Lieutenant ſhould lead his men, or in his preſence to be there as a helper unto him, for the well regulating of his men, as the other Lieutenants are to the other Field-Officers, who every one of them according to their ſeveral places may have ſeveral occaſions to call them off; their Lieutenants therefore ought to be at hand, and to march with them in their places, whereby they may receive Orders from them, and know how to act in their abſence concerning their own particular Souldiers. The ſecond Captains Lieutenant is ordered to bring up the ſecond Body of Pikes; which being a grand Diviſion, it falls to him as due there, as the eldeſt Captains Lieutenant doth in the firſt, it being the greateſt place of honour that can be given him in the Reer, next to the Lieutenant-Colonel. Having ſpoken thus much concerning every Field-Officer, the Captains and their Lieutenants, where their places are to march, with the reaſons for the ſame, it will be expected to ſupply two places which are vacant in the Reer of the ſecond grand diviſion. To which I anſwer, Upon the long march the Lieutenant-Colonel himſelf moves down there, and brings up the Reer of the whole Regiment; and therefore it is left vacant for him. But then you will ſay, There wants an Officer to bring up the Reer of that Diviſion wherein the Majors Lieutenant is placed. To which I anſwer, That there is none remaining to do it, except it be the Majors Lieutenant himſelf. For if the Major ſhall lead the ſecond grand Diviſion, then his Lieutenant may move down to bring up that particular Diviſion for to ſupply the ſame; but in regard the Major (as hath been ſhewn before) hath many occaſions to call him off, it concerns his Lieutenant to keep his place which was firſt aſſigned unto him, to avoid the trouble of moving up again in his Majors abſence. Some are of opinion it would be convenient to place the Lieutenant-Colonels eldeſt Serjeant there; but in my judgement, it is very unhandſome to ſee any Halberdeer, either to lead or bring up any Diviſion marching in a Regimental way; and rather then I ſhould do it, I would let it go unſupplyed; but if he ſhall be there placed to bring up, his beſt way of marching is either with Pallizado, or half-pike, and not with his Halberd.

CHAP. VI.

The ordering of a Regiment to the long March, with the placing of the Officers, and the leading of Carriages.

THe Major giving to every Captain his proper place to march in, and what Diviſions they are to lead, and what to bring up, in written notes under his hand, commands the Drum-Major to beat a March, and

ſo

ſo conſequently all the reſt to take it from him. The Souldiers being warned thereby, begin to ſhoulder their Arms, and prepare to move; the Colonel on Horſback being attended on by his Martial and Quarter-maſter, draws off the firſt Diviſion of Muſketiers, his Captain-Lieutenant being ſix foot behinde him; which Diviſion is brought up by the Captain-Lieutenants Bringer-up. The eldeſt Captain follows next, leading the firſt Diviſion of Pikes, and brought up by his own Lieutenant. The next Diviſion of Muſketiers is led by the third Captains Lieutenant, and the Reer of the firſt grand Diviſion is brought up by the third Captain. There ought to be full 18 foot of ground betwixt each Diviſion; he that brings up a Diviſion, ought to be cleer ſix foot behinde the ſame; and he that leads, to be ſix foot before; ſo that there will be ſix foot proportion of ground betwixt them both, for the better diſtinguiſhing of their Diviſions, the Leaders and Bringers-up thereof. And where there is not room ſufficient for the marching ſo many abreſt, as they are now ordered, they muſt ſubdivide, being careful to preſerve their Diviſions, marching in greater depths, at their due diſtance of open order in rank, and order in file. For the Serjeants muſt not preſume upon any ſub-dividing to bring them down in the Reer of them that march before, and keep them intire in all their reſpective Diviſions. And it muſt be their obſervation to attend upon the Flanks, even abreſt with thoſe Leaders of Files that were taken off; that when there is ground and room enough, they more readier know where to finde them, and to lead them up again as they were at firſt. Care likewiſe muſt be had upon any ſub-dividing of the Pikes, that there be none of the Colours divided, who are in a Regimental way to march all three together, according to their firſt placing. Theſe rules and obſervations concern both grand Diviſions. Now the firſt being led away, as is before expreſt, there ought to be ſufficient ground betwixt each grand Diviſion for the leading of the Carriages; and in the firſt place there is to be conſidered, that to moſt Regiments there is allowed two Waggons, for the Baggage and Ammunition, and two Field-pieces, or great Cannon, beſides other Carriages which more concern the Victual for the Souldiers, as occaſion ſhall require: now concerning the ordering, and ſecureſt placing of all theſe upon the March, will be in the midſt of the Regiment, and to have thoſe which are ordred for their Guard, to be Fire-locks, or to have Snap-hances, for the avoiding of the danger which might happen by the Cole of the Match; and being placed where any attempt of the Enemy ſhall fall on, either to Front, Reer, or either

The Colonel.
The Captain-Lieutenant.
This Squadron contains 18 files of Muſketiers.
The Captain-Lieutenants bringer-up.

The eldeſt Captain.

This Squadron contains 21 files of Pikes.
The eldeſt Captains Lieutenant.

The third Captains Lieutenant.
This Squadron contains 18 files of Muſketiers.
Third Captain.

[*The Carriages.*]

The Major.
The Majors Lieutenant.
This Squadron contains 18 Files of Muſketiers.

The ſecond Captain.

This Squadron contains 21 files of Pikes.
The ſecond Captains Lieutenant.

The Lieutenant-Colonels Lieutenant.
This Squadron contains 18 files of Muſketiers.
The Lieutenant-Colonel.

either Flank, the Cannon may thus be eaſily drawn forth to fire upon them; and all the wood of the Carriages, with their Guard, to be ordred in the Reer, where-ever the aſſault ſhould happen, for their better ſecurity and ſafety. The Major in the next place, if he pleaſe, may lead the ſecond grand Diviſion; to which purpoſe he draws off (with the aſſiſtance of his own Lieutenant) the firſt Diviſion of Muskettiers, his Lieutenant being ſix foot behinde him, and ſo much before the Muskettiers. The next that follows, is the ſecond Body of Pikes, which is led by the ſecond Captain, and brought up by his own Lieutenant. The laſt Diviſion of Muskettiers is led by the Lieutenant-Colonels Lieutenant: and the Reer of the whole Regiment is brought up by the Lieutenant-Colonel. The Serjeants are to march upon the Flanks, attending their own men, that when they are to be reduced into Companies, they may know more readier where to finde them; and according to order they may draw them off to compleat up their Captains Companies. As for the Drums, the care thereof belongs to the Drum-Major to place, and to eaſe them timely by reliefs, to beat as many or as few as he ſhall think fit; to which purpoſe, he orders them to fall in betwixt the ſecond and third Rank of Muskettiers and Pikes of each Diviſion; but when they are all even abreſt, the Drums are placed according as you ſee them marked. The Figure for the long-March in the next place followeth.

CHAP. VII.

The firſt Exerciſe of a Regiment in the plaineſt and eaſieſt way.

THe Major finding the commodiouſneſs of the ground, may draw them up all even abreſt again, and proceed to exerciſe them in a Regimental way, conferring before-hand with the Captains, Lieutenants, Enſigns, and Serjeants, what he intends to do. Whether he will exerciſe every Maniple, or Diviſion (as is uſual in a private Company) in all their plain Motions and Firings, which may be very proper, and eaſily done, or otherwiſe proceed to more variety in every Diviſion, to give them commands as one man, either to face, double, or otherwiſe according to diſcretion. And having fully inſtructed them of all his intents and purpoſes, he muſt begin to conſider of the beſt manner for the managing of the ſame. To which end, he ſhall do well to command the firſt grand Diviſion to advance forward 12 paces clear of the ſecond, and after face them to the Front, and they will ſtand in manner as in Folio 147. After he muſt conſider how many Files of Muskettiers there are, and whether he can branch them forth into equal Diviſions ſutable to the Pikes; but finding them to ſtand but 18 of a ſide, he ſhall do well for time of his Exerciſe, to draw off eight Files of Muskettiers from the Reer, which were formerly appointed to guard the Ammunition, or Baggage, and add two to every Diviſion of Muskettiers, which will make them 20 Files of each ſide of the Pikes, and then he may thus proceed.

Command. Files, to their open order, and Ranks to cloſe forward to order in each grand Diviſion: every five Files of Muskettiers of each Diviſion cloſe to the right to order: the firſt ſix files of Pikes in each grand Diviſion cloſe to the right to order, the reſt of the Pikes cloſe every five Files to the right, to the ſame diſtance; then there will be in each grand Diviſion four Diviſions of Pikes, and eight of Muskettiers, in manner as ſet forth to your view in Folio 147.

Before the Major ſhall begin his Exerciſe, he ſhall do well to appoint unto each Diviſion, the Captains and their Enſigns, (whoſe Colours in the mean time may be ſtuck in the ground, or given to any of the File-leaders of Pikes, to hold during the time of Exerciſe) to take charge of them, to order them according unto every word of command, and the Lieutenant and Serjeants to each Diviſion of Muskettiers, that after ſilence is craved throughout the whole Regiment, the Major by ſtretching out his voice in every word of Command, the reſt as his Eccho are immediately to give it out along the whole Front, and from thence unto the Reer, and every Officer to lead his men accordingly.

The Major having ſtated all things according to the former directions, may if he pleaſe, either face, double, counter-march, or wheel, to Front, Reer, or both Flanks in every particular Diviſion; And may after fire them by way of Diviſions

drawn

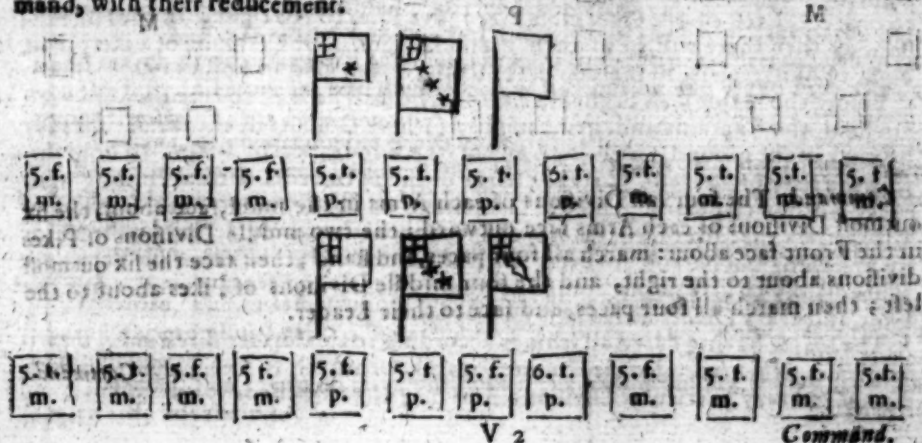
drawn off ten or twenty paces before the Front, firing them 7 or 8 times over, relieving them by other ſupplies, marching up into their ground. And may after face the Reer-diviſions about, and fire them to Front and Reer on the ſame ground they ſtand, there being ſufficient intervalls for their wheeling off in the Reer of themſelves. And after ſeveral firings in this kinde, the Pikes may charge on; but before they begin their firings, the Pikes muſt cloſe into the midſt to order, and Muſkettiers to cloſe their Pikes to open order, and every Diviſion to preſerve ſo much ground betwixt each other for their conveniencie, that after firing they may wheel off.

Now if you will fire, or skirmiſh the one with the other, then draw off the Reer, or ſecond grand Diviſion, and move them away, and draw them up in oppoſition 100 foot diſtance of ground betwixt each Front, and let the Lieutenant-Colonels Company be drawn up upon the right, and the Majors upon the left of that grand Diviſion, that it may carry ſome anſwerableneſs with that of the Colonels. The Muſkettiers having ſix foot interval of ground betwixt each other before they begin to fire, they may continue their firings of this nature, as long as they pleaſe, and the Pikes may after charge on to ſuch convenient diſtance, as that they come not within three Pikes length one of another, for avoiding doing hurt the one to the other, the Muſkettiers ſtill continuing their firing, and falling in the Reer of themſelves; and when they come within diſtance, not to preſent above knee-height, for the above-named reaſons. Now the Souldiers being almoſt tired, and all their Powder ſpent, and retreating from each other, that ſide which falls out to be ſtrongeſt, (as being the Colonels grand Diviſion or party) may beat a parley, to invite the weaker to come in to mercy, offering them all fair Quarter, provided they timely and preſently receive it, and that they will cheerfully and willingly go along with them, and never any more revolt, but be on their ſide, to fight with them upon all juſt occaſions, as ſhall be required. After which, the Lieutenant-Colonel yeilding, they may wheel about, and march into the ſame ground from whence they were firſt drawn forth, and be reduced to the ſame order and condition as they were before they began to skirmiſh. And thus much ſhall ſuffice concerning the ordinary plain way of exerciſing of Regiments: but thoſe that ſhall deſire a little more curioſity, they may obſerve ſuch Exerciſes as in the next place ſhall be ſet forth unto them.

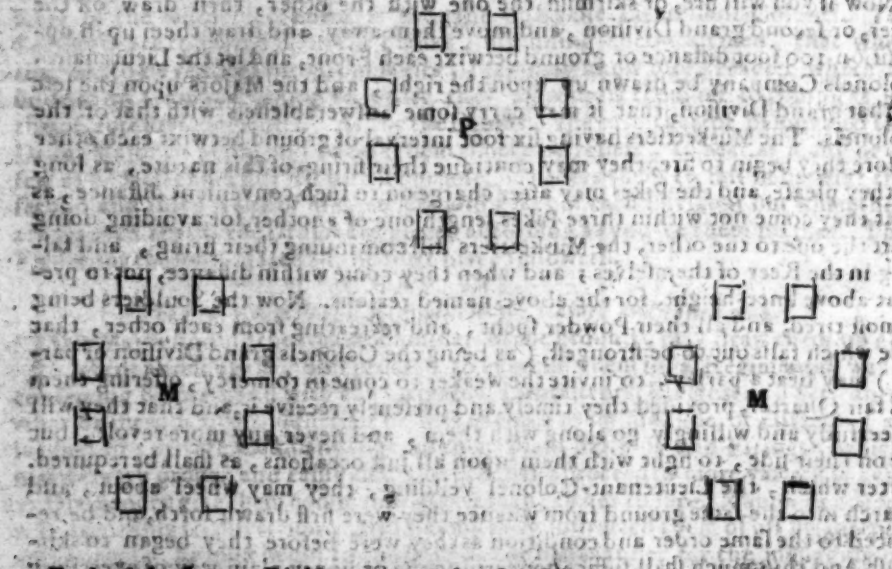
CHAP. VIII.

A ſecond way of exerciſing Regiments of the ſame number of men.

THe firſt grand Diviſion being in the Front, and clear of the ſecond 12 paces, every five Files being 28 foot of ground apart from each other, and at their diſtance of order, both in Rank and File, in their own particular diviſions, as was mention'd in Folio 146. comes in this place to be ſet forth to their view. And having paſt over ſome of the diſtances to bring them to this Station, in ſtanding in 24 Maniples, or Diviſions, the next thing that I ſhall ſhew for Exerciſe, ſhall be four ſeveral Figures of Battail, branched from thence, by proper words of Command, with their reducement.

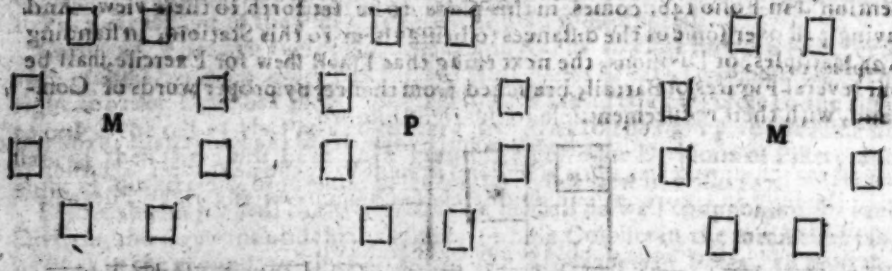


Command. Divisions of Muskettiers face outward; Pikes and Muskettiers march all twelve paces and stand; to your Leader. The two middle Divisions of Pikes and Muskettiers in the Reer next the Flanks, face about; outmost Divisions of Pikes and Muskettiers in Front and Reer, face outward; march all four paces, and stand. Again, let the outmost Divisions of Pikes and Muskettiers face about to the right, then march all three paces; then stand, and face to their Leader, it produceth the first Figure.



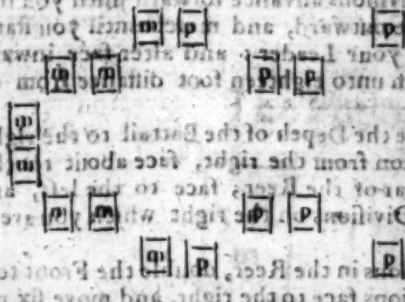
Each of the former Divisions containing five Files apiece, excepting the outmost Division of Pikes upon the right in Front and Reer, and they contain six Files in each of them.

Command. Divisions of Muskettiers face outward; Pikes face about to the right; march all, until the Pikes range even with the Reer; then face to their Leader, occasioneth the next.

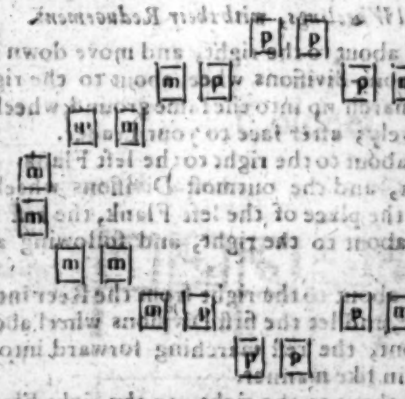


Command. The four last Divisions of each Arms in the midst, face about; the six outmost Divisions of each Arms face outward; the two middle Divisions of Pikes in the Front face about: march all four paces, and stand; then face the six outmost divisions about to the right, and the four middle Divisions of Pikes about to the left; then march all four paces, and face to their Leader.

Command.



Command. The two next Divisions of Pikes in the midst from the Reer, face about; middle Divisions of Pikes move forward six foot before the Front and Reer; to your Leader.



Reducement. The twelve last Divisions face about; then let every Division march forward, until they range even abreast with the Front and Reer, and face to their Leader; then let the Reer-divisions move forward within eighteen foot of the Front-divisions, and they will be in two grand Divisions, the one in the Reer of the other, as at first when they began their facings.

Having past over part of the Distances and Facings, the next which in order falls to be handled is *Doublings*; and having by command gained eighteen foot distance betwixt every five Files, if in their former motions they should chance to lose it, you may then proceed to *Doublings* by way of Divisions, as shall be in the next place set down.

CHAP. IX.

Doublings belonging to a Regiment.

Command. Divisions, double to the right File-wise.

Direction. Every even Division from the Front face to the right, and march down clear until you stand straight with the next Interval; then face to the left, and move in, and double those Divisions on the right File-wise; to your Leader.

Command. Divisions double to the right Rankwise.

Direction. Every even Division from the Front face to the right, and march forward six paces; then face to the Front, and move forward, and double your Divisions to the right.

Command. Divisions double the Length of the Battail to the right and left outward.

Direction. The 12 last Divisions face outward, and march clear of the standing part; face to your Leader; move up all even abreast, and double according to command.

Command. The 12 inmost Divisions double the six outmost to the right and left outward, advancing.

Direction.

Direction. The 12 middle Divisions advance forward until you be six foot clear of the standing part; then face outward, and march until you stand straight before the six outmost; face to your Leader: and after face inward, and move forward, until they stand again unto eighteen foot distance from each other; to your Leader.

Command. Divisions, double the Depth of the Battail to the right.

Direction. Every even Division from the right, face about to the right, and move down eighteen foot clear of the Reer; face to the left, and move until you stand straight with those Divisions on the right which you are to double; to your Leader.

Command. The 12 last Divisions in the Reer, double the Front to the right.

Direction. The 12 last Divisions face to the right, and move six paces; then face to the left; march forward, and double the Front to the right, and they will be reduced.

CHAP. X.

Four several Wheelings, with their Reducement.

Command. DIvisions wheel about to the right, and move down into the Reer.

Direction. Front-divisions wheel about to the right, and move down into the Reer; the rest march up into the same ground, wheeling to the right hand, and following successively; after face to your Leader.

Command. Divisions wheel about to the right to the left Flank.

Direction. Face to the right, and the outmost Divisions wheel about to the right, and march away unto the place of the left Flank, the rest moving up into the same ground, wheeling about to the right, and following accordingly; to your Leader.

Command. Divisions wheel about to the right from the Reer into the Front.

Direction. Face to the Reer, and let the first Divisions wheel about to the right, and move up into the Front, the rest marching forward into their ground, wheeling off, and following in like manner.

Command. Divisions wheel about to the right, to the right Flank.

Direction. Face all to the left, and let the outmost Divisions wheel about to the right, and move forward to the right Flank, the rest marching up into their ground, following after in the same kind, reduceth them.

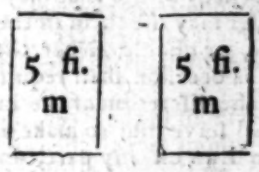
CHAP. XI.

Countermarches not fit to be used in the Exercising of Regiments.

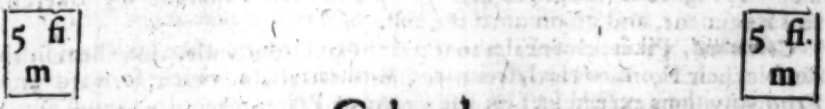
IT might be expected after Doublings, that I should shew some kinds of Countermarches amongst the Military Motions, in the exercise of a Regiment; but being of very little use or practise amongst Commanders in these times, especially in such great Bodies; and for my own part, I fancy them not, therefore have passed them over, and pitche upon such wheelings, which by some are accounted Countermarches. Whose judgements my desire is better to inform by these several reasons following, wherein, and in what kind they differ from them. As thus: by these wheelings, they keep their distance in Rank and File unto Order, and wheeling entire unto any hand down to the Reer, cannot be performed but by gaining in the Motion before the Front, and unto all places as they move, so much ground as is the Length of their particular Divisions, and in the execution hereof, they still preserve the honour of the right and left-hand-file-leaders, and all others as are concerned in their particular Divisions, unto any accidental Front which they shall be brought unto. Now concerning Countermarches, they are to be performed either by single Files, Ranks, Half-files, or Half-ranks, and at their distance of Open Order, their words of Command having relation to all these particulars. Their Countermarching of Files to the Reer gaineth no ground before the Front in the Motion, but only the room of one particular File upon the right; it preserveth not the honour of the right and left-hand-file-leader at one time by any one word of Command

unto

The Forlorn.



The third Captain. Captain-Lieutenant.

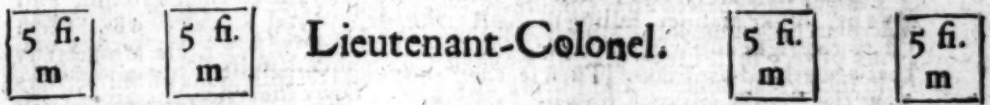


Colonel.

The third Captains Lieutenant. The Captain-Lieutenants Bringer-up.

This Squadron contains 42 files of Pikes.

The Lieutenant-Colonels Lieutenant. Second Captains Lieutenant. Eldeſt Captains Lieutenant. The Majors Lieutenant.



Lieutenant-Colonel.

Reſerves.

unto any of their Motions to ſuch accidental Fronts they ſhall make, but ever loſeth it to ſome, and giveth it to others. And therefore it may appear cleerly unto any ingenious capacity, that the former Wheelings cannot be accounted, or given in their Motions in that kinde to the Souldiers for Counter-marches, but by ſuch terms as in their place are ſet down. In the next place, I ſhall ſpeak ſomething of the great benefit or uſe that may be made of theſe ſorts of Wheelings: as firſt, a Commander may uſe them in the Motions of Doublings to Front, Reer, right-flank, or left, or double either the length or depth of the Battail unto all needful places, as occaſion ſhall require; which I ſhall forbear to ſet down, but leave them to the diſcretion of the ingenious Souldiers practiſe, when time and opportunity ſhall ſerve him to make uſe of them. In the next place, they are very neceſſary to draw off any part, and to bring them unto ſuch needful places for Service, as are in eminent danger. Therefore paſſing over for preſent what might be more ſpoken of in this kinde, I come in the next place to ſhew one Figure of Battail to fire upon; and then conclude my Exerciſe upon this Regiment, and go on unto the reſt.

Command. Pikes, cloſe Files to the right to Order; then let them in the Reer double their Front to the left intire: Muſkettiers, advance forward until your Front-diviſions exceed ſix foot the Front of Pikes; the two inmoſt Diviſions of Muſkettiers in the Front, move forward 20 paces, and cloſe inward to open Order; the two inmoſt Diviſions of Muſkettiers in the Reer, face about, and move down ſix paces, and cloſe inward to open Order; to your Leader: Muſkettiers upon the Flanks, cloſe to the Body of Pikes to open Order: Middle-diviſions of Muſkettiers in the Reer by each Flank, face about; Middle-diviſions of Muſkettiers by each Flank, move forward ſix foot cleer of the ſtanding part; face to your Leader, and it will ſet forth the Figure, as it ſtands in *Folio* 151.

CHAP. XII.

Several Firings to be performed upon the former Figure, and how to be managed by the ſeveral Officers.

THe Regiment being drawn up into the former Figure, they may proceed to Firings upon it; firſt let the Forlorns fire five or ſix times over, being commanded by the eldeſt Captains Lieutenant, who is to be aſſiſted by a couple of able Serjeants; after let him wheel them off to the right and left, and bring them down in the Reer of the Pikes. Then let the ſecond Captains Lieutenant, being aſſiſted by two Serjeants, lead up the reſerves by the outſide of the Pikes, at ſuch time when the Forlorns begin to come off, for the better ſecuring of them from danger upon their retreat; then let them move forward to their ground, and give fire in like manner, falling in the Reer of themſelves, and after wheel them off to the right and left, and bring them down in the Reer of thoſe Muſkettiers that are behind the Pikes. Then let the Front and Reer-diviſions of Muſkettiers next the Flanks advance forward 12 paces; the Muſkettiers upon the right to be led away by the Captain-Lieutenant, and thoſe upon the left by the third Captain, being aſſiſted by four Serjeants apiece; let them fire the firſt Diviſions ſome ſix or eight times over, falling in the Reer of themſelves; then wheel them off to the right and left into the ground of thoſe Diviſions that follow them; and facing again to their Front; then let the Reer-diviſions advance forward into their places, and give fire in like manner to the former: which being ended, let thoſe four diviſions be led down into their firſt places. Then let the next eight Diviſions by the Pikes advance forward, until they be cleer of the ſtanding part; thoſe four Diviſions upon the right, are to be led away by the Majors Lieutenant, and the Captain-Lieutenants Bringer-up; and thoſe four Diviſions upon the left, by the Lieutenant-Colonels Lieutenant, and the third Captains Lieutenant, aſſiſted by 12 Serjeants; then let them fire ſome half a ſcore times, the Front-diviſions falling in the Reer of themſelves; after wheeling off to the right and left into the ground of their Reer-diviſions, they then moving up into their places, may fire after the ſame manner; and having ended, they may be led down all again into their firſt places.

Then

Then Command the first Divisions of Musketiers to face about to the right, and let them and the two last Divisions move forward, and range even abrest with those that stand before them, and after face all to the Front; then let the Musketiers face outward, and move 12 paces, and after face again to the Front; then move up those divisions that were the Forlorn-hope, to the right and left into the Front, unto their first places; and those that were the Reserves up even abrest with the Reer, from whence they were taken, after let them fire in, and even Front altogether, some half a score times over, and fall in the Reer of themselves; then let the Colonels eldest and second Captains move forward the Pikes, and charge on if they please, the Colours falling in the second Rank, being furled up; and after let all order their Arms, and reduce them into Companies again.

Reducement. Left-half-ranks of Pikes, face about, and move down until you range even with the Reer-divisions of Musketiers; face to your Leader: Right-half-ranks of Pikes, advance forward, and range even abrest with the Front-divisions of Musketiers; Files, close to the left to Order of each grand Division; then they will stand in two grand Divisions as at first, the one in the Reer of the other: then draw up the second grand Division, provided there be room upon the left of the first. Then let a Serjeant of each particular Company draw off those thirteen Files, which before were taken off to ballance the Divisions into equal number, and were appointed for the guard of the Ammunition, or Baggage, and bring them to joyn with their own Arms, where their Captains Companies stands. Which being done, let every Captain draw off his own men, being assisted by his Lieutenants and Serjeants, and compleating them up into a Body as at first; his Pikes to be flanked with Musketiers, they may after march away in single Companies after such manner, unto their several Quarters, as shall be appointed to them by the Major. And here I shall conclude concerning a Regiment of six Companies.

CHAP. XIII.

The manner of drawing up a Regiment, consisting of seven Companies, conteining in the four Captains, twelve Files of Musketiers, and six of Pikes, in each of their particular Companies, and in the three Field-Officers, sixteen Files apiece of Musketiers, and eight of Pikes, which amounts to the number of 864 men.

IT hath been my observation in the City of *London*, and the Suburbs thereof, there being eighteen Regiments, nine of the Trained Bands, and nine of the Auxiliaries, that their Regiments in some have but six Companies; others, and that for the most part seven; and again in some, and but a few to have eight Companies. I shall therefore for the better satisfaction of such as remain unskill'd herein, go through them all, partly to shew the practise of this our City in their several drawings up, with the reasons to confirm the same. And having passed over as much as is convenient, to satisfie any ingenious Souldier concerning the drawing up of six Companies in a Regimental-way, with the confirmation and reasons of every particular Officer, as he there stands, it may in many things give full light to this that follows of seven Companies. Yet nevertheless, for more fuller satisfaction herein, I shall shew the true manner hereof, that I may not be wanting to any Souldiers benefit that he shall receive thereby. Where note, for better Order herein, that I have pitcht upon a particular number of men, although it may many times fall out so, that the Captains Companies, and the Field-Officers cannot be so full as I have here set down. Or again, it may chance to fall out (as in our Trained Bands of *London*) that they be a great deal fuller, as sometimes they are; for I have led a particular Company my self upon a general day, being drawn into the Filed consisting of above 300 men. Yet nevertheless, whether the Companies be great or small, observe this general Rule; make two grand Divisions, and ballance their number equal in both Arms, and make no more Sub-divisions then what you have Captains to lead, and Lieutenants to bring up; and let the Serjeants march by the Flanks, and

not presume either to lead, or bring up any divisions, being conceived by most to be very improper. And again, if you fight the Regiment, let your Muskettiers as neer as you can be equal alike in their Sub-divisions, as they may most conveniently fall out, whether four, five, or six abreast, it makes no great matter, always leaving in time of fight, between such numbers of Files, six foot of ground interval, for to wheel off their Ranks after they have fired.

Now, suppose the whole Regiment were marching to their general place of Randezvous; the Major being there beforehand, attending the Companies coming in, he Orders to the Colonels Company the most convenient place for their drawing up; and next to him, the fourth Captains Company upon the left; and next to him, the third Captain; and after him, the eldest or first Captain, which makes the first grand Division. In the next place, he orders the Lieutenant-Colonels Company to be on the left of the whole Regiment, standing in even Front with the Colonel; upon the right of him, the second Captain is placed, and after him the Majors own Company, which make up the second grand Division.

Having thus far proceeded, let the Major command the Pikes and Colours to advance forward ten paces, before the Front of Muskettiers; then let him close the Pikes of the first four Companies to the right to Order, and the Pikes of the last to the left to Order, and the like of the Muskettiers in the Reer to those hands, to the same distance; then they will stand in four Divisions; two of Pikes in the Front, and two of Muskettiers in the Reer. In the next place, let him count how many Files of Pikes there are in each Division, and he will finde in the Colonels Divisions 26 Files, and in the Lieutenant-Colonels but twenty two. To make these even, he must take off one File apiece from the youngest Captains, and bring them into the midst of the Lieutenant-Colonels Division; and then he will make them equal, there being in each grand Division 24 Files of Pikes. The Pikes being made thus equal, let him move down into the Reer, and examine the Muskettiers; where upon the right he will finde 52 Files, and upon the left but 44; to make these even in number, he must take off one File apiece from the four Companies of the first grand Division, and lead them away up into the midst of the second; and then there will be in each grand Division of Muskettiers 48 Files apiece. In the next place, let him face them to the right and left outward, and move them to such convenient distance, as he may after divide his Muskettiers into four Divisions to move up, and flank the Pikes.

This being performed, he ought appoint unto every Captain and Lieutenant his place where to lead, and where to bring up, and what men upon all occasions they are to fight. To which purpose, there being in the first grand Division four Captains, there must be four places to lead, and four to bring up; and therefore having their four Colours upon the long March, that Body of Pikes may be divided into two Divisions, and to march with two Colours in the first Division of Pikes, which are to be led by the eldest Captain, and brought up by the Captain-Lieutenants Bringer-up. The second Division of Pikes is to be led by the fourth Captain, and to be brought up by the eldest Captain-Lieutenant. The Reer-guard of Muskettiers in this grand Division, is to be led by the third Captain, and to be brought up by his Lieutenant; who upon the long March, his Captain if he pleaseth, may exchange places, being more honour to him to be there to bring up, then to lead that Division, as hath been formerly expresst. As concerning the Captain-Lieutenant, his place is to be fixed according as in the Figure to lead the first Division of Muskettiers, and to be brought up by the fourth Captains Lieutenant: but at such time when they are drawn up all abreast, they are to take their places as at first fixed, both in their leading and bringing-up, as shall be set forth in the following Figure, with all their several places appointed thereunto. As concerning all the rest, they are placed in manner as was shewed in my discourse of a Regiment consisting of six Companies.

But here it may be objected, that in the first grand Division I have placed the Colonel, eldest Captain, third and fourth, and by casting up their number of dignity, we finde it to amount unto 18; and in the second grand Division, the

the Lieutenant-Colonel, Major and second Captain, whose number amounts but to ten. Here we finde (say they) a great deal of difference and alteration, your intentions principally tending to make them equal in dignity; for certainly, where the greater number is, there is the lesser dignity; and therefore a wrong unto that part where ever it so falls out.

To which I answer, Where there is no just exceptions to be made to the contrary, the former Rule ought ever to be preserved in the keeping an equal ballance of the number of dignity; but herein it doth not: For the Colonel ought always to have placed in his Division the eldest Captain, who is to lead his Colours, and the first Body of Pikes, which is the first place of honour among the Captains: And in the second place, the Majors Company is always drawn up upon the outmost part, on the right of the Lieutenant-Colonels grand Division, to carry an equal proportion of number, they being the second and third worth unto that of the first or fourth, as is in the Colonels. In the next place, the second Captains turn comes to be regarded, who by the same Rule, as the eldest Captain hyes claim to carry the first honour, by leading the first Body of Pikes, and the Colonels Colours; so the second Captain cannot expect any other, but to be placed to lead the second Body of Pikes, & the Lieutenant-Colonels Colours. Now there being an odd Captain; he must be either placed upon the right or left; he is therefore thought in discretion to be rather placed with the Colonel in his Division, that his Colours may there flie, marching four together, being far more honourable and graceful then that of three, as in the Lieutenant-Colonels; and therefore where there is an honour in that kinde which cannot be divided, it is very fit and requisite to place and fix it with him that is the Commander in chief. As for number of men, both Divisions are equal alike; and therefore, I conceive, what hath been spoken may take off all objections of this nature.

And now according to my promise, I shall set forth the manner of the standing of seven Companies in a Regimental way, with all the several places of honour appriozed forth unto them, either marching, or standing all even abreast: If they be upon the long march, they are to observe that manner set down in six Companies, onely to minde that alteration before expressed: the Figure of their drawing up, and the Officers stated in their proper places, follows in Folio 156.

From which Figure I shall draw up another, placing the Souldiers in Battalia, which may be useful for them to fight upon.

Command. Pikes in both Divisions, face inward, inmost Divisions of Musketiers face outward, march, and interchange ground with other; face to your Leader. The four inmost Files of Musketiers next the Pikes, face about, and march six foot cleer from the Pikes, and stand; then close their Files to the right and left to Order, in their own particular divisions; then face inward, and march all together, until they stand six foot cleer of each other; face to your Leader. The next five Files of Musketiers in each side of Pikes, advance 18 foot before the Front; then close their Files into the midst to Order, and Ranks forward to Order; Pikes, close your Ranks forward to Order, and Files into the midst to Order: every five Files of Musketiers close inward to Order, and Ranks forward to Order; then face to the Pikes, and march forward, being betwixt every five Files of Musketiers six foot of ground distance each from other, and the same distance from the Body of Pikes; face all to your Leader. The 12 outmost Files of Pikes and Musketiers, advance forward six foot cleer of the standing part; then move forward the three outmost divisions of Musketiers 12 paces; then face them inward, and move them until they stand streight before the five remaining divisions; face all to your Leader. The middle-division of Musketiers of those three taken off before from each Flank, move forward six foot cleer of the standing part; the three middlemost divisions of the five remaining upon each Flank, move up until you stand six foot short of the divisions which are before you; the two outmost divisions of the last three that moved, face outward, and march six foot cleer of the former divisions between them: The two remaining divisions by the outside

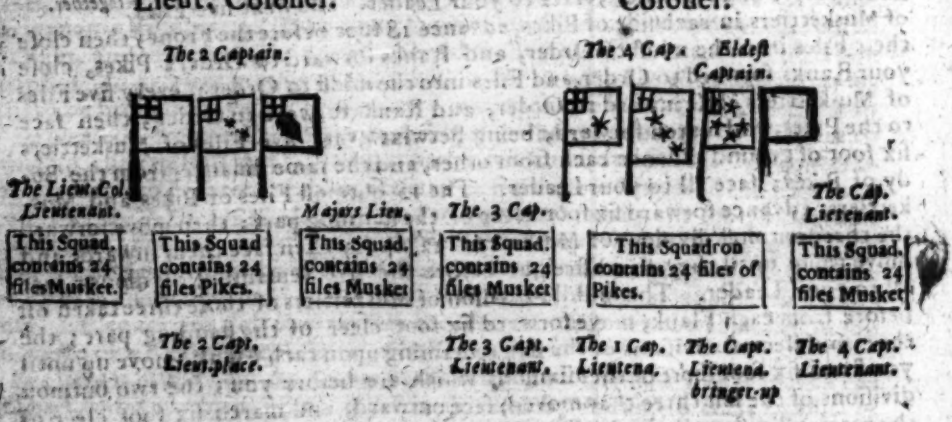
Let them be at open Order in their Ranks and Files, and the two grand Divisions standing in one even Front together.

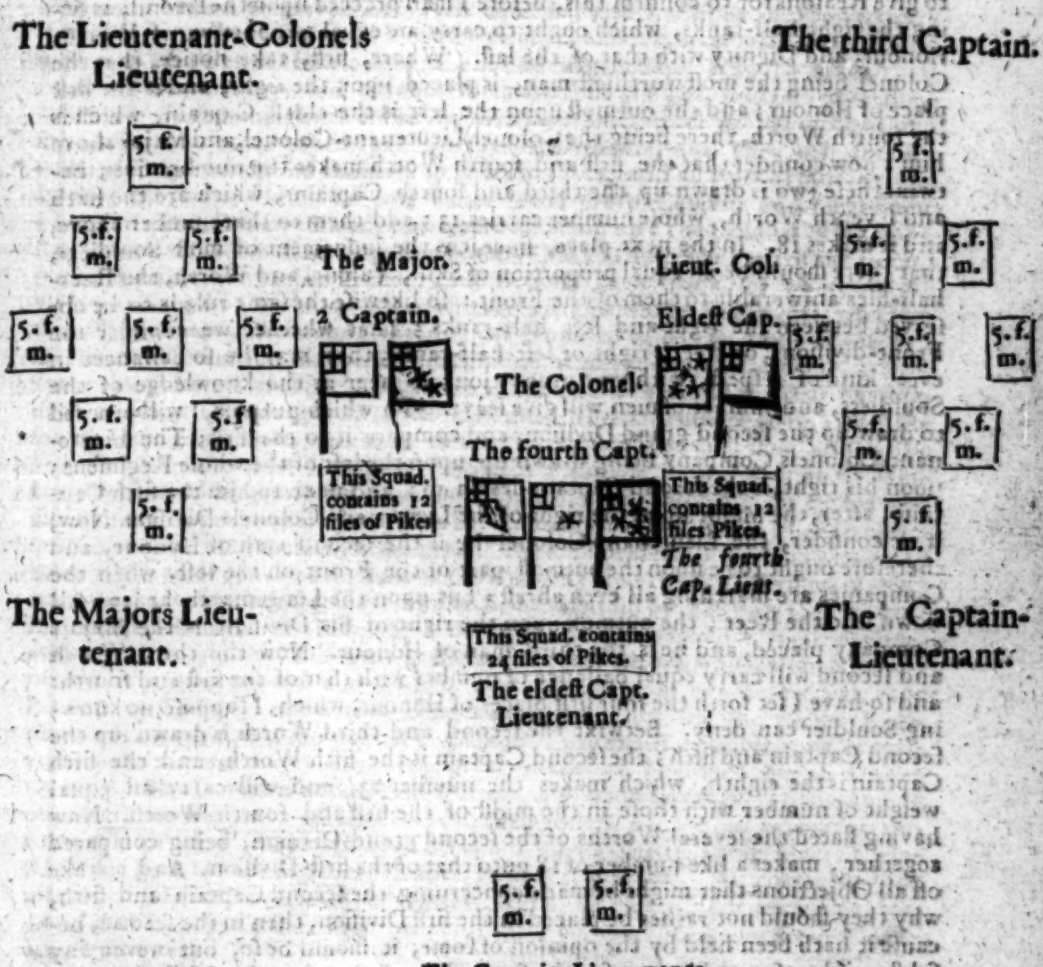
of Pikes move inward, until you ſtand ſtreight in the Reer with the two Front-diviſions, facing all to their Leader, they will ſtand as is ſet forth unto your view in Folio 156.

Notwithſtanding the former directions of drawing forth the Figure, make this alteration; wheel off the firſt two diviſions of Muſketriers before the Pikes, and place them ſix foot behind the Reer of thoſe upon the Flanks, and before you reduce them, carry them into their firſt places.

In this Figure you have Forlorns, aptly ſtanding to the Wings and main Body of Pikes, with Reſerves to them all, ſo that I ſhall not need to trouble my ſelf ſo to deſcribe what firings might be here performed upon the ſame, they lying ſo apparent to the view; the diviſions being cleer each of other, any ingenious Commander may fire them according unto his own beſt diſcretion, continuing the ſame as long as he ſhall think fitting; and therefore paſſing it by, and leaving it to their own liberty, I come in the next place to reduce them again into private Companies.

Reducement. Pikes of the main Body, advance forward, and range even abreſt with the Pikes before you; the two laſt diviſions of Muſketriers in the Reer move up, and Flank the Pikes; the two diviſions of Muſketriers before the Front, face about, and move down upon the right and left of the other two diviſions of Muſketriers; to your Leader. The two laſt diviſions of Muſketriers in the Reer of the Flanks, advance forward to the right and left, and range even abreſt on the outſide of thoſe three diviſions that ſtands before you: Single diviſions of Muſketriers in the Front of each Wing, face about, and move down even abreſt with the Reer of the next diviſions. The eight diviſions of Muſketriers upon each Wing, face about; the five firſt Diviſions move down, and range even abreſt with the Reer; the three laſt move to the right and left outward, until you be cleer of the reſt; face to the Reer, and move down in like manner, and Rank even with the reſt; after face all to the Front, and they will all ſtand in one even Front. Next command the Pikes to face outward, and the five inmoſt diviſions of Muſketriers in each Flank, face inward; then march and interchange ground each with other, and face to their Leader; they will ſtand again in two grand Diviſions all even abreſt in the Front. In the next place, let thoſe ſix Files be taken off by the Serjeants of their own Companies from the two grand Diviſions, and be brought into their firſt places. After the Major may give order to every Captain to draw off his men, and put them into Companies again, which is eaſily done; after the Regiment may be ordered to march home in ſingle Companies, either by ſucceſſion or dignity, which he pleaſeth. And here I ſhall conclude concerning a Regiment of ſeveral Companies.




The Lieutenant-Colonels Lieutenant.
The third Captain.
5. f. m.
5. f. m.
5. f. m.
The Major.
Lieut. Col.
5. f. m.
5. f. m.
5. f. m.
2 Captain.
Eldest Cap.
5. f. m.
5. f. m.
5. f. m.
5. f. m.
5. f. m.
The Colonel.
5. f. m.
5. f. m.
5. f. m.
5. f. m.
The fourth Capt.
This Squad. contains 12 files of Pikes
This Squad. contains 12 files Pikes.
5. f. m.
The fourth Cap. Lieut.
The Majors Lieutenant.
The Captain-Lieutenant.
This Squad. contains 24 files of Pikes.
The eldest Capt. Lieutenant.
5. f. m.
5. f. m.
The Captain-Lieutenants Bringer-up

CHAP. XIV.

The manner of drawing up and placing the Officers of a Regiment consisting of eight Companies, having in it a Colonel, a Lieutenant-Colonel, a Major, and five Captains: their number of men in each Company, being equal with the former Regiment, they amount unto 972 men.

IT concerns a Major (provided he have room enough) to draw up every Company even abreſt, and to give unto every Captain his due place of honour; after which, he may proceed to order them in a regimental way. Wherefore, briefly thus; obſerve the manner of the Dignity of every Captain, how they ought to be placed, firſt the Colonels Company being drawn up in its convenient place; next to him upon the left ſtands the third Captain; and next to him the fourth; and the next that follows is the eldeſt: theſe four Captains being drawn up after this manner, makes the firſt grand Diviſion; and therefore I ſhall endeavour to give Reaſons for to confirm this, before I ſhall proceed upon the ſecond, as being the right half-ranks, which ought to carry an equal proportion of Worth, Honour, and Dignity with that of the laſt. Where, firſt, take notice, that the Colonel being the moſt worthieſt man, is placed upon the right, and is the firſt place of Honour; and the outmoſt upon the left is the eldeſt Captain, which is the fourth Worth, there being the Colonel, Lieutenant-Colonel, and Major above him; now conſider that the firſt and fourth Worth makes the number five; betwixt theſe two is drawn up the third and fourth Captains, which are the ſixth and ſeventh Worth, whoſe number carries 13; add them to that number above, and it makes 18. In the next place, ſince it is the judgement of moſt Souldiers, that there ſhould be an equal proportion of Skill, Valour, and Worth, the Reer-half-files anſwerable to them of the Front: ſo likewiſe the ſame rule is to be obſerved between the righe and left half-ranks; That whether we conſider the Front-diviſions, or Reer, right or left half-ranks, they may be ſo ballanced in every kind of reſpect, with true proportion; ſo neer as the knowledge of the Souldiers, and number of men will give leave. To which purpoſe, I will proceed to draw up the ſecond grand Diviſion, and compare it to the firſt; The Lieutenant-Colonels Company being drawn up upon the left of the whole Regiment; upon his right, is the ſecond Captain drawn up; and next to him the fifth Captain; after, the Major upon the right of the Lieutenant-Colonels Diviſion. Now, if we conſider, the Lieutenant-Colonel he is the ſecond man of Honour, and therefore ought to be upon the outmoſt part of the Front on the left, when the Companies are marching all even abreſt; but upon the Long-march he is to fall down into the Reer; the outmoſt upon the right of his Diviſion is the Majors Company placed, and he is the third man of Honour. Now the third Worth and ſecond will carry equal ballance of number with that of the firſt and fourth: and ſo have I ſet forth the four firſt places of Honour, which, I ſuppoſe, no knowing Souldier can deny. Betwixt the ſecond and third Worth is drawn up the ſecond Captain and fifth; the ſecond Captain is the fifth Worth, and the fifth Captain is the eighth, which makes the number 13, and will carry an equal weight of number with thoſe in the midſt of the firſt and fourth Worth. Now having ſtated the ſeveral Worths of the ſecond grand Diviſion, being compared together, makes a like number of 18 unto that of the firſt Diviſion. And to take off all Objections that might be made concerning the ſecond Captain and fifth, why they ſhould not rather be placed in the firſt Diviſion, then in the ſecond, becauſe it hath been held by the opinion of ſome, it ſhould be ſo, but never any ſubſtantial reaſon to be given for the ſame: Therefore, unto this I ſhall ſay, that they ought to be there where I have placed them, in reſpect of what I have formerly ſaid, that as it is the firſt place of Honour amongſt the Captains to lead the firſt Body of Pikes, where the Colonels Colours does flie, and to make them of the ſecond Diviſion equal in number with the firſt; the youngeſt Captain, which is the eighth Worth, is brought in, and joyned to the ſecond Captain, who is the fifth, and therefore a File or a Rank ought to be ſet forth in Dignity after this manner, in reſpect

2585|4761.
18 18

there

there is no truer ſtating the Dignity of a ſingle File or Rank, then that which ſhall conform to greater Bodies, as that of Regiments. And thus much briefly ſhall ſuffice to be ſpoken concerning the ſecond grand Diviſion, for the placing the ſecond and fifth Captains betwixt the Lieutenant-Colonel and the Majors, in reſpect the ſecond Captain ſtands very aptly there to receive his proper place, and the youngeſt Captain is brought in to ballance their Dignities unto that of the firſt.

In the next place, I ſhall ſhew how they ought to be drawn up in a Regimental way: bring all even abreſt as before, command Muſkettiers to face about, and to march down 12 foot clear of the Reer, then face to the Front, after cloſe Files outward to Order of each Arms, then ſubdivide each Diviſion of Muſkettiers, and move them up to flank each Body of Pikes. And having accounted and caſt up the number of Files of each Arms in each grand Diviſion, you will finde the Colonels Diviſion to have in it 26 Files of Pikes, and 52 Files of Muſkettiers; next the Lieutenant-Colonels Diviſion being examined, you will finde that to have in it 28 Files of Pikes, and 56 Files of Muſkettiers. Now to make theſe equal in number, there muſt be taken forth one File of Pikes, and two of Muſkettiers from the ſecond grand Diviſion, and place one apiece in the midſt of the firſt Diviſion, in every one of their particular Diviſions, and they will contain equal alike in each grand Diviſion 27 Files of Pikes, and 54 Files of Muſkettiers. In the next place, the Major may aſſign unto every Captain and Lieutenant where his place ſhall be to lead, and where to bring up; the Colonel being upon the head of his Diviſion, and the Lieutenant-Colonel upon the head of the ſecond grand Diviſion, the Major in the Front betwixt them both, or where elſe he pleaſeth, being an Officer always to act through the whole Regiment. And in the firſt place he appoints the Captain-Lieutenant to be on the head of the firſt Diviſion of Muſkettiers, and to be brought up with the fourth Captains Lieutenant; next he orders the eldeſt Captain to be on the head of the firſt Diviſion of Pikes, and to be brought up by the Captain-Lieutenants Bringer-up; and the fourth Captain to be on the head of the ſecond diviſion of Pikes, and to be brought up by the eldeſt Captains Lieutenant; and the ſecond diviſion of Muſkettiers he appoints unto the third Captain, and to be brought up by his own Lieutenant; and upon the Long-march, let him and his Captain change places until ſuch time they ſhall draw up again. After he orders his own Lieutenant to be on the head of the third diviſion of Muſkettiers; and the third diviſion of Pikes he appoints to the fifth Captain, and to be brought up by his own Lieutenant; the fourth Diviſion of Pikes is ordered to be the ſecond Captains place, and brought up by his own Lieutenant; the Lieutenant-Colonels Lieutenant is appointed to the fourth and laſt diviſion of Muſkettiers, the Lieutenant-Colonel upon the Long-march bringing up the whole Regiment. It might be ſuppoſed the Captain-Lieutenant, Lieutenant-Colonels and Majors Lieutenants have too great places of Honour: but to anſwer them all, their Captains being Field-Officers, and upon ſeveral occaſions moving off, their Lieutenants do officiate there in their rooms, and are but as aſſiſtants unto them; for likewiſe upon ſeveral occaſions they come to thoſe places themſelves to lead, marching there before their Lieutenants. As concerning the placing of all the reſt of the other Officers, they lie clearly, for as much as formerly hath been ſpoken in their proper places, without (as I conceive) the exceptions of any.

Secondly, if on the Long-march the Colonel draws off the firſt Diviſion of Muſkettiers, and leads them, marching ſome 12 foot before his Captain-Lieutenant; and that diviſion is brought up by the fourth Captains Lieutenant, the Colours marching two and two upon every diviſion, whereof the firſt is drawn off and led by the firſt Captain, and brought up by the Captain-Lieutenants Bringer-up; the next diviſion of Pikes falling in the Reer of the firſt, and led by the fourth Captain, and brought up by the firſt Captains Lieutenant; the ſecond diviſion of Muſkettiers is led by the third Captains Lieutenant, and brought up by his

his own Captain; the fourth or firſt diviſion of Muſkettiers in the ſecond grand Diviſion is led by the Major, when he pleaſeth, ſome 12 foot before his own Lieutenant; and the third Diviſion of Pikes is led by the fifth Captain, and brought up by his own Lieutenant; the fourth and laſt diviſion of Pikes is led by the ſecond Captain, and brought up by his own Lieutenant; the fourth and laſt Diviſion of Muſkettiers is led by the Lieutenant-Colonels Lieutenant, the Reer of the whole Regiment being brought up by the Lieutenant-Colonel. Thus every Diviſion is to march by ſucceſſion, the one in the Reer of another, keeping eighteen foot diſtance betwixt every Diviſion, until they ſhall have room to march all even abreſt, and then with very little alteration with the third Captain, changing places, with his own Lieutenant, they are all to take their places again, as at firſt.

Having now ſet forth the true Dignity of every Captains and Lieutenants place, what men they ſhall take charge on to fight, where to lead, and where to bring up; I ſhall ſpare the Figure in reſpect I ſhall ſhew (with very little alteration) the manner of drawing up and marching of divers Regiments that were under the command of the late Earl of *Eſſex*.

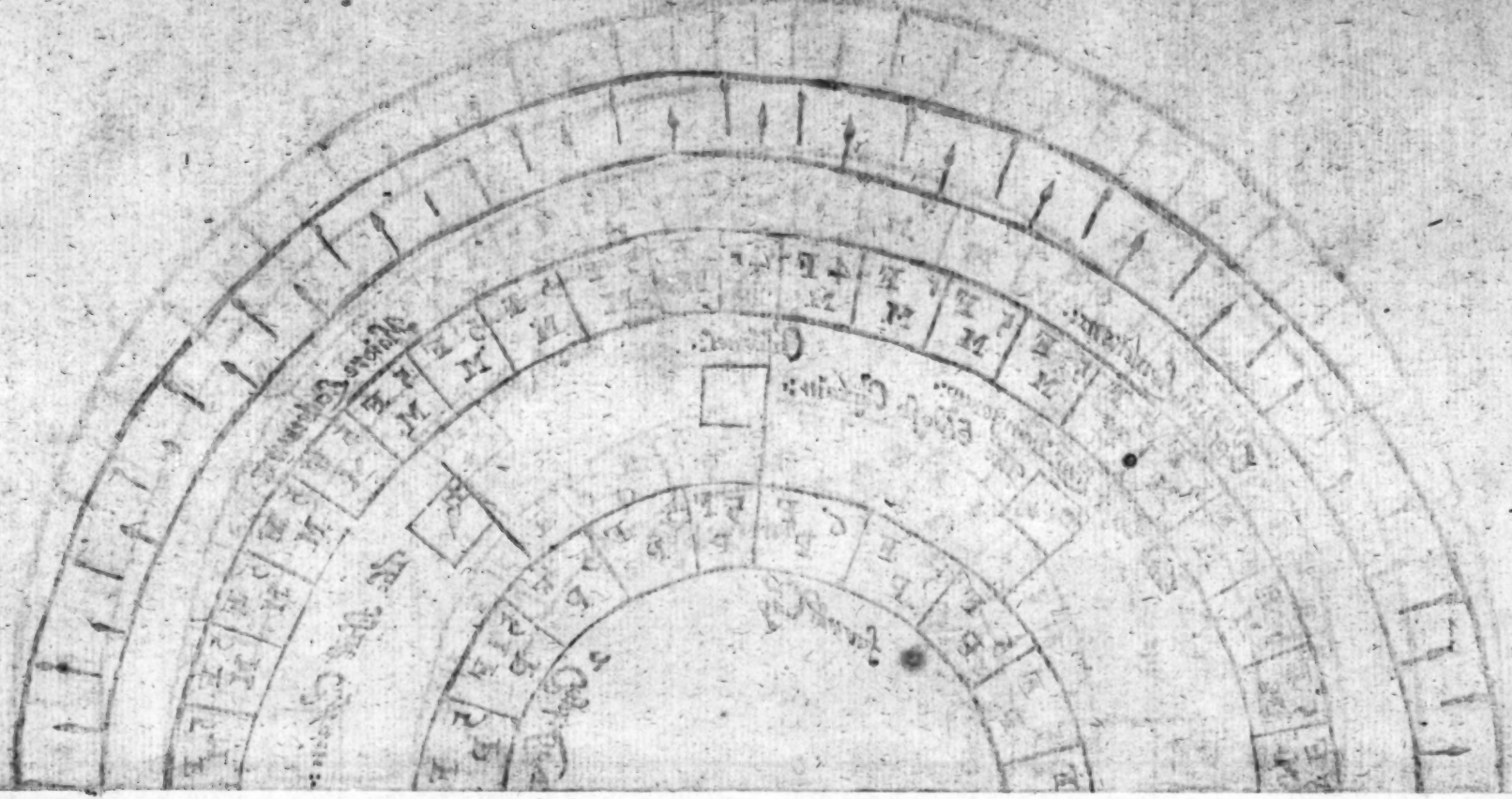
The firſt grand Diviſion in reſpect of every Officer and place, is to be ordered as the former; only in the ſecond, there will be this ſmall alteration, the Lieutenant-Colonels Company and the Majors are to enterchange places, the reſt are to remain as they were, only with this alteration following; the Lieutenant-Colonels Lieutenant is to lead the firſt Diviſion of Muſkettiers, until ſuch time that his Lieutenant Colonel ſhall come unto that place; and then he is to bring up that Diviſion being near at hand, that if his Lieutenant-Colonel ſhould upon ſome juſt occaſions be called off, he may immediatly move up, and lead there in his abſence. For upon the Long-march, as the Colonel leads the firſt grand Diviſion, ſo it is conceived by ſome, (they marching in two grand Diviſions ſome twenty paces diſtante from each other in manner of two regimental Marchings) that the Lieutenant-Colonel ought to lead the ſecond. Next, let the Firſt Diviſion of Pikes be led by the ſecond Captain, and to be brought up by the fifth Captains Lieutenant; and the ſecond Diviſion of Pikes to be led by the fifth Captain, and brought up by the ſecond Captains Lieutenant; the laſt Diviſion of Muſkettiers to be led by the Majors Lieutenant, and the Reer of the ſecond grant Diviſion being left for the Major to bring up, at ſuch time as with conveniency he may be ſpared. Therefore, to march thus, it being a very good way, and with very little alteration to be made, I was unwilling to paſs it by, leaving it to the diſcretion of every ingenious Souldier, to make uſe of which way he beſt pleaſeth, or likes of, whileſt I in the next place ſhall ſet forth the Figure, which follows in *pag.* 161; affording more variety in the ſame.

CHAP. XV.

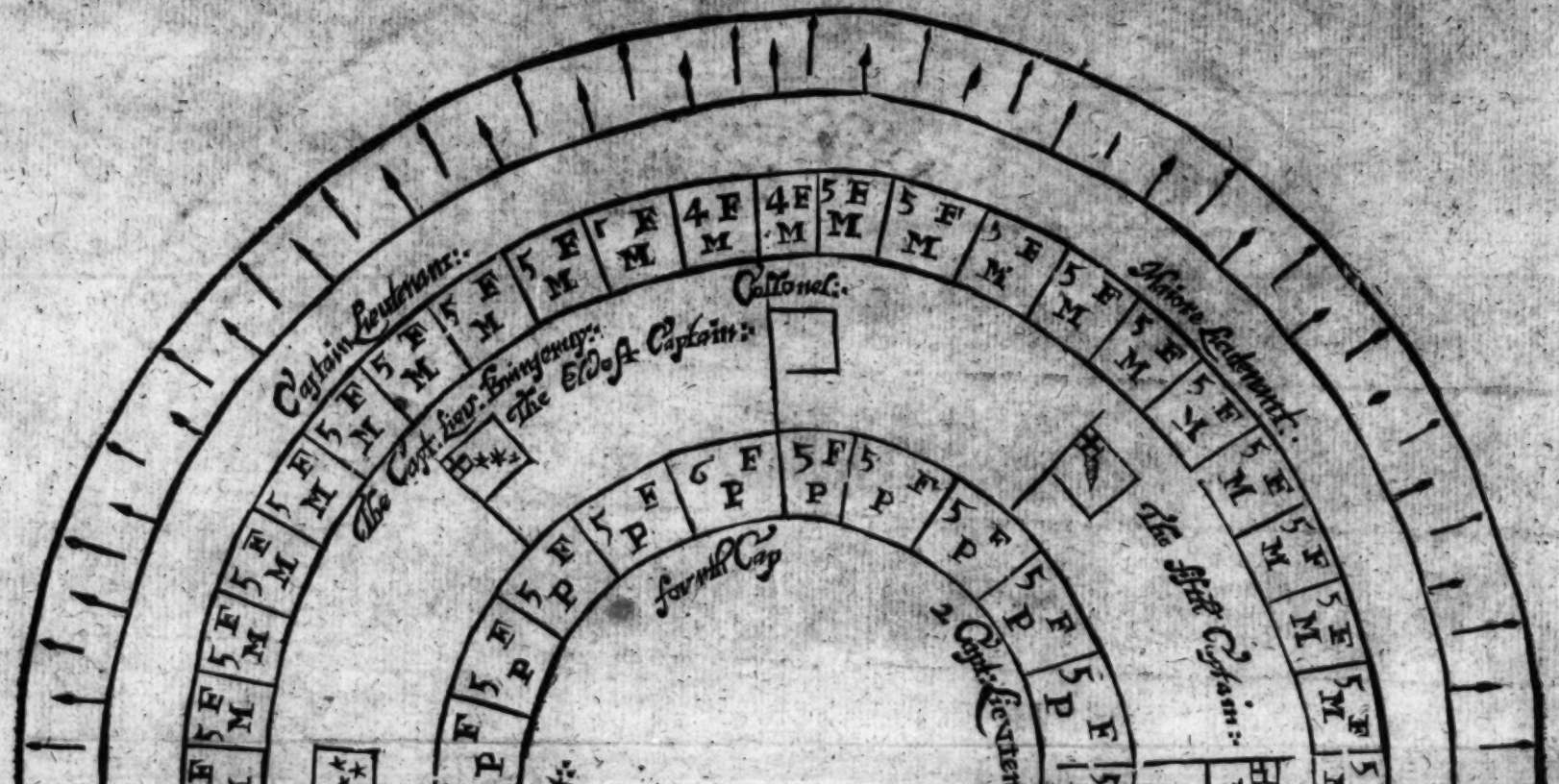
How to make the Figure of a Ring, *with its uſe and ſervice.*

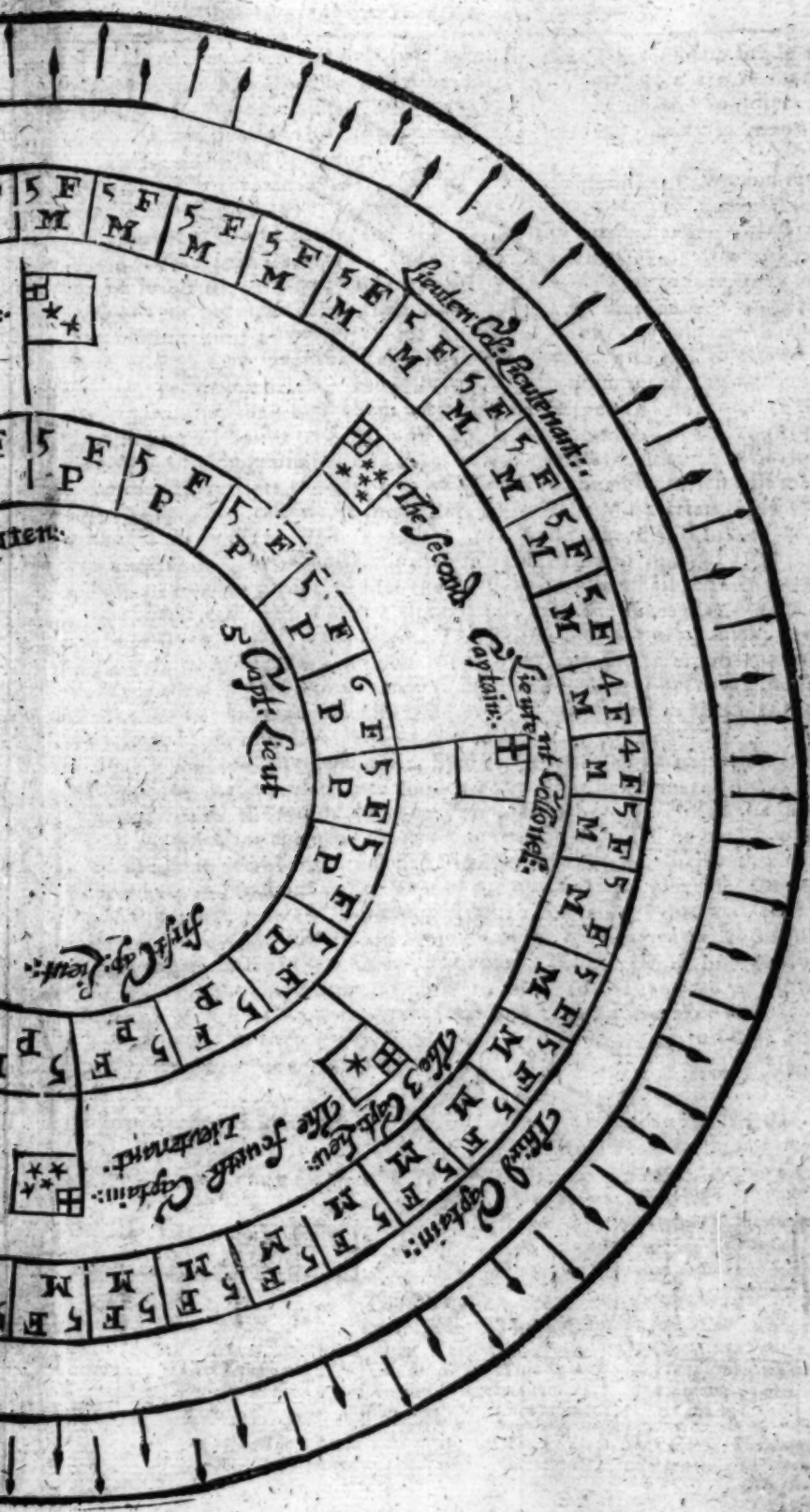
THe way to make this Figure in the moſt readieſt manner, is to be performed after this kind; both the grand Diviſions ſtanding all abreſt in even Front: Firſt move forward all the Muſkettiers ſome ten foot clear of the Pikes, after let them cloſe Files both of Muſkettiers and Pikes into the midſt to Order; then they will ſtand in two Diviſions, one of Muſkettiers, and in the Reer of them, one of of Pikes: then open the Files outward to open Order of each Arms, and after let them double the Front to the left of both Arms by Bringers-up, and they will be but three deep of each Arms, having in the Fronts the beſt Souldiers; then command them to face all to the right, then wheel them about ſtill to the right of both Arms, the Pikes wheeling all in the inſide of the Muſkettiers, until you have brought them into two *Rings*; provided thus, that you cloſe your *Rings* unto that place which was your firſt Front; then face them all to the centre, and after face them about to the right, and they will be then faced round, and ſtand ſuitable to the following Figure, *pag.* 163. And to have it in two *Rings*, the

Place this Figure betwixt Fol. 160 & 161.



Place this Figure betwixt Fol. 160 & 161.

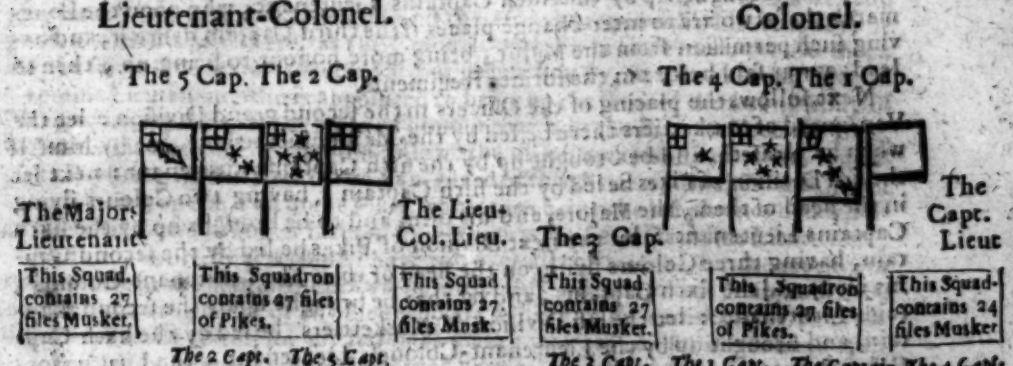



Lieuten: Col: Lieutenant:
The Second Captain:
Lieutenant Colloneſ:
5 Capt: Lieut
Firſt Cap: Lieut:
The 3 Capt: Lieu:
The Fourth Captain:
Lieutenant:
Third Captain:

the one of Muskettiers, the other of Pikes, some ten foot short on the inside of them. And by reason it cannot be well otherwise, in respect there are as many Muskettiers again as there are Pikes, and the Officers following the Souldiers in their places formerly fixed in this Motion, will also naturally stand in manner and form as is set down in the Figure.

But, methinks, I hear some say, Of what use or service upon any occasion may this *Ring* be unto the Souldier? To whom I answer, that it is one of the most serviceable Figures that can be made, to secure the Souldier from danger against the furious charge of Horse in *Campania*; the accomplishing, or making of it up, being easily and suddenly performed, the Muskettiers having Pallizadoes, may advance three or four paces, and stick them down in such manner, as they may keep the Horse from breaking in among them. And after, if they should be charged round, they may give fire over them against their enemies, and fall in the Reer of themselves; yet nevertheless, if the Horse should be undaunted, and attempt to come on again, they may resist them with a more desperate charge after this manner, bringing all hands to fight, and to pour out their shot, or to fire altogether after this kind. Command first the Pikes to move forward, until they be three foot behind the Muskettiers, then let every File rank to the right, which will make them to stand but one abrest in one single *Ring* behind the Muskettiers. Now that all hands may be brought to fight together, command the first Rank of Muskettiers to kneel down, the second stoop, and the third stand upright; then let all close forward to close Order, and let the Pikes, as occasion shall require, charge betwixt the Muskettiers, who may fire altogether, and the Pikes may charge on whilest the Muskettiers make ready again. The Pallizadoes formerly stuck, keeping off the Horse from breaking in upon them, they may fire after this manner, as often as they please. And so much may suffice to be spoken concerning the service and use that may be made of it in time of fight; and now in the next place I come to reduce them into Companies again as at first.

Let the Pikes that ranked to the right, file three to the left as they were, and let the Bringers-up that doubled face about to the right, and march forth into their places. Then let the Major come to that place where he closed the *Ring*, and brake it off, wheeling them all along about to the left, until he hath brought them to stand in one even Front as at first; the same in like manner to be performed of the Pikes, and to stand in the Reer of the Muskettiers. Next, let the Muskettiers and Pikes face outward, and move to such convenient distance, that after the Muskettiers may be subdivided again, and the Pikes move up, and double their Front inward entire in each grand Division. Which being brought into that form, each Captain may draw off his men, being so commanded by the Major, and compleat up his Company again, and be after disposed of to farther duty, or to march home to their Quarters according to command. And here I shall conclude this Regiment of eight Companies.



CHAP. XVIII.

The manner of drawing up a Regiment consisting of ten Companies, having in it seven Captains, and three Field-Officers, being in each particular Company the former numbers, which in all amounts unto 1198 men.

THE Major having ground sufficient for the drawing up the Regiment, after the Colonels Company hath made Alt, next to him upon the left he draws up the youngest Captain, which is the tenth; and the next to him the third Captain, which is the sixth; after that the fourth Captain, which is the seventh; then the first Captain, which is the fourth: then the Majors, which is the third; next to him the fifth Captain, which is the eighth; and after that the second Captain, which is the fifth; then the sixth Captain, which is the ninth. All these being drawn up upon the left of the Colonels Company, the closier of all upon the left, is the Lieutenant-Colonels Company, whose figure carries the number 2. Place now all these numbers of Dignity according to the former Figures, and they will stand as followeth in a Rank.

2 : 9 : 5 : 8 : 3. | 4 : 7 : 6 : 10 : 1.

27 28.

In the next place compare the Dignity of the right Half-ranks with the left, and they are ballanced as neer as can be possible to be equal, there being one odd, which of necessity must be cast upon the right Half-ranks, for the reasons formerly expresst, in placing the second Captain into the Lieutenant-Colonels Division. Then according to the former rule, draw forth the Pikes, and ingross them into two Bodies, and the like of the Musketiers; after sub-divide the Musketiers, and make them four divisions, and move them up to flank the Pikes, and then they will be in two compleat grand Divisions. In the next place, let the Major order forth unto the Captains and Lieutenants their several places to lead and to bring up, after this manner. There being two grand Divisions, having in them five Captains, and five Lieutenants, it will be necessary to appoint out five several Charges in the first grand Division to lead, and five to bring up, after this manner. As first, divide the Van-guard into two Divisions, the first to be led by the Captain-Lieutenant, and brought up by his Bringer-up: the second Division of Musketiers in the Van to be led by the third Captains Lieutenant, and to be brought up by the fourth Captains Lieutenant. The first division of Pikes is to have the three first Colours to fly upon the head of them, and to be led by the eldest Captain, and brought up by the seventh Captains Lieutenant: the next division of Pikes to be led by the fourth Captain, having his own and the eldest Captains Colours flying upon the head of them, and to be brought up by the seventh, or youngest Captain in the Regiment: the Reer-guard of Musketiers of the first grand Division to be led by the third Captain, and brought up by the eldest Captains Lieutenant, who upon the Long-march these two are to inter-change places if the third Captain desire it, and having such permission from the Major, being more honour to bring up, then to lead, as was said before in the former Regiments.

Next follows the placing of the Officers in the second grand Division: let the Van-guard of Musketiers there be led by the Majors Lieutenant, or by himself when he pleaseth, and be brought up by the fifth Captains Lieutenant: next let the first Division of Pikes be led by the fifth Captain, having two Colours flying in the head of them, the Majors, and his own, and to be brought up by the sixth Captains Lieutenant: let the next Division of Pikes be led by the second Captain, having three Colours flying on the head of them, the Lieutenant-Colonels, his own, and the sixth Captains, and let that be brought up by the second Captains Lieutenant: let the last Division of Musketiers be led by the sixth Captain, and brought up by the Lieutenant-Colonels Lieutenant; the Lieutenant-Colonel upon the Long-march bringing up the Reer of the Regiment, some 12 foot behind his own Lieutenants.

I

I shall in the next place shew the Reasons for the thus placing of the Officers, where first I shall endeavour to clear the first grand Division, which will occasion the second to be more easily resolved. Where briefly thus, as concerning the Colonel, eldest Captain, third Captain, and Captain-Lieutenant, I shall pass them over, having formerly spoken sufficient to satisfie any Souldier therein. It follows therefore to speak of the fourth Captains place, which is the next man of Honour after the former, and therefore is placed to lead the second Division of Pikes, which is more honour to him to lead there, then to lead a sub-division of Muskettiers. In the Van-guard next to him in Honour in this Division, is the seventh Captain, who is appointed to bring up the first grand Body of Pikes, which likewise is more Honour unto him, then to lead or bring up any sub-division of Muskettiers, as before expressed. Having thus resolved of all the Captains, and Captain-Lieutenants place, next follows the reasons of the Lieutenants places; where first take notice that the eldest Captains Lieutenant is appointed to bring up the Reer-guard, which next the Pikes is the greatest place of honor in the reer, and a very honorable place unto him; or if he alters places with the third Captain upon the Long-march, yet nevertheless he hath the chiefest place of honour after the Capt. Lieut. amongst all the Lieutenants unto those places he is ordered unto. The third Captains Lieutenant is assigned to the next place, who leads the second Division of Muskettiers in the Van-guard, which is more honour to him then to bring up any such Division; after follows him the fourth Captains Lieutenant, who brings up the Reer of the Van-guard, which is more honour to him, of the places remaining, to be there, then to bring up either the first Division of Muskettiers, or the first Division of Pikes. Lastly, the seventh Captains Lieutenant is placed to bring up the first Division of Pikes, which being the more honourable Arms, it adds more honour to him to be there to bring up, then the first Division of Muskettiers, which being the last place of honour, it is given to the Captain-Lieutenants Bringer-up to be there. And thus much shall suffice for the reasons of the places of the first grand Division.

Now for placing of the Officers of the second grand Division, I shall not need to speak any thing concerning the Lieutenant-Colonels Major, Second Captain, and the Majors Lieutenants place, in regard in the former Regiments I have endeavoured to give the Souldier satisfaction therein. Therefore next to those in this grand Division follows to be spoken is the fifth Captain, who is the next man of honour, and therefore hath his due place appointed out to him to lead the first division of Pikes, where the Majors and his own *Colours* flie, which is more honour to him to lead there the Van of the Pikes, then the Reer-guard of Muskettiers. Next to him is the sixth Captain, which next the Pikes hath his due place of honour remaining to him to lead the Reer-guard. Having thus resolved the Captains places, I shall in the next endeavour to shew the Lieutenants, where first it falls to the Lieut. Colonels Lieutenant to be placed first, who is ordered to bring up the Reer, to be an assistant unto his Lieut. Colonel, who is a Field-Officer, and may have many occasions to fall off, and therefore he requires his Lieutenant to be present with his men there, as the Colonels doth his in the Front. And as much may be said of the Majors Lieutenant, but passing him by, I come next to the second Captains Lieutenant, who is appointed to bring up the Reer of the second Body of Pikes, which is the greatest place of honour that is in the Reer next to the Lieu. Colonels Lieutenant. After him follows the fifth Captains Lieutenant, who is placed to bring up the Reer of the Van-guard of this division, which is more honor then to bring up the Van of the Pikes, whose turn being the last place of honor, fals to him that is the youngest Lieutenant, which is the sixth Captains Lieutenant.

And thus as briefly as I could I have run over all the reasons for the placing of the Officers in the Regiment drawn up after this manner, that I might not be wanting unto the desire of any such who are willing to be informed therein, being always ready to employ my self in as plain a way as I can for the benefit of all true loving Souldiers, who are concerned herein. And therefore, for their better satisfaction, let them cast their eye upon the Figure, as it is demonstrated between *Folio* 161 and 162, where they shall see every man placed according to my former Discourse.

CHAP. XVII.

The manner both of the drawing up, and the order of the Long-march of Colonel Rainsborough *his Regiment, bringing up the Reer of the Foot of the Army under the Command of the Lord General* Fairfax, *at their first marching through the City of* London, *on the seventh of* August, 1647.

THe first order of drawing up the Regiment at their first place of Randevous, before they marched or joyn'd with the Army, was thus: The Colonels Company being upon the out-most part of the right of the Regiment; next to his left by succession was drawn up the second, sixth, fifth, and first Captain, which make up his Division, or the right Half-ranks in their first drawing up to be compleat, and may in their Figure of Dignity standing in a rank be demonstrated as followeth, 4: 8: 9: 5: 1: This number of Worth being cast up, amounteth to 27. And thus much for the Colonels Division.

Now for the left Half-ranks, or Lieutenant-Colonels Division, (as many times it is so ordred and appointed) his own Company being drawn up upon the out-most part on the left of the Regiment; and next to his right after each other is drawn up the third, seventh, fourth, and Majors Company; whose Figure of Dignity standing Rank-wise, may be thus described, 2: 6: 10: 7: 3: and their number of Dignity in all amounteth to 28. Where you may perceive a rule that the Discretion of the Major walketh by, in the drawing up of the Regiment, to ballance with as neer proportion as he can the Number, Worth, and Dignity of his right Half-ranks, or right Flank, sutable with that of the left. For it would be unreasonable that all the best men should be on the right, and that the left of the Regiment who are to oppose the Enemies right should have the weakest or meanest men of Worth: therefore without all question, that Body of men that shall be drawn up so as to make all parts of equal Worth, and Strength, as the right Flank with the left, the Front with the Reer, so that where-ever the Enemy shall fall on to charge any one of these parts, being all made equal in Strength, and Worth, it must needs prevent all murmuring complaints, and carry best approbation to all knowing Commanders. And thus much briefly may be spoken in the commendation of the ordring of his Regiment thus far.

The Captains now standing by their own Colours, on the head of the Pikes, and their Companies being drawn up all, and standing in an even Front, the Major next commands the Muskettiers to stand, the Pikes and Colours to troop forth some ten or twelve paces cleer of the Muskettiers, and then they likewise to stand, and after to close their Files to the midst to order.

Next he commands the Muskettiers in their Files to close outward to order, commanding them afterward to move up, and flank the Pikes, after which he orders the Body into thirteen remarkable Divisions, four Divisions of Muskettiers upon each side of the Pikes, and the Pikes into five divisions, having their Colours fly by two and two, and to be led by the Ensign-bearers that do belong to each of them, excepting the first and middle divisions, for they have Leaders in chief, as the first and fifth Captain, and the third Captain, to bring up the Reer of the whole Body of Pikes. For more fuller illustration of the leading and bringing up of each division in the Regiment upon their Long-march, observe these following directions.

1 The Regiment being upon their march, the first division upon the right is led by the Colonel, his Captain-Lieutenant marching in the Reer of him several paces, and that particular division is brought up by the Captains-Lieutenants Bringer-up.

2 The second division of Muskettiers is led by the second Captain-Lieutenant, and brought up by the first, or eldest Captains-Lieutenant.

3 The third division of Muskettiers is led by the sixth Captain, and brought up by his own Lieutenant.

4 The fourth division of Muskettiers is led by the fifth Captains Lieutenant, and brought up by the fourth Captain.

5 The first division of Pikes is led by the eldest Captain, having the Colonels, and second Captains Colours flying in the head of them. 6 The

Major.

2 Captain. 5 Captain.

6 Captain.

This Squadron contains 33 files of Musketeers.	This Squadron contains 19 files of Pikes.	This Squadron contains 16 files of Pikes.	Major's Lieut. This Squadron contains 33 files of Musketeers.	3 Capta This Squa contains 33 of Musket

Lieut. Col. Lieut. 2 Capt. Lieut. 6 Capt. Lieut. 5 Capt. Lieut. 1 Capt. Lie

Place this between page

Colonel.

5 Captain.

Lieut. Col. Lieu.	7 Capt.	3 Capt. Lieu.	2 Capt.			
13 Files of Musket.	12 Files of Musket.	12 Files of Musket.	13 Files of Musket.	10 Files of Pikes.	10 Files of Pikes.	10 Files of Pikes.
	7 Cap. Lieu.	Major's Lieu.	3 Capt.	3 Capt.		

Lieutenant-Colonel

This Regiment being thus drawn up, they fis
or Battalia, 150 abreast, and six in their depth, 1
and one of Pikes, their number, amounting in al
Company consisting of fifteen Files, and contai
apiece; but the Field-Officers Companies are ma

Place this between page 104 a

Lieutenant-Colonel. Major.

2 Captain. 5 Captain.

6 Captain. Majors Lieut. 3 Captai

This Squadron contains 33 files of Musketiers.	This Squadron contains 17 files of Pikes.	This Squadron contains 16 files of Pikes.	This Squadron contains 33 files of Musketiers.	This Squadr contains 33 of Musketie
Lieut. Col. Lieut.	2 Capt. Lieut.	6 Capt. Lieut.	5 Capt. Lieut.	1 Capt. Lieu

Place this between page

Colonel.

5. Captain.

Lieu. Col. Lieu. 7 Capt. 3 Capt. Lieu. 2 Capt.

13 Files of Musket.	12 Files of Musket.	12 Files of Musket.	13 Files of Musket.	10 Files of Pikes.	10 Files of Pikes.	10 Files o Pikes.
	7 Cap. Lieu.	Majors Lieu.	3 Capt.	3 Capt.		

Lieutenant-Colo

This Regiment being thus drawn up, they
or Battalia, 150 abreft, and fix in their depth
and one of Pikes, their number amounting i
Company conſiſting of fifteen Files, and co
apiece; but the Field-Officers Companies are

Place this between page 1

Colonel.

4 Captain. 2 Captain.

aptain.

quadron
s 33 files
kettiers.

This Squadron contains 16 files of Pikes.

This Squadron contains 17 files of Pikes.

3 Captain.

This Squadron contains 16 files of Musketiers.

Captain Lieut.

This Squadron contains 17 files of Musketiers.

. Lieut.

7 Captain. 7 Capt. Lieut. 4 Capt. Lieut. Ca. Lie. bringer-up

page 162 and 163.

.

2 Captain.

10
s of
es.

10
Files of
Pikes

10
Files of
Pikes.

1 Capt. Lieu.
13
Files of
Musket.
4 Capt.

6 Capt.
12
Files of
Musket.
6 Cap. Lieu.

2 Capt. Lieu.
12
Files of
Musket.
1 Cap. Lieu.

Capt. Lieu.
13
Files of
Musket.
Capt. Lieu.
Bringer-up.

olonel.

hey ſtand in the length of their Front
pth, having two thirds of Musketiers,
g in all to 900 men; each particular
containing in each of them 90 men
are many times larger.

e 164 and 165.

Colonel.

4 Captain. 2 Captain.

3 Captain. Captain Lieut.

This Squadron contains 16 files of Pikes.	This Squadron contains 17 files of Pikes.	This Squadron contains 16 files of Musketiers.	This Squadron contains 17 files of Musketiers.

7 Captain. 7 Capt. Lieut. 4 Capt. Lieut. Ca.Lie.bringer-up

nd 163.

1 Captain.

1 Capt.Lieu. 6 Capt. 2 Capt.Lieu. Capt.Lieu.

10 Files of Pikes.	10 Files of Pikes.	13 Files of Musket.	12 Files of Musket.	12 Files of Musket.	13 Files of Musket.

4 Capt. 6 Cap.Lieu. 1 Cap.Lieu. Capt. Lieu. Bringer-up.

he length of their Front
wo thirds of Musketiers,
90 men; each particular
n each of them 90 men
es larger.

6 The second division of Pikes is led by the fifth and sixth Captains Ensigns, having their own Colours flying upon the head of the same.

7 The third Division of Pikes is led by the fifth Captain, having the Majors and eldest Captains Colours flying upon the head of the same.

8 The fourth division of Pikes is led by the fourth and seventh Captains Ensigns, having their own Colours flying upon the head of the same.

9 The fifth and last Division of Pikes is led by the Lieutenant-Colonels, and third Captains Ensigns, having likewise their own Colours flying upon the head of the same; and the Reer of the Pikes is brought up by the third Captain.

10 The first division of Musketiers on the left Flank is led by the second Captain, and brought up by the fourth Captains Lieutenant.

11 The second upon the left is led by the third Captains Lieutenant, and brought up by the Majors Lieutenant.

12 The third division is led by the seventh Captain, and brought up by his own Lieutenant.

13 The fourth or last division of Muskettiers is led by the Lieutenant-Colonels Lieutenant, and the Reer of the Regiment is brought up by the Lieutenant-Colonel.

Notwithstanding I have thus laid down the manner of the Divisions, with the placing of the Officers, there are also from all these divisions both of the Pikes and Muskettiers, sub-divisions drawn off upon the Long-march betwixt every fifth or sixth File, as they can equally divide them with even proportions to march. And for the leading of such divisions, there are Serjeants cast in that properly belong unto them which do lead and bring them up; so that upon this account they make in their Long-regimental-march some thirty divisions, by reason, as I conceive, upon any Alt, or convenient place of drawing them all up even abreast, the Serjeants as well as the superiour-Officers may be helpful to bring up the File-leaders again as at the first into their proper places. And thus far I have endeavoured for the satisfaction of all ingenious Souldiers, to set forth the manner of Colonel *Rainsboroughs* Regiment of their drawing-up, disposing of Colours, and placing of Officers, as was the Observation of my ever-honour'd Friend, and most exquisite knowing Souldier *Thomas Walker*, one of the Captains of the same Regiment, and a true lover of the Military-art, who friendly communicated to me the practise of their Regiment. Which although it differs from the drawing up of all others in our Army (as I am inform'd, they varying in one kinde or other by their several ways) I question not, but this may be as good as any of the rest, which I leave to the judgment of the curious searchers into this Art, whilst I proceed to shew the Figures following.

CHAP. XVIII.

A third way of drawing up a Regiment of Ten Companies, after the manner used amongst the Swedes.

THe Companies meeting altogether, whether it be in the Alarom-place, otherwise at their general Randezvous, where they have ground and room sufficient enough for their drawing up: The Major appointing forth unto the Lieutenant-Colonels Company a place most convenient to stand, he draws all the rest of the Companies upon the left of him after this manner. The seventh and the second Captain, then the Colonel, after him the fifth, fourth, and first Captain, then the Major, after him the fifth and third Captain, who closes up the left of the whole Regiment; the figures of their Dignity standing after this manner.

6 : 8 : 2 : 10 : 4 : 7 : 9 : 1 : 5 : 10 : 3

28 27

Here you may perceive they follow a rule to Ballance their number of Dignity as neer as they can, carrying their odd number on the left Half-rank, and one upon the right; for these reasons, as I conceive, following. Their Regiment being so full of men, they draw them up for the most part into three Squadrons,

or

or grand divisions, giving unto the Lieutenant-Colonel the right Wing; the Major, the left; and the Colonel, the Main-battail. The Colonels grand Division consists of the four middle Companies, where you are to take notice, being drawn off some ten paces cleer from the rest they stand after this manner by way of Figure, 4: 7: 9: 1. The Lieutenant-Colonels Division after this manner, 5: 10: 2. and the Majors after this kinde, 6: 8: 3. Wherein I do observe in each grand Division this Rule, that by succession and degrees they put the best Souldiers upon the right, and the second according to course upon the left, and the rest between them. As first, the Colonel being the chiefest man of honour, is placed upon the right of his Squadron; next to his left is the sixth and fourth Captain, and the closing up of his grand Division is placed the first or eldest Captain. The Lieutenant-Colonel being the second man of honour, is likewise placed upon the right of his Squadron; and next to his left, the seventh Captain, his grand Division being closed up by the second Captain. In the next place, the Major, he being the third man of honour, is placed upon the right of his Squadron; and upon his left, the fifth Captain; and his grand Division is closed up upon the left by the third Captain. So that you may observe in the closing up of every Division, that as every Field-Officer is upon the right of their Squadrons, so they take by degrees upon the outmost of their left to close their Divisions, the Captains according to their degrees by succession. As first, and more cleerly, the Colonel takes the eldest Captain to him on his left, who will aptly fall in to lead his Body of Pikes and Colours; the Lieutenant-Colonel takes the second Captain for to lead his Stand of Pikes and Colours; the third Captain being placed upon the left of the outmost part of the Majors Squadron, to lead likewise his Colours and Body of Pikes. And further, if you observe the number of worth and dignity, that the right Wing hath with the left, you will finde them to be equally ballanced, and to be seventeen alike in number. Now in respect there cannot be an equal Division of the Colours by threes, there is very good reason that the odd should be placed in the Colonels Squadron, who is Commander in chief, and to whom it properly belongs unto.

In the next place, I shall shew you how to draw them forth in a Regimental way; the four middle Companies being advanced forward ten paces cleer form the three outmost Companies, may stand; then draw forth the Pikes of each Squadron, until they be ten foot cleer of their Muskettiers; then close Pikes into the midst to Order in their Files in each Division, and they will be in three Bodies; after close the Muskettiers into the midst to Order, then sub-divide them in as equal a way as you can; and let them move up upon the right and left, and flank each Body of Pikes. Then let the Major examine the Files in the Colonels Division, how many they exceed in number the other two, and he will finde twelve Files of Muskettiers, and six Files of Pikes, more then in the rest. Now to make them equal alike in each Squadron, let him take off from each particular Company of the Colonels Squadron, one File of Pikes, and place two of those four in the midst of the Lieutenant-Colonels Squadron, and the remaining two in the midst of his own Squadron; which being done, each body of Pikes will have in it 22 Files. After let him take off from each Company two Files of Muskettiers, which will be eight Files, & let him place two Files in the midst of each Flank of Muskettiers, both in the Divisions of the Lieutenant-Colonels and his own; and then there will be in each particular Division of Muskettiers 21 Files. This being likewise a very good way to draw up a Regiment of so great a number of men, I was unwilling to pass it by, but to present it unto the view of all loving Souldiers, which will more fuller appear in the Figure following (Folio 167) in which Figure I shall shew the several places of the Captains, and their Lieutenants, where they are to lead, and where to bring up.

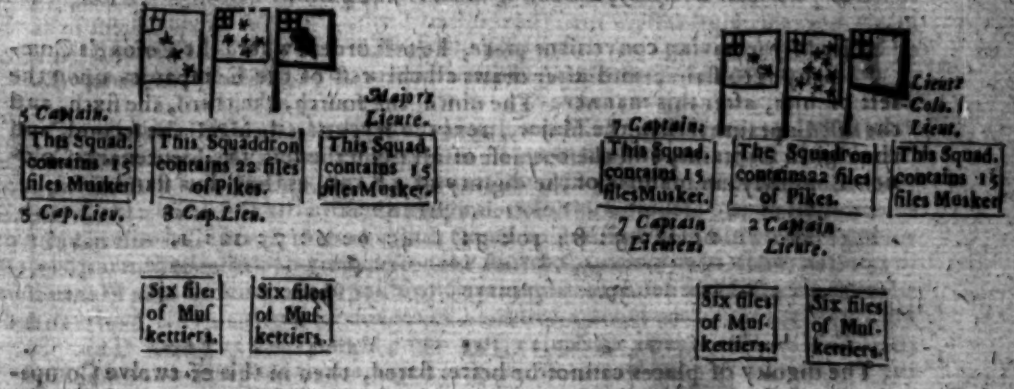
But before the former Figure be drawn up, it will be convenient for the Major to take off from every Company four Files of Muskettiers, (excepting the Colonels) and move them down by 12 Files apiece, some ten foot cleer of the Reer of Pikes of each Division; then close them in their Files inward to Order, and

face

Colonel.

The Major.

Lieuten. Col.



face them after to the Front, and they will ſtand there ready upon all occaſions to be Reſerves unto the Wings, or any other part of the Body, or to be Conveys to fetch in Victual, Ammunition, or any thing elſe that ſhall be wanting unto the Regiment. I ſhall not need to draw any other Figure of Battail from this, they ſtanding in a very good form to fire upon, opening every five Files cleer from each other ſix foot, that the Musketiers may have room enough to fall off, and to move down in the Reer of themſelves, after ſuch time their Ranks have fired. Neither ſhall I need to give any further reaſons for the placing of the Officers, in reſpect it lyes cleer and eaſie to the view of every ingenious Souldier to apprehend. As for matter of marching, if they have ground ſufficient, it will be very graceful to them for to preſerve this Figure; but if they have not room, but muſt be conſtrain'd to draw off, and march in particular Diviſions, it will be convenient to keep this decorum, if the Colonel thinks fit to change places every day, after this manner: He that leads the Van-guard one day, falls off the next, and brings up the Reer-ward; and he that before led the Main-battail, comes to lead the Van; and he that led the Reerward, comes to be in the place of the Main-battail. And thus they change, and take their turns by courſe to lead the Van, the Battail, and the Reer-ward. They ought likewiſe in their March to have thirty foot of ground diſtance betwixt each grand Diviſion; and when they have ground ſufficient, they may draw up again into their firſt Figure. Now in reſpect I purpoſe to go on upon the next drawing up of a Regiment of twelve Companies, I ſhall break off to diſcourſe any more of this. For the reducing of them again into Companies, it will be eaſie, let the Serjeant of each particular Company fetch off thoſe men of theirs which were drawn off for Reſerves, and to make the Squadrons even in number, bring them to joyn with their own men; then let every Captain take off his Pikes and Musketiers, and compleat them up into one Body, they will be ready to receive Orders, and be in a condition for marching away, either to their Quarters, or other Duties, which they ſhall be appointed unto by their Major.

CHAP. IX.

The way of drawing up a Regiment conſiſting of twelve Companies, the nine Captains having eighteen Files in each Company, and the three Field-Officers every one of them twenty four Files; whereof, there are two thirds of Musketiers, and one of Pikes, in each particular Company, amounting in all to 1404 men.

THe Major having convenient place, he firſt orders where the Colonels Company is to ſtand, and after draws all the reſt of the Companies upon the left of him, after this manner: The ninth, the fourth, the third, the ſixth, and the firſt Captains; then the Major, next the ſeventh, the fifth, the ſecond, and the eighth Captains, and the outmoſt of all upon the left, the Lieutenant-Colonels Company, in manner of the dignity of a Rank, as they thus ſtand.

2: 11: 5: 8: 10: 3: | 4: 9: 6: 7: 12: 1.

39. 39.

The dignity of places cannot be better ſtated, then in this of twelve Companies; as firſt, the Right-half-ranks is equal with the left in number of dignity. Again, divide them into three parts, and their number of dignity falls out to carry along with it an equal number of twenty ſix all even alike. Conſider likewiſe, the ſtating of every Captain in the Regiment, and they are qualified equal throughout, the beſt and the youngeſt Souldiers joyned together, as by examining them how they ſtand by two's, their number of worth and dignity throughout carries thirteen all equal alike. In the next place, draw forth all the Pikes, and ingroſs them into two Bodies; then divide the Musketiers into four

four parts, and more them up, and Flank those Strands of Pikes, and they will be in two grand Divisions; then place the Officers after this manner; beginning first with the Colonels division, make two Divisions of Musketiers in his Van, let the first be led by the Captain Lieutenant, and be brought up by his Bringer-up; let the next Division of Musketiers be led by the fourth Captains Lieutenant, and brought up by the third Captains Lieutenant; let the Pikes be divided into three Divisions, the Colours flying two and two upon the head of them; let the first Division be led by the eldest Captain, and brought up by the ninth Captain Lieutenant; let the next Division be led by the sixth Captain, and brought up by his own Lieutenant; let the last Division be led by the fourth Captain, and the whole Body of Pikes be brought up by the ninth Captain. Then let the Rear-guard of the Colonels Division be led by such observations as is set forth in other Regiments by the third Captain, and brought up by the first Captains Lieutenant.

Having placed the Officers in the first grand Division, he may proceed unto the next; let the first Division of Musketiers be led by the Majors Lieutenant, and brought up by the fifth Captains Lieutenant. Let the Pikes be divided into three parts, the Colours likewise flying two and two upon the head of them; then let the first Division be led by the fifth Captain, and brought up by the eighth Captains Lieutenant; next let the second Division be led by the eighth Captain, and brought up by the seventh Captains Lieutenant. Lastly, let the third Division be led by the second Captain, and brought up by his own Lieutenant; let the last Division of Musketiers be led by the seventh Captain, and brought up by the Lieutenant-Colonels Lieutenant: The Colonel is to be on the head of his Division, and the Lieutenant-Colonel upon the head of his, and the Major between them both in the Front. The Officers before they are thus placed, are to have their grand Divisions of both Arms equally ballanced for number of worth, observing still the former Rules in the execution of the same. It might be here expected I should shew reasons for the thus placing of the Officers, after this manner; but to satisfie such, if they please but to observe and take notice of the reasons given in the former Regiments, which will give satisfaction unto this, carrying with it the same order and way. And likewise it might be expected, that I should here set forth a figure for the thus drawing them up as before expresst, and placing of the several Officers. But since this Regiment falls out to be so full in number, I shall set it forth after the manner of drawing up a Brigade, according to the Swedish practise.

CHAP. XX.

The manner of drawing up a Regiment according to the Swedish Brigade.

After that the Major hath plac'd the Lieutenant-Colonels Company in such a convenient place, that he may draw all the rest up on the left of him, he thus proceeds in bringing up the Companies; he first places to him the eighth Captain; then the fifth, after that the second, then the Colonels Company, next to him the ninth Captain, then the sixth Captain, and first Captain; after the Major, then the seventh Captain, after the fourth Captain; then upon the outmost part of the left, is placed the third Captain, in manner and form as they thus stand

6. 7. 10. 3. 4. 9. 12. 1. 5. 8. 11. 2.

Having thus far proceeded, he may command the four outmost Companies upon each Flank, to advance forward some ten paces cleer from the four middle Companies; then let them stand, and after let him draw forward the Pikes cleer from the Musketiers, and close their Files outward to Order; then let the Mus-

Muskettiers be divided into four parts, their Files being closed to Order, let them move forward, and flank those two Bodies of Pikes. After in the same manner move forward the Pikes in the four middle Companies, until they be cleer of the Muskettiers, and close their Files into the midst to Order, and divide their Muskettiers into two parts, and let them move forward, and flank the Body of Pikes; and then they will stand in their Squadrons or grand Divisions, their dignities standing after this manner in the Colonels division, thus, 4 : 9 : 12 : 1. In the Lieutenant-Colonels division, thus, 5 : 8 : 11 : 2. and in the the Majors, thus, 6 : 7 : 10 : 3. So that you may perceive this to be a very good way amongst the rest, each particular Squadron bearing the number of 26, and having unto every one of them their Dignities and worths equally divided, and stated alike. In the next place, the Major ought to inquire of the number of men they carry in each division of both Arms; where as first, he shall finde in the Colonels Squadron, to have in it 26 Files of Pikes, and 52 Files of Muskettiers; and examining all the rest, they will fall out to the same proportion of number. So that in each Division there contains, whether they be Pikes, or Muskettiers, to have in every particular thereof 78 Files. In the next place, he shall do well to appoint forth unto them their several places to lead and bring up; and first, of the Colonels grand Division, he being on the head thereof, the Captain-Lieutenant leading the first division of Muskettiers in his Squadron, being brought up by his Bringer-up; the first two Colours, and his half Body of Pikes to be led by the eldest Captain, and brought up by the ninth Captains Lieutenant; the next two Colours, and half Body of Pikes to be led by the ninth Captain, and brought up by the eldest Captains Lieutenant; the last division of Muskettiers in his Squadron, to be led by the sixth Captain, and brought up by his own Lieutenant. The first division of Muskettiers in the Lieutenant-colonels Squadron, is led by his own Lieutenant, and brought up by the eighth Captains Lieutenant; his first two Colours, and half Body of Pikes is led by the seventh Captain; and the next two Colours, and half Body of Pikes, is led by the eigthth Captain, and brought up by the second Captains Lieutenant; his last division of Muskettiers is led by the fifth Captain, and brought up by his own Lieutenant; himself standing as the Colonel doth upon the head of his Squadron. The first division of Muskettiers in the Majors Squadron (himself being upon the head) is led by his own Lieutenant, and brought up by the seventh Captains Lieutenant; his first two Colours, and half Body of Pikes is led by the third Captain; and the next two Colours, and half Body of Pikes, is led by the seventh Captain, and brought up by the third Captains Lieutenant; his last division of Muskettiers is led by the fourth Captain, and brought up by his Lieutenant; as in the next place, in the Figure set forth in Folio 170, more fully appeareth.

They standing according to the former directions in three Bodies of Pikes flanked with the Muskettiers, before they come to the Figure set forth, you must command in each grand division the six inmost Files of Muskettiers next the Pikes to face about, and to march six paces cleer of the Reer, and then close inward to Order. Afterward open every four Files outward to open Order, of those 12 Files, and let the middle-division there face about, and move down six foot cleer of the Reer; and after face to their Leader. Then there will remain 20 Files of Muskettiers upon the Flanks of each Body of Pikes; after move forward the eight middle Files of particular division of Muskettiers, some ten foot before the Front. Then command the left-half-ranks, or the four Files of Muskettiers upon the left of those divisions drawn forth, to face about, and to move down ten foot cleer of the Reer, and after face to the Front. Then let the 12 remaining Files of Muskettiers close to the Pikes to open Order; and let every four Files of those remaining 12 upon the Flanks, open outward six foot of ground betwixt each four Files, and move the Front and Reer-divisions of Muskettiers just against the midst of those three divisions of Muskettiers that are the Flankers to the Pikes, and they will stand in the Figure as it is placed in Folio 170.

They

4 Captain.

4 Files of Muſketiers.

Serjeant-Major.

Majors Lieut.

4 Files of Muſketiers.

7 Capt. 3 Capt.

Files Muſketier | 4 Files of Muſkettier | 4 Files of Muſkettier | This Squadron containes ſix and twenty Files of Pikes. | 4 Files of Muſkettier. | 4 Files of Muſkettier | 4 Files of Muſkettier

3 Capt. Lieutenant.

4 Files of Muſkettier | 4 Files of Muſkettier | 4 Files of Muſkettier | 4 Files of Muſkettier

4 Capt. Lieu.

7 Capt. Lieut.

4 Files of Muſkettier

6 Captain.

4 Files. of Muſkettiers.

Colonel.

9 Capt.

4 Files of Muſkettier | 4 Files of Muſkettier | 4 Files of Muſkettier | This Squadron con ſix and twenty Fil of Pikes.

1 Cap. Lieu. 9 Ca

4 Files of Muſkettiers.

4 Files of Muſkettiers.

6 Capt. Lieut.

4 Files of Muſkettiers.

Place this between page 1

5 Captain.

4 Files of Muſkettiers.

Lieutenant-Col.

Lieu. Col.

4 Files of Muſkettiers.

8. Capt. 2 Capt.

4 Files of Muſ-kettier	4 Files of Muſ-kettier	4 Files of Muſ-kettier	This Squadron containes ſix and twenty Files of Pikes.	4 Files of Muſ-kettier.	4 Files of Muſ-kettiers	4 F of M kett

2 Capt. Lieutenant.

4 Files of Muſkettiers

4 Files of Muſ-kettiers.

4 Files of Muſ-kettiers.

4 Files of Muſ-kettiers.

5 Capt. Lieut.

8 Capt. Lieu.

4 Files of Muſ-kettiers.

onel.

Capt. Lieutenant.

4 Files of Muſ-kettiers.

5 Capt.

containes Files

4 Files of Muſ-kettier

4 Files of Muſ-kettier

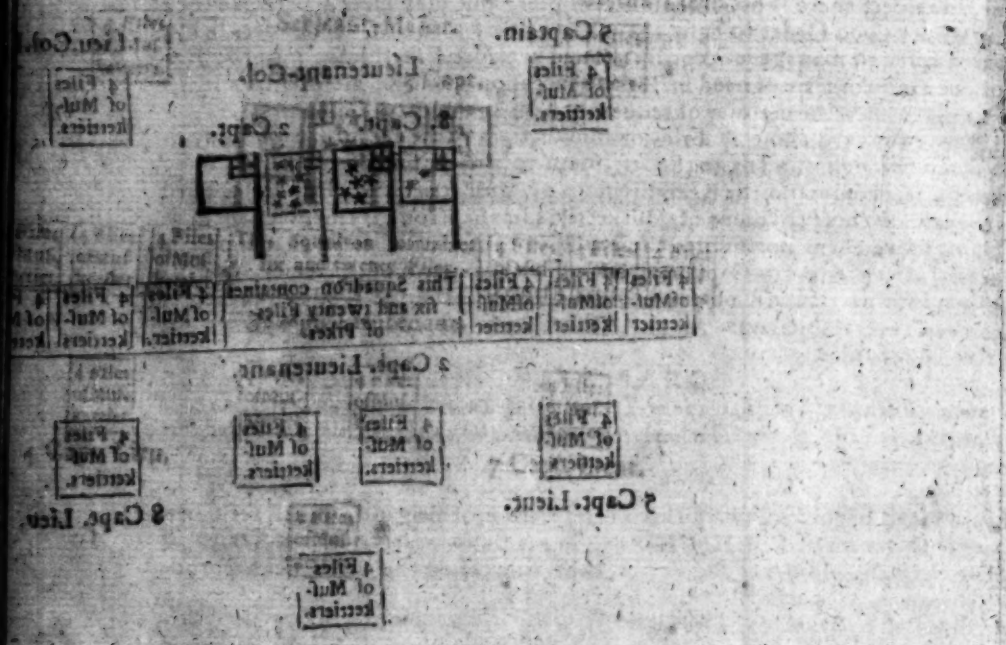
4 Files of Muſ-kettier.

9 Cap. Lieu.

4 Files of Muſ-kettiers

4 Files of Muſ-kettiers

Cap. Lieu. bringer-up.


5 Captain.
Lieutenant-Col.
4 Files of Muskettiers.
8. Capt.
2. Capt.
This Squadron contains six and twenty Files of Pikes.
2 Capt. Lieutenant.
5 Capt. Lieut.
8 Capt. Lieu.

They standing now in a perfect Order of a Brigade, the number of men in this Regiment allowing it in a full manner, according to the small Brigades of the *Swedes*; I shall not need to point out of what service this Figure, or drawing up may be, in respect there is no ingenious Souldier, but may clearly perceive they stand in a very good Order to fight against an Enemy; their Commanders being appointed forth to manage it accordingly. Therefore I shall leave it to the practise of such who in time of need shall have occasion to make use of it; and in the next place shew the manner of reducing them again into Companies.

First move forward those 12 Files of Musketiers in the Reer of each body of Pikes, fix to the right, and fix to the left, next to the outside of their own body of Pikes: After command the Reer-divisions of Musketiers to advance forward upon the left of those Divisions of Musketiers in the Front; then face them about, and move them down into the midst of those Musketiers that were the Flankers. After let every Captain draw off his Pikes and Musketiers, and ingross them into particular Companies, and they will then be ready to march away to their several Quarters. And here I shall conclude concerning a Regiment of twelve Companies.

CHAP. XXI.

The manner of drawing up a Brigade or Tertia, being a third part of an Army, according to the practise of the Netherlands, *under the command of the Prince of* Orange.

BEfore I shall begin to draw up this Tertia, Army, or Brigade; I shall set down the observation of Col. *Hen. Hexam*, in his Book treating of the Office of the three Serjeant-Majors of the Tertia, otherwise called the three Field-Corporals. His words are these:

The States Army by order of his Highness, is divided upon a March into three Brigades or Tertia's; and a Serjeant-Major of a Tertia, being one of the great Captains of the Field, receives his Order immediate from the Lord-General, or the Lord Martial, but most commonly of the Serjeant-Major-General of the Army, how he shall form and order his Brigade or Tertia; and how many Regiments of Horse and Foot are to march under it, and with what Ordnance and Baggage. He assigns and shews him the place where they are to draw out into Battalia, and receives Orders from the Serjeant-Major-General, whether they are to march in the Van-guard, the Battail, or the Reer: So that in marching in every one of these, he shall attend upon his Brigade and several Divisions; and in the absence of the Serjeant-Major-General, see that the order of marching and embattailing be duly kept and observed. And every one of these three Serjeants-Majors of Brigades, are to be at the command of the Colonel, General, or he that leads or commands that Brigade or Tertia; and is to be sent to the Lord-General, Lord-Martial, or Serjeant-Major-General upon any occasion belonging to the service.

These three Majors of the Tertia's are to be lodged as neer the Serjeant-Major-General, as conveniently may be; and those three which attend upon the Van-guard, the Battail or Reer, which the Serjeant-Major shall make choice of ground for the placing of Guards, and assign them to the Serjeant-Majors of every Regiment. They are to go the Round, and to visit the Guard commonly every night, and at such an hour as the Serjeant-Major shall appoint them either by day or night.

If any of these three Serjeant-Majors of the Field shall finde any want of Powder, Ammunition or Victuals, either in the Van-guard, Battail or Reer, as well upon the march, as when the Troops are quartered, or during fight, he is presently to advertise the Serjeant-Major-General of the Field with the said wants. And then by his direction shall go with an Officer of every Regiment of that Tertia, to the General, or Lieutenant of the Ordnance, or to the Commissary-General of the Ammunition, or Victuals.

A Serjeant-Major of a Tertia, to conclude, having received his Orders from the Lord-General, the Martial, or Serjeant-Major-general, gives them to the Serjeant-Majors of every particular Regiment. But because the Word and Orders are to be sent to Quarters far distant one from another, the Serjeant-Major of every Regiment can-

not come conveniently to the Serjeant-Major-General. Therefore the Majors of every Brigade are to attend every morning and evening upon the Serjeant-Major-General, to receive their Orders, and to carry the Word to the several Quarters, whither the Serjeant-Majors of Regiments comes to him, and from him receives the Word and Orders.

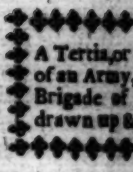
The drawing up of Brigades in the next place comes to be handled after the way of the *Hollanders*; therefore, first take notice, that Brigades are not tyed to a set number of Companies or Regiments, but are ordered according to the several strengths of an Army. As sometimes they consist of 12 Companies, some of two Regiments, others of three, or four, having in them not alike number of Companies or men, which ought accordingly unto the several Divisions of a Brigade to be ballanced alike, both in number of men, dignity, and worth, as is in particulars Regiments fully set forth. And in respect that several Divisions make a Brigade, and that according to the disposition of an Army, all the Officers and Souldiers are divided into three parts, called Brigades or Tertia's, each of them having a several name; to wit, the Van-guard, Battail and Reer-guard. Now that Tertia which is to march first, is called the Van-guard; that which marcheth next in the middle, the Battail; and that which comes up last, the Reer. Every one of these upon march, as was formerly expressed in the Swedish Brigade, take their turns interchangeably; for the second day of the March, the Battail becomes the Van-guard; and the Reer, the second day the Battail; and the third day, the Tertia, that had first the Reer, is become the Van-guard. So likewise, there ought to be in every particular Brigade or Tertia, a Van-guard, Battail and Reer-guard, to each of them; which with more conveniencie may be orderly brought to fight by him that shall be Commander in chief, for the relieving each other, according as occasion shall require.

In the next place, for a Brigade, I shall point forth four Regiments, having in them eight Companies apiece, after the manner of a Regiment of eight formerly set down, which amounts to 3888 men, which number may serve for a third part of an Army of foot, and make up a very compleat and sufficient Brigade. And I shall order in this Brigade to have in it four Divisions; that is to say, a Van-guard, Battail and Reer-guard, represented in the three first Regiments; but the fourth shall be a reserve, standing in the Reer of the Main-battail or Brigade, whereby upon all occasions of the other retreating, or being driven backward, that Regiment may move up to relieve each part thereof that shall be distressed. But upon the Long-march of this Brigade, the two middle Regiments according to their order of dignity, are to make the Battail, which in the Figure were made the Van-guard, and Reer-guard; and that which formerly was the Van-guard, is become the Battail; and the Reer-guard, the Reserve; but where they have ground sufficient it will be better to march in that form of Battalia set down according to the Figure, Folio 176.

This Brigade consisting of four Regiments, must be drawn up according to the dignity of their Captains; but with this alteration of Arms, for the former Regiments consisting of two Divisions, this hath but one, after this manner.

First, when the Captains Companies are all drawn up into an even brest in their true dignity; then let the Pikes be all drawn forth, and ingrossed into one Body; after let the Muskettiers be closed in their Files into the midst into another Body; after let those Muskettiers, as near as is possible be divided into two parts, (if there should be an odd File, let it be carried to the right) and let them move up and flank the Pikes, which will make up one compleat *Battalia*, or grand Division. Now let the Officers be placed according to the manner in the next place, as in every Regiment shall be set forth, which may be a satisfaction unto the Souldiers, to know a third way of drawing up, and placing the Officers of a Regiment consisting of eight Companies. Four Regiments thus drawn up makes a compleat *Brigade*, to be ordered according to Dignity in their Regiments after this manner. The chiefest Commanders Regiment, or eldest Colonels, is to be on

the



Place this between pa

Colonel.

Capt.
5 Capt. Lieut.

containes four and fifty
s of Pikes.

This Squad.
contains 54
files Musket

Captains
Lieut.

4 Capt. 1 Cap. Cap. Lieu.
Lieut. Lieu. bringer up

2 Capt. Majors Lieut. 1 Capt.

Lieu. Colonel.

2 Capt.
Lieu. 4 Cap.

Colonel.

Capt.
5 Cap. Lieu.

rtia, or third part
Army, or a fingle
de of 3888 men
n up & embattel.

This Squad.
contains 54
files Musket

This Squadron contains four and fifty
Files of Pikes.

This Squad.
contains 54
files Musket

L. Col. 5 Cap. 3 Capt. 3 Capt. 4 Capt. 1 Cap. Cap. Lieu.
Lieut. Lieu. Lieut. Lieut. Lieu. bringer up

rs Lieut. 1 Capt.

Colonel.

Capt.
5 Cap. Lieu.

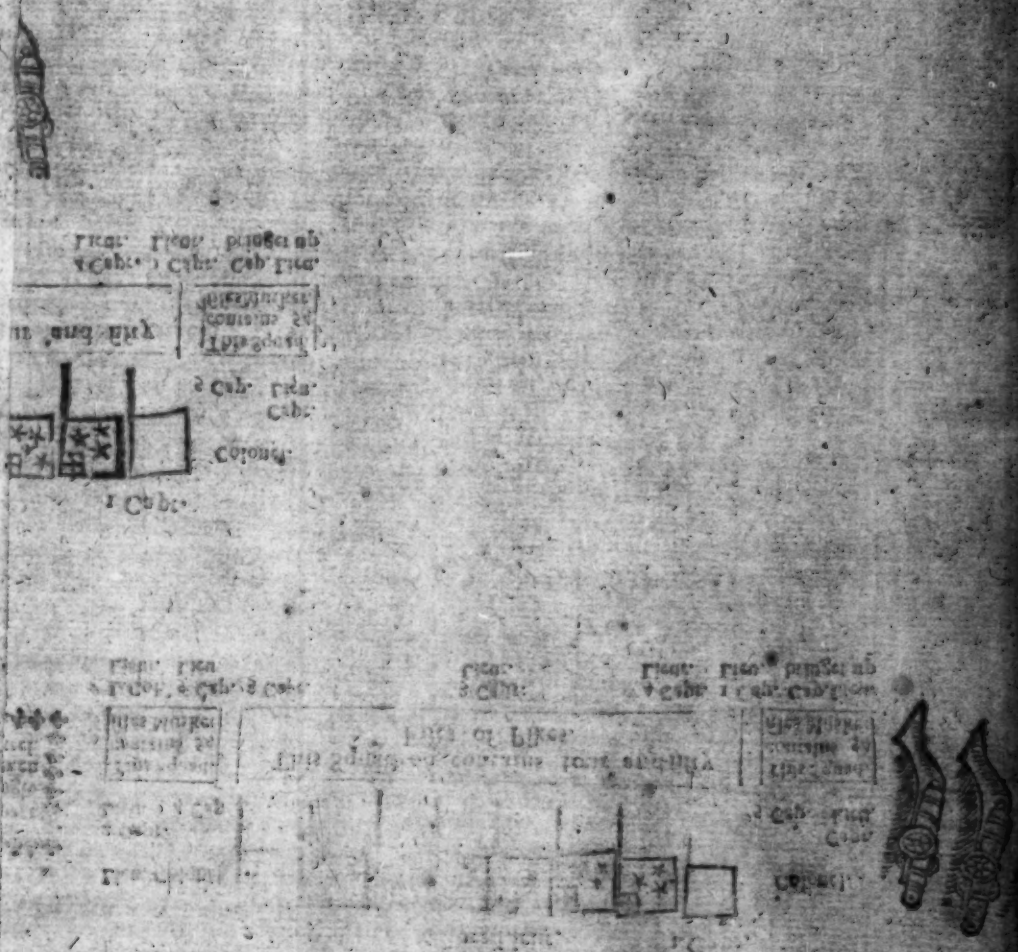
ontains four and fifty
of Pikes.

This Squad.
contains 54
files Musket.

Capt.
Lieut.

4 Capt. 1 Capt. Cap. Lieu.
Lieut. Lieut. bringer up

en page 172 and 173.



the right of the *Brigade*; the next man of Honour to be on the left; the third to be on the right of the second; and the fourth on the left of the first, after the manner of these Figures, 2. 3. | 4. 1. wherein it clearly appears that their number of Worth is equally divided. In the next place, as concerning Command, and ordering of such great Bodies into *Brigades*, the shortest and soonest way is the best; wherefore command the outmost Regiment upon the right, or the Vanguard to advance forward 18 foot before the Front, then face to the left, and move until they stand straight against the midst of the two middle Divisions, or Main-battail that was; then face to the Front; then let the outmost Regiment upon the left face about, and move down 24 foot clear of the Reer; then face to the left, until they stand straight in the Reer of the middle Regiments or Vanguard, then face to the Front; next let the two middle Regiments move forth to the right and left, until they stand clear for the Reer-guard, or Reserve to come up and relieve each part, as occasion shall require; they being all faced to the Front, will stand in a compleat *Brigade*, as formerly was expressed. The former *Brigade* being imbattelled into so many Divisions, and joyn'd so near on the other, can best second and relieve each other, better then your great *Battalia's*, which unwildy Bodies being once broken, and routed, can hardly be rallied again, neither can they bring so many men to fight in that good order, as the lesser Bodies will do. As for example, three of these *Brigades*, or *Tertia's*, make a compleat Army of foot, the *Battail*; one of the *Tertia's* of the Army being placed in the midst, that of the Van-guard may be drawn upon the right, and the Reer on the left Flank of the *Battail*. The first Divisions that are to fight, are those that stand in an even line of the first range, and are so ordered, that if they should be overcharged, and forced to give ground, then the second range may move up, and relieve the first, and may give the second charge against an Enemy, whilest the first move down into the midst and rally again, or may move and enterchange ground with those that are the Reserve. The second range having fired, may be relieved by the third, who may move up into the ground of the first Divisions, and there may take their turns to give a third charge, whilest the second Divisions rally up again. And thus they may maintain their fighting in this order, so long as there shall be just occasion; provided the Musketiers make six foot ground interval betwixt every five or six Files for their Ranks to wheel off either to the right or left, and to rally themselves in good order in the Reer of their own Divisions. There is likewise another way to make a *Brigade*, by ingrossing all the Pikes of every Regiment into one Body, flanking them with Musketiers; or by making them into two or three stands of Pikes, and flanking each body of Pikes with Musketiers. But, I conceive the former way to be one of the best, and chiefest amongst them all; and therefore I shall spare the pains to make any other Figure, having placed every Officer where he is to lead, and where to bring up. And upon the Long-march this rule must be observed in every Regiment, where they cannot march all abreast, they must make in every Regiment seven Divisions, three of Pikes, the first three Colours to flie upon the head of the first Division; the next two Colours to flie upon the head of the second; and the three last upon the head of the third Division; and they must likewise make two Divisions of Musketiers in the Van of their Regiments, and two Divisions in the Reer; the Officers are accordingly placed down upon these sub-divisions, where to take their places both to lead and to bring up. The Regiments are to march after this manner; first, his Regiment in the Van who is Commander in chief; next to him the fourth man of Honour; after him the third; these two making the *Battail*: and last the Reer be brought up by the second Colonel, or second man of Honour, his Regiment likewise marching there. And here I shall conclude concerning a *Brigade*.

CHAP. XXII.

How to draw up an Army of twelve Regiments of Foot, and three of Horse, the Foot amounting unto 11664 men, and the Horse unto 3000; in all 14664 men.

THe drawing up of an Army most properly belongs to the Serjeant-Major-General, whose place and charge is of an high degree, his commands being

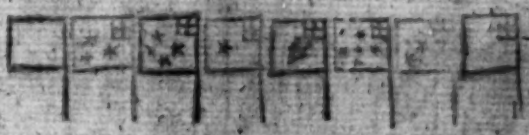
foll

full of action, and therefore ought to be a wise, grave, and able person, and an experienced Souldier, in respect he hath the ordering and disposing of the Divisions and Battalions, according to that form which the General shall command him. And upon all occasions he must be active, and stirring up and down to spie out all advantages which might offend an Enemy; and wisely to foresee all disadvantages that may bring the Troops into any disorder or confusion. He hath absolute command over the three Serjeant-Majors of the *Brigades*, otherwise called the three *Grand Corporals* of the Field, who are to be his assistants, and his mouth, as he is the mouth of the Lord General, or Martial of the Field; and therefore must have a vigilant eye over all things, seeing that the Generals command delivered to him be strictly kept and observed; and withall acquainting and informing the three Serjeant-Majors of the *Brigades* of the Generals pleasure, that they may forthwith put the same into execution.

Now the Method (that I shall observe) shall be according to the form of the former *Brigades*; wherefore in the first place, the Serjeant-Major shall do well to appoint out unto the eldest Serjeant-Major of the *Brigades*, how to draw up that *Brigade* which shall be the Battail, wherein the Lord Generals Regiment, and the Colonels is to be upon the right and left of that *Brigade*, and betwixt them the eldest Colonel, and ninth Colonel, according to this rule of Dignity in the Figure set forth, 4 : 9 : 12 : 1. In the next place, let the next Serjeant-Major of the *Brigades* in seniority draw up that which shall be the Van-guard, and place the second Colonels Regiment upon the right, and the fifth upon the left, and between them the eleventh and eighth Colonels, after this manner of this Figure, 5 : 8 : 11 : 2. Let the last Serjeant-Major draw up that *Brigade* which shall be in the Reer, and let him draw them up after this manner; the third Colonels Regiment upon the right; and upon the left the sixth Colonels; and between them the tenth and seventh Colonels Regiment after this manner, 6 : 7 : 10 : 3: This charge being given by the Serjeant-Major-General unto the three Serjeant-Majors of the three *Tertias* or *Brigades*, how each particular Regiment shall be drawn up, being every one single, and compared alike each to other, being rightly stated according to the rule of Dignity, avoiding thereby confusion and disorder. In the next place, for the better expedition in drawing up the Army, every Serjeant-Major of each *Brigade* draws the former Regiments assigned unto them, unto such place as shall be appointed forth unto them by the Serjeant-Major-General, being helped and assisted by the Field-Officers of the same Regiments, the Serjeant-Major-General being an assistant unto them all, seeing thereby all the Commands of the General rightly observed and fulfilled.

Having drawn up the twelve Regiments according to the former directions, let the Serjeant-Majors of the *Brigades* order them to stand all even abrest according to the form and Figure of that single *Brigade* formerly set down. Wherein to every *Brigade* there will be a Van-guard, Battail, and Reer-guard, and Reserves to them all three. Next, inquiry must be made of the several strengths of the *Brigades*, some of them perhaps having many more Files then the other; for remedy whereof, there must be Files drawn forth (provided there be conveniency of time) from each particular Company and Brigade, and added unto those which shall be weaker, to make their strengths equal alike. Next it lies in the brest of the Lord General, to appoint unto *every* one of these *Brigades* Commanders in chief, there being in every one of them Officers above the three Field-Corporals, or Serjeant-Majors of *Brigades*. Wherefore, it is conceived, that he will appoint the most Honourable men to be Commanders thereof; as first, himself of that *Brigade* which is the Battail in time of fight; the Van-guard to the Martial-General; and the Reer-guard either to the Major-General or Commissary-General. But whosoever the Lord-General shall appoint to be Commanders in Chief, to them the Serjeant-Majors of every particular *Brigade* are to be sub-servants, assisting them in all their Commands. These several Orders and Directions being

thus



together at length, one after another, so that they ma

AN ARMY OF FOOT, O

R THREE SINGLE B

ontaines four and fifty
of Pikes.

This Squad. contains 54 files Musket

4 Capt. 1 Cap. Cap. Lieu.
Lieut. Lieu. bringer up

r-guard.

2 Capt. Majors Lieut. 1 Capt

Lieu. Colonel.

2 Capt.
Lieu. 4 Cap.

This Squad. contains 54 files Musket

This Squadron contains four and fifty Files of Pikes.

L. Col. 5 Cap. 3 Capt. 3 Capt. 4 Capt. 1 C
Lieut. Lieu. Lieut. Lieut. Lie

ntains four and fifty
of Pikes.

This Squad. contains 54 files Musket.

Capt.
ieut.

4 Capt. 1 Capt. Cap. Lieu.
Lieut. Lieut. bringer up

...RIADS, CONSISTING OF 11664 MEN, DRAWN

2 Capt. Majors Lieut.

Lieu. Colonel

2 Capt. Lieut. 4 Cap.

This Squad. contains 54 files Musket.

This Squadron containes four Files of Pikes.

L. Col. 5 Capt. 3 Captain. 3 Captains
Lieut. Lieu. Lieut.

2 Capt. Majors Lieut. 1 Capt.

Lieu. Colonel.

2 Cap. 4 Cap. Lieu.

Colonel.

Capt. 5 Capt. Lieu.

This Squad. contains 54 files Mosk

This Squadron containes four and fifty Files of Pikes.

This Squad. contains 54 files Musker.

L. Col. 5 Cap. 3. Capt. 3 Capt. 4 Capt. 1 Cap. Cap. Lieu.
Lieu. Lieu. Lieut. Lieu. Lieut. bringer up

Battalia.

2 Capt. Majors Lieut.

Lieut. Colonel.

2 Capt. Lieut. 4 Cap.

This Squad. contains 54 files Musket.

This Squadron contains four Files of Pikes.

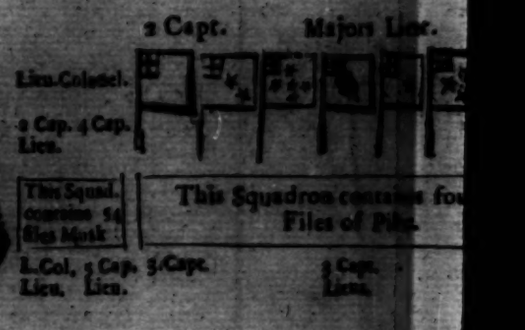
L. Col. 5 Cap. 3 Capt. 3 Capt.
Lieut. Lieut. Lieut.

Sheets be paſted together at length, one after another, ſo that they may appe...

1 Capt.
Colonel.
Capt.
5 Capt. Lieut.
four and fifty
This Squad. contains 54 files Musket
4 Capt. 1 Cap. Cap. Lieu.
Lieut. Lieu. bringer up

2 Capt.
Majors Lieut.
1 Capt.
Lieu. Colonel.
Colonel.
2 Capt.
Lieu.
4 Cap.
Capt.
5 Cap. Lieu
This Squad. contains 54 files Musket
This Squadron contains four and fifty Files of Pikes.
This Squad. contains 54 files Musket
L.Col. 5 Cap. 3 Capt.
Lieut. Lieu.
3 Capt.
Lieut.
4 Capt. 1 Cap. Cap. Lieu.
Lieut. Lieu. bringer up

1 Capt.
Colonel.
Capt.
5 Cap. Lieu.
four and fifty
This Squad. contains 54 files Musket.
4 Capt. 1 Capt. Cap. Lieu.
Lieut. Lieut. bringer up


2 Capt.
Majors Lieut.
Lieu. Colonel.
2 Cap. 4 Cap.
Lieu.
This Squad. contains 54 files Musk
This Squadron contains fou
Files of Pike
L.Col. 5 Cap. 3 Capt.
Lieu. Lieu.
3 Capt.
Lieut.

2 Capt. Majors Lieut.

Lieu. Colonel

2 Capt. Lieut. 4 Cap.

This Squad. contains 54 files Musket.

This Squadron containes fou Files of Pikes.

L. Col. Lieut. 5 Capt. Lieut. 3 Captain. 3 Captains Lieut.

2 Capt. Majors Lieut. 1 Capt.

Lieu. Colonel.

2 Cap. 4 Cap. Lieu.

Colonel.

Capt. 5 Capt. Lieu.

This Squad. contains 54 files Musk

This Squadron containes four and fifty Files of Pikes.

This Squad. contains 54 files Musket.

Van-guard.

L. Col. Lieu. 5 Cap. Lieu. 3 Capt. 3 Capt. Lieut. 4 Capt. Lieut. 1 Cap. Lieu. Cap. Lieu. bringer up

2 Capt. Majors Lieut.

Lieut. Colonel.

2 Capt. Lieut. 4 Cap

This Squad. contains 54 files Musket.

This Squadron contains fou Files of Pikes.

L. Col. Lieut. 5 Cap. Lieut. 3 Capt. 3 Capt. Lieut.

1 Capt.

Colonel.

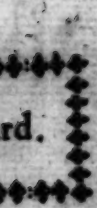
Capt.

5 Capt. Lieu.

four and fifty

This Squad. contains 54 files Musket

4 Capt. Lieut. 1 Cap. Lieu. Cap. Lieu. bringer up



rd.

2. Capt. Majors Lieut. 1 Capt.

Lieu. Colonel.

Colonel

2 Capt. Lieu. 4 Cap.

Capt. 5 Cap. Lieu.

This Squad. contains 54 files Musket

This Squadron contains four and fifty Files of Pikes.

This Squad. contains 54 files Musket

L. Col. 5 Cap. Lieut. Lieu. 3 Capt. Lieut. 3 Capt. Lieut. 4 Capt. Lieut. 1 Cap. Lieu. Cap. Lieu. bringer up

nt. 1 Capt.

Colonel.

Capt.

5 Cap. Lieu.

s four and fifty ikes.

This Squad. contains 54 files Musket.

4 Capt. Lieut. 1 Capt. Lieut. Cap. Lieu. bringer up

thus equally divided amongſt the Commanders of every Brigade, an Army may quickly be brought into any form of Battail to fight againſt an Enemy, according to the ground and ſituation of the place, which may afford the beſt advantages for the ſame.

After this, the General of the Ordnance, his duty and care muſt be in the day of Battail, to ſee that the Ordnance be well placed; for at ſuch time his wiſdom is muſt diſcern'd, keeping (with the aſſiſtance of his Lieutenant) the Train of Artillery together in good order. He muſt have a vigilant eye upon all accidents that may fall out, and make choiſe of ſuch ground for their planting, as the General of the Army and he ſhall think moſt fit and convenient. He muſt be careful that all things be in a readineſs, putting the Maſter, Gunners, Gentlemen of the Ordnance, and Commanders in minde of their duty, that they do their beſt endeavours, and acquit themſelves like men. It is likewiſe partly his charge to ſee that the whole Army be well provided with Ammunition, becauſe the Ammunition marcheth under his Train. He muſt alſo be neer the General of the Army upon all occaſions, to receive his Directions and Commands, and to know from him after what manner he will make his Battail, that he may plant his Ordnance accordingly, finding out Hills and Heights to play over his own men. And when the Enemy ſhall preſent himſelf, and come up to charge, he muſt draw, and plant his Ordnance as neer their Horſe as poſſible may be, to hinder them from breaking in upon the Diviſions of Foot, taking along with him Saylours, and Pioneers, to help to draw up the Ordnance, and ſufficient Guards to defend them.

As concerning the planting of the Ordnance, when the Battalia is drawn up, they may be diſpoſed of ſeveral ways; as ſometimes they are placed upon the head of the Battalia; others again between them, by two and two; and others threes, upon the Flanks and Wings of the Muſketiers. Some are of opinion, that they ought to be planted upon the Flanks, and in the Reer of the Battalia, by leaving a free place for Arms which may give no offence to their own men. But as concerning this laſt way, it might be anſwered, it can no way be expedient; for if an Enemy ſhould perceive that the Frout is left bare without Ordnance, it will give them cauſe to come up with more courage to fall on upon the Charge. Therefore, the beſt way amongſt the ancient experienc'd Souldiers, is, that the Artillery be divided, ſome here, ſome there, both before the Front, between the Battalions, and upon the Flanks, and to be placed ſome 50 or an 100 paces one from another; and then there will be no danger when the Enemy ſhall come up to ſhock to encounter you, or to offend our own men: Eſpecially, when they are faſtned to them by drawing Ropes and Iron Rings, that upon an inſtant they may be removed, and turn'd for the advantage of our own Troops, giving fire as faſt as they can charge and diſcharge againſt the Enemies Troops, it being a matter of great moment for the obtaining of a Victory, and gaining the day from the Enemy.

But that many times the Ordnance cannot be planted in ſuch convenient places as could be wiſhed for, in reſpect an Army may be driven into ſuch places, as the Ordnance muſt be planted according to the beſt ground it will afford, by reaſon of Woods, Hills, or Mariſh-grounds; and ſuch like diſadvantageous places, may be oftentimes met withal; for which no certain Rule may be given, but that the General by his wiſdom and diſcretion may make choice of the beſt advantages, which might annoy an Enemy moſt, and give the leaſt offence to his own men, either by dazling them by the Sun, or by raiſing of the duſt, obſerving the winde which drives the Smoak both of the Ordnance and Small-ſhot full upon them. To conclude, it is conceived the beſt way for every Captain of the Ordnance, and Maſter-Gunner, to uſe ſome light Field-peeces and ſmall Drakes, which upon any occaſion may be removed from one place to another, being with eaſe planted upon ſuch places of advantage, as may moſt annoy the Enemy.

In the next place, 3000 Horſe may be a good proportion for 10000 or 12000 foot,

foot, which ought to be equally divided in their Troops, and placed upon the Flanks of the foot in such good order, as the Troops may come with conveniencie to fight, for the relieving of each other. But in case you shall perceive the Enemies Horse, as sometimes through necessity of ground, or by other political ends, may be interlaced and placed between the Intervals and Divisions of their foot; it will be needful then that we should observe the same form, and likewise have Horse to come forth, and encounter with their Horse, lest they should break in upon our Divisions of Foot; which by this means and good order, may be timely prevented. Next follows the Figure of the Army, as before described, and ordered to be drawn up. Folio 176.

CHAP. XXIII.

The several duties belonging to the Foot in a Regiment, as followeth by degrees from a private Souldier unto a Colonel of the same: and first, of a Private Souldier.

A Private Souldier ought to be very active, not slothful and idle in forming himself of his duty, learning from his Corporal, or other Officers, the true use and well handling of his Arms, always keeping them neat, clean, and well fixed. Upon the beat of the Drum, he is to repair to his Colours, Squadron, or Company; upon the march, he must observe his Leader, and his right and left-hand-men, that he may march streight in file, and even in rank; in time of Exercise he must be silent in the Body, well minding the words of Command and Directions, which are given forth by the Leader. He ought likewise to be well vers'd in all the ordinary words of Command; and to mind the place wherein he stands, that he may the more readier move, and not be to seek at such time when he shall be commanded, whether it be to face, double, counter-march, or wheel. He must inform himself of all the several beats of the Drum; as first, of a Call; second, a Troop; third, a March; fourth, a Preparative; fifth, a Battle or Charge; sixth, a Retreat, and also of the Revalley and the Tatoo.

By the first, he is summoned to hear present Proclamation, or else commanded to repair to his Colours; upon the beat of the second, he is to advance his Arms, and to close in Rank and File, to the distance of Order, and to Troop along unto such places and services, as he shall be commanded unto; upon the hearing of the third, he is presently to shoulder his Arms, and to take his distance of six foot in Rank, and three foot in File; upon the fourth, he is to close both in Rank and File, unto the fighting distance, which is called Order, and to prepare himself for skirmish; upon the beat of the next, he is undauntedly to move forward, boldly stepping in good Order, into the place of his fellow-Souldier that shall happen to fall down dead before him; upon the beat of the last, he must orderly fall back, either for relief or advantage of ground, or other political ends whereby he may draw the Enemy into a snare. The first of the remaining two, gives warning in the morning for some of the Sentinels to fall off, or to be taken in; the latter is used in the night to give notice unto the Souldiers, or others, for their repairing to their several Guards, Watches, and Lodgings. To conclude, a private Souldier ought to avoid all Quarrelling, Mutinies, Swearing, Cursing or Lying, and to be content with his wages; and likewise to be a good Husband in the well managing of his means, keeping himself neat and handsome in his apparel; avoiding drunkenness, and all manner of gaming; truely to serve and fear God, and to be obedient unto all the commands of his superiours, cheerfully going on upon all Duties, and to be loving, kind, and courteous unto all his fellow-Souldiers.

The duty of a Sentinel.

A Sentinel must be very vigilant, carefully casting his eyes about him, and harkning whether he hear the noise or approach of any drawing neer him; which if he perceive, he is presently to command them to stand, presenting his Musket or Pike to their breast, after calling his Corporal for to take the Word, unless

leſs he ſhould be commanded to come in ſilently. He is not to come off until he be relieved by the Corporal or Lanſpaſſador.

His proper Poſture, being a Muskettier, is to have his Musket reſted, and loaded with Powder and Bullet, his Match cockt, and his Pan guarded; being a Pike-man, if he ſtand Sentinel in the night, he muſt have his Pike check'd; if in the day, his Pike ordered: Or it may be a very proper Poſture for a Pike-man to ſtand Sentinel with his Pike in his left-hand, holding it a little below the cheeks thereof, and with his Sword drawn, being held in his right-hand, which I leave to judge, or to be made uſe of according to diſcretion, and as occaſion ſhall require.

Of a Gentleman of a Company.

A Gentleman of a Company ought to have ſuch worth in him as may make him capable to be a File-leader, or Captain of his File; and he more eſpecily above the reſt ought to be well skill'd in all the Poſtures of ſuch Arms he wears; and at convenient times inſtructing and teaching his File in the neat and graceful handling of their Arms. He ought to be of an undaunted courage and gallant reſolution, for the better Example and imitation of the reſt; whoſe worth and valour many times indears them ſo much into the favour of their Commanders, that they raiſe them up to greater places of preferment. In the Low-Countries a Gentleman of a Company hath his full pay, having nothing kept back for after-reckonings, as common private Souldiers have. At his firſt entrance he ſometimes ſtands Sentinel, to inform himſelf of the Duties thereof; but moſt commonly he is placed to be a Sentinel *perdu* in time of imminent danger, either in the Field, or upon approacher. He is to lie *perdu* with his Sword and Piſtol, not removing from his place till he be relieved; nor is he to retreat for one man, but in caſe of more, then he is to fall back to the ſecond; and diſcovering an Enemy, he is to come off betimes, and ſilently to give the Alarum, whereby the *Corps du Guard* or Company may be provided for their own defence. A Gentleman of a Company doth many times go the Round with the Captain of the Watch, or his Fellow-Gentlemen, who are likewiſe Rounders, either in the Field, or in Garriſon; and do give the Corporals of the Guards the Word, charging the Sentinels to look well about them. To conclude, he ought truely to love, reſpect, and obey his Captain, and to ſtick cloſe unto him, vindicating him upon juſt occaſions, when he ſhall be wronged and injured by any Mutinies of the common Souldiers, or others.

Of a Barber-Chyrurgion.

IN every Company there ought to be a Barber-Chyrurgion for the trimming of the Souldiers, who ought likewiſe to have ſome skill in Chyrurgery; that when the Souldiers are upon the Watches and Guards, where imminent danger may be, he may be then at hand, to be ready in the abſence of the Chyrurgion of the Regiment to bind up, and dreſs the hurt and wounded men. He is free from duties belonging to the Company; and in ſome places, is allowed to be an Officer in the Liſt of their Armies, which I conceive it ought ſo to be, in reſpect they allow but of one Chyrurgion to a Regiment; and if it ſhould happen many to be wounded, as oftentimes in field-fights there are, one man is not able ſcarce in three days to bind up the wounds, and dreſs the ſores of them that are maimed. And therefore it concerns every Captain to be provided, and to have in the abſence of the Chyrurgion, a Barber-Chyrurgion attending on his Company.

Of a Clerk of a Company.

HIs carriage ought to be very juſt and honeſt; his chiefeſt duty is to keep the Muſter-Roll, and to have it ready upon all occaſions for the entring of his men upon the Muſter-Roll, and Pay-bill. He is many times intruſted to receive the Service-mony of the Company, and pays ſuch monies unto the Souldiers as ſhall be ordered him from his Captain to pay. He muſt inquire out in their

Quarters where they lie, and duly for to pay them, and every pay-day to deliver up a true bill, giving an account unto his Captain of all such moneys he hath either received or paid forth.

Of a Drum-Major.

THere ought to be in every Regiment a Drum-Major, being skilful in his Profession, instructing the others in the true beating of a March, with all other points of VVar. A Drum-Major must likewise be well skill'd in several Languages and Tongues, and to be wise and courteous when he shall be imploy'd or sent to an Enemy: He is in a discreet manner upon the marching of a Regiment to order part of the Drums where they shall beat, seeing them truely and duly relieved by the others for the better performance of their service. For upon the march, if all the Captains Drums should beat together, it would quickly tire them out; therefore for their ease, it is his place and duty to order them according to discretion to take their turns to beat, and to be relieved by each other. He is, moreover, to take into his charge such Drums as shall be brought in from the Enemies by their Drummers, when they come to ransom their prisoners; and upon their return to deliver them again unto them. He ought to be lodged neer the Serjeant-Major, in respect he is to give instructions to the rest of the Drummers, and may upon fail of their Duties give them correction.

Of the Drummers to a private Company.

EVery Captain ought to have two good Drummers, that knows how to beat all the several points of War before mentioned. It is likewise expedient that he should be a good Linguist, in respect sometimes he may be sent unto an Enemy for the ransoming of Prisoners: His duty is, coming to the Camp or Garrison of an Enemy, having his Generals Pass in his Hat, to beat a Call, till he is fetcht in; and because he shall not discover the weaknes of Guards, Works or Trenches, he is led blind-fold, and so carried to the Commander, and place where his Prisoners are: VVith whom (after he hath ransomed them) he is to return to his own Quarters, giving an account of such things he hath seen or heard, which may prove advantageous to his own party, or of any other thing he had opportunity by their neglect to take notice of.

Of a Gentleman of Arms.

HIs Duty is to see that the Souldiers keep their Arms neat and clean, and that they be well fixed; and if any thing be amiss or broken, he is to have them carried to the Armourers to be repaired. And if any Souldier shall be sick, dead, or have leave to return to his own Country, he is to bring his Arms to his own Lodging, there preserving and keeping them clean, until he shall have occasion to deliver them to some other newly entertained. He is likewise to mark and figure the Arms of the Company, and to preserve and keep a List what number of figure each Souldier should bear upon his Arms. He is likewise to keep the Powder, Bullet and Match, and to deliver it forth upon occasions to the Corporals, or Lanspassadoe.

Of a Lanspassadoe.

HIs Duty is concerned in the absence of his Corporal to officiate in all things belonging unto his place, and is at all times to be an assistant unto him, for his ease and help-mate upon all occasions, for the better managing of his place; and many times they are Rounders and Sentinel Perdues in time of great necessity.

The duty of a Corporal.

THe Corporals of a Company are not tyed to a set number, but to be ordered according to the several strengths and divisions of the same, for each to take his

his charge and care of every Squadron thereof. And unto each of them there is a Lanspassadoe for an assistant; for their Rule of Dignity, I conceive, it makes not much more matter then to make them the right-hand File-leader in every particular division; but if any will be so curious to order them according to that, let them apply themselves unto the former Rules for directions to the same. The Corporals duty in his Squadron is to teach and instruct them in the use of the Pike and Musket, and to have a Roll and List of his men in his Division or Squadron. And when a Souldiers name is crossed out, he is to give notice unto his Serjeant; and when a new one shall supply his place, his care must be to instruct and enable him in the Postures of such Arms as he shall bear. Being with his Squadron upon his Guard, he is to provide them with Wood, Coal, Candle and light. Having an Out-guard, his care must be to strengthen it, his little *Corps du Guard* and Sentinels must be forth according to the avenews or comings on of the Enemy, whereby he prevents their cutting off or surprisal; the negligence whereof proves both dangerous to themselves, and the whole Army. Wherefore it behoves him to be very careful and vigilant to visit them, after giving them an especial charge to be both faithful and careful in the great trust reposed in them. He must likewise preserve and keep the Word constant in his memory; when the Captain of the Watch goes the first Round, he shall with his Sword drawn against his brest give it him, and receive such Orders from him as he shall command him; but afterwards when the Round shall come again, he shall cause the Rounders or Gentlemen (with his Sword drawn) to give the Word to him before they pass. He ought never to go alone, being called forth by the Sentinel, but to have a Guard of three or four Musketiers along with him, selected out of his *Corps du Guard*. He must advise his Sentinels how to demean themselves upon the discovery of an Enemy, either to give an Alarum, or else to give notice without making a noise. And if upon his Guard he shall either observe, or be advertised by his Sentinels of the approach of the Enemy, then he is to have his men in readiness with Bullets in their Muskets, and their Matches lighted; himself secretly coming in, giving intelligence unto his Captain, or other Superiour Officer, whereby they may all be in a readiness before the Alarum be given. He is likewise to distribute Victual, Powder, Bullet and Match, unto his Squadron, and to take notice of the best experienced men, and accordingly to imploy them upon action upon the Watches. He must cause respect to be given to the *Corps du Guard*; and silence to be kept, whether it be about the Walls or Gates, that so the noise may not hinder the hearing of the advertisement from the Sentinels. He is likewise to have an eye to their lives and manners, and to take care of the Baggage and Money of such as are hurt or sick, and to be in his own carriage sober, wise and discreet, for the avoiding ill example unto others.

Of the Martial of a Regiment.

HE ought to take into his custody all persons committed unto his charge by the chief Officers of the Regiment; and if they be called to justice, he is to bring them to the Martial-General, who are to be carried from thence to the Council of War. It is also his care to see that all Women, Boyes, Servants, Bread, and Aquavita-sellers, belonging to the Regiment, do march in the Reer, and not before, or upon the Flanks. He is likewise to set such prizes upon Beer and Victuals, as the Lord-Martial, or Serjeant-Major-General shall appoint; which Order he shall receive from the Provost-Martial of the Army, and to see it duly executed within the Circuit of the Regiment: And that the Sutlers do not sell their Beer and Victuals above the set rate, lest they grate upon the Souldiers. After the Captain of the Watch hath gone the first Round, he is to see that the Sutlers keep no tiping or disorder in the night, but make them put out their Candle-light and Fires. During the time of Divine Service, he is to go the Round, for fear any disorders should be committed in the Quarters.

Of a Quarter-Maſter.

IF the Regiment be marching with the Army, (and not alone) he is then every evening to attend upon the Quarter-Maſter-General, to receive his directions, and to take the place, ground, and houſes, appointed by him, for the Quarter and Lodging of the Regiment; who preſently is to acquaint and advertiſe his Colonel of the ſame, and after to follow his charge. Firſt, he appointeth or prepareth the Colonels Lodging, and other Officers of the Field, in the Center or midſt of all the Quarters; and neer them himſelf, and all the other Officers of the Staff. After, according to the ſeniority of the Captains, and their marchings, to diſtribute forth their Quarters as may be deſigned. Having thus far acted through the help of the Conſtables and Head-boroughs of thoſe places where the Regiment is to Quarter; and having drawn forth their Billets in a good and orderly way, he is before the Regiments entring the Quarters, to deliver the ſame to the Colonel, or other Field-Officers of that Regiment; and they to deliver it to the reſt of the Captains, to direct them to their Lodgings, with the particular Souldiers of their Company. And during the time that he is about the viſiting the diſtribution of the Lodgings, all the Troops are to keep watch round about the place, and to ſend out to diſcover: he muſt alſo be informed of the Lodgings of the whole Army, to know whom to give, or whom to receive Supplies in caſe of neceſſity.

If the Quarter be in the open field, the Quarter-Maſter-General ſhall appoint to each Quarter-Maſter the place and ground which he ſhall take, which he is to diſtribute to the Serjeants of every Company of the Regiment, who are to aſſiſt him in taking the depth, length and breadth of their Quarters, with the diſtances of the Alarum-place between the head of the Quarters and the Trench, and the true diſtance of the Streets betwixt the in-getting of each Captains particular Company.

When an Army or Regiment ſhall ſit down before a Town, or forraging place, to beſiege it, they are imployed ſometimes to be Forragers to fetch in proviſion for the Army, or particular Regiments: Which when they ſhall be required, they ought to have ſufficient Convoys and Guards, both of Infantry and Cavalry to ſecure them; who are to be commanded by able Officers; and the Provoſt-Martial, or one of his Aſſiſtants is to go along with them, to puniſh ſuch as are exorbitant, or do ſtraggle. It will be expedient to the Regiment, that the Quarter-Maſter upon the Service may be imployed twice in a week, to bring in a freſh Victual to the Souldiers; but not to go twice to one place, leſt they be diſcovered by an Enemy, and be way-laid by their Forces, who may ſometimes prove ſtronger then themſelves, to prevent, or to cut them off by the way, laying of them ſecretly in ſome Ambuſhments: Which being truely conſidered of, care may be taken accordingly of Supplies in other remote places, free from the danger of the Enemy. To conclude, a Quarter-Maſter ought to carry himſelf honeſtly and carefully in his place, and to be well skill'd in the Art of Mathematicks, that he may the better give Directions for fortifying and meaſuring of ground, quartering of his whole Regiment, and in hutting of the particular Souldiers.

The duty of a Serjeant.

HE that is a Serjeant to a Company, ought to be well skill'd in the Poſtures, and all Military Motions, whereby in the firſt place he may endeavour to correct the errours of ſuch who handle not the Arms in a handſome, or a ſerviceable way. And ſecondly, that he may be helpful to his Captain, or other Superiour Officer. In time of his Exerciſe, his duty is to draw forth the Files according to ſuch depths as ſhall be appointed unto him by his Captain, or other Superiour Officer, and to order them in the drawing up, and joyning together the Souldiers unto ſuch places of honour as they ſhall direct him unto. In a ſingle Company he leadeth oftentimes a Diviſion, but ought not always there to march, in reſpect he is concerned to ſee that the Souldiers march even in their Ranks at their diſtance of Order in File, and open Order in Rank. To which pur-

purpoſe, he ought many times to be upon the Flanks, and perceiving any Souldier out of order, he may caſt in his Halbert between their Ranks, to cauſe him to march even abreſt with his right and left-hand-men. He is likewiſe either in Field or Garriſon to lead his Squadron to their Guard, and to carry to priſon ſuch Offendours as his Captain or other Superiour Officer ſhall commit to the Provoſt-Martial. He is to ſee that the Muskettiers in time of skirmiſking preſent all even abreſt, with their Matches all cocke, giving fire all togeather in good Order; and to direct them how to fall off, and rally again in the Reer of their own Diviſions. His duty likewiſe is to fetch Ammunition, Powder, Match, and all other Materials for the Company. He is, moreover, every particular evening to attend at the place of Parade, or at the Majors Lodging, to fetch the Word, and carry it to his Captain, Lieutenant, Enſign, and Corporals; and likewiſe as ſoon as he is come unto his Guard, he muſt direct the Corporals where to ſet out the Perdues and Sentinels, and how to order his Watch. He muſt likewiſe make Rounds; and if he finde a Sentinel aſleep in the Field, he is to commit him to the hand of Juſtice. And thus much concerning the duty of a Serjeant.

Of an Enſign.

AN Enſign being a Commiſſion-Officer, in the abſence of his Captain and Lieutenant, is Commander in chief of the Company, and ought to march upon the head of the ſame, leading them with a Half-pike. His Captain and Lieutenant being preſent, and upon a Stand, his Colours ought to reſt upon his ſide, being held by his right or left-hand, and unfurled; upon the March, his Colours ought to be ſhouldered, taking up the corner-end of them in his right-hand, and to let them be half flying; the Pikes and Muskets all conforming unto the ſame Poſture. Marching through a City, for the more grace, his Colours may be wholly flying, being advanced and held up by his right-hand, or reſting upon his right ſide. He ought to be a proper man, grave, valiant and diſcreet, and to be well skill'd in the Poſtures of the Pike; in reſpect he leads them, and they expect from him to be taught the Poſtures thereof. He ought to be well skill'd in all the lofty Figures of the diſplaying of the Colours above the head, and to make uſe of them according to diſcretion and command; which is not onely a healthfull exerciſe to his body, but alſo moſt becoming to him, or any other Gentleman or Commander whatſoever, that ſhall ſometimes make uſe of the ſame; although condemned through ſloth and ignorance by others, who will not take the pains to learn it. An Enſign upon a Troop, lodging the Colours, or in time of skirmiſhing, may fold them up, and retreat into the ſecond Rank for the ſecuring of his Colours, which he ought to ſtick by, and not to ſtir from them at ſuch a time, although he hazardeth his laſt drop of blood, or makes them his winding-ſheet. When the General ſhall paſs by, or any ſuch man of worth, he ought a little to vail his Colours, inclining the head, or narrow end thereof, a little downward; but not to bow his knee, or uncover his head. He may ſometimes for his eaſe or recreation upon the March, requeſt ſome Gentleman of knowing truſt of the Pikes to carry his Colours for him, until ſuch time as he ſhall come again for to take them. In the abſence of his Lieutenant, when his Captain ſhall exerciſe the Company, he may ſtick his Colours in the ground, or deliver them to ſome Gentleman of the Pikes, and fall down himſelf in the Reer with a Half-pike or Cane, there to be an aſſiſtant to his Captain in ſupplying the Lieutenants place, except his Captain ſhould command him to the contrary. He ought to have a Guard along with him, as well to the lodging of his Colours, as to any other place. He ought to perform all courteous offices for the Souldiers unto his Captain, which will gain him both love and reputation amongſt them, they thereby better reſpecting him, and more courageouſly following of him.

Of a Lieutenant.

HE that is a Lieutenant to a Company, ought to be a good and able Souldier, and well to underſtand the Duty of a Captain; in reſpect that in his abſence he is as Captain and Commander in chief over them. He is likewiſe to receive

ceive all Orders, Charges, and Commissions from his Captain, assuming no authority unto himself; but in the absence of his Captain he is to see all such Orders he hath received duly executed, for the better ease unto him. He is likewise at such times frequently to exercise the Company in all their Military Motions, Skirmishings, and False-firings in the pan. He is to hold the Serjeants and Corporals strictly to their duty, causing them to provide all things necessary for the Company, and to be assistants unto him where he shall see cause. He is to teach and instruct the Souldiers in the use of their Arms, and sometime for their ease, he may command every File-leader to draw forth his File, and to shew them their postures. By which means he shall do such good service to his Captain, that when he shall exercise them himself, he may find them more apter and readier to fulfil his Commands; at which time the Lieutenant ought to be in the Reer, and to see all things there truly executed according to the Captains commands. He is in time of danger and great importance to advise with his Captain about the welfare of the Company; for knowing his Captains intentions and purposes beforehand, he may be the better provided to withstand the furious onset of the Enemy. He ought to have the Ensign, and all other Officers of the Company as near him as may be, there being often-times urgent business to make use of them as occasion shall require. He must neither cashiere nor punish any man in the presence of his Captain, but ought to make him acquainted therewith, that he may punish the offender by committing him either to prison, or cause him to give recompence to the party wronged. To conclude, he ought to know how far his power doth extend, either in the presence or absence of his Captain, always demeaning himself so, that he may gain the love of his whole Company, by acting those things amongst them as may be just and honest.

Of a Captain.

HE that is a Captain of a Company, ought in respect he leadeth the same, and is Chief, to appoint unto the Officers their several places, what Divisions they shall lead, and where they shall march, and according to the number of Files to make his Divisions answerable thereto, by dividing his Musketiers as near as he can, the one half upon the right of the Pikes, and the other upon the left: for they being the Flankers, ought equally to be ballanced; but if there be an odd File, it ought to be contrived, and carried to the right. In the Van, Battail, or Reer, he must, according to the number of his men, order his Officers places, and draw them off accordingly in as equal a way as they will afford. He is, as well as his own, to know all the several duties of his Officers, and to be a good Posture-man himself, that when he sees any of his Souldiers handling their Arms in an undecent and sluvenly manner, he may the better reprove them for the same. And although many Captains regardeth them not, but leaveth them to be instructed by the inferiour Officers; yet it is a great deal of honour to him, when his Souldiers shall be taught by himself, they more cheerfully and confidently marching along with him, when as they perceive that he is throughly knowing in all things belonging to his charge. He shall do well to exercise his Company sometimes himself, teaching them how to fight upon all occasions, whether it be to Front, Reer, or Flanks, or upon surprise of an *Ambuscado*, or any other disadvantage which may befall them, informing them how to fall off and rally again in good order. And at such times he must couragiously and wisely behave himself, and incourage his Souldiers of hopes of Victory, casting off all appearances of fear or danger whatsoever, cheerfully animating his Souldiers to fall on, taking care, and making much of them, and not to forsake them until such time they may be relieved by others. He is to have a fatherly care of his Souldiers, timely providing for the maimed, wounded, and sick, such helps and remedies as their present conditions requires. He must likewise see that there be no want of Victual, Arms, or Ammunition. He ought not to be covetous, nor keep back his Souldiers pay, but to see them duly paid, visiting and relieving them according to their several wants

and

and neceſſities. His care muſt be to execute Juſtice, appeaſe quarrels, puniſh offenders; by doing whereof, he will maintain the honour and dignity of his place. He ought to carry a very even hand over his Souldiers, and to be very courteous and kind unto them; yet with that reſtriction of familiarity, that he come not under contempt. And again, he muſt not be too rigid and harſh, caning or beating them without juſt cauſe, leſt he incurre their hatred, who ſecretly, or in time of Battail will ſeek to be revenged of him, endeavouring to kill him, before their enemy; therefore he ought to be wiſe and diſcreet in his commands and carriage towards them. His place of marching with his Company, is ſome ſix foot before the firſt Diviſion of Muſketiers; but if his Company be drawn up, he is either upon a Stand, or upon the March, to be on the head of the Pikes, ſix foot before the Enſign. In time of Battail, although he leads his men up firſt againſt the Enemy, yet he is not always tied to be in the Front, having often juſt occaſion to remove down into the Reer, Midſt, or Flanks, carefully caſting his eye upon all parts of the Body, thereby preventing the leaſt error or neglect of his Souldiers, directing them what to do, keeping them in good order as long as occaſion ſhall require. Moreover, he ought to be very religious, temperate, and diſcreet, faithful in his truſt, valiant in the field againſt the face of his enemy, and being beſieged in either Town or Fort, (for to preſerve his honour) never give his conſent for the yielding it up, until it be paſt hope, that there is no poſſibility to hold it out any longer.

Of a Serjeant-Major.

His duty is every morning and evening, or upon any other occaſion, to attend upon the General, Martial of the Field, or Serjeant-Major-General of the Army, to receive his Orders how, or in what manner the Regiment ſhall march, whether in a ſingle Battalion, or elſe in two, to be joined with others. After which he gives order accordingly unto the Captains how to draw up their Companies and orders them accordingly. At which time of embattelling or marching, he ought to be as near the midſt of the Regiment as he can, for the better regulating of the ſame. He is to place all the Officers according to their Dignity where they are to lead, and where to bring up, and which men they ſhall take charge of to fight, cauſing the Drum-Major (after they are all drawn up) and the other Drummers to beat a March, and to move all at one inſtant, as occaſion ſhall require. He ought to make all the Diviſions as near equally alike as poſſible he can. He muſt likewiſe be well verſt in the ſeveral drawing up of Regiments, with their various forms of Battail, that according to the condition of the place, ground, number of men, and Orders received from the Major-General, or Majors of the Brigades; he may not ſhew himſelf a Novice, or one that is to ſeek: nor ought he to go dully or ſlothfully upon his charge or place, but to be very ready, quick, and nimbly performing with much eaſe and readineſs his Battalions and grand Diviſions. In their drawings up he may be permitted to have Pen, Ink, and Paper for to take an accompt of the ſeveral ſtrengths of the Captains Companies, and to order his men accordingly, and ought to give unto all the Officers of the Regiment notes in writing of their ſeveral charges and places. In time of fight, or otherwiſe marching with the Regiment, he is to be on horſe-back, in regard he is the eyes, hands, and feet thereof: in time of Battail he is to ſee every Officer to perform his charge, and Souldier his duty, forcing and compelling them forward, if in caſe they turn their backs. He is alſo to diſtribute to the Captains and other Officers ſuch Orders as he ſhall receive from his Colonel or other Superior Officer. In marching with the Regiment, not alone, but with the Army, he muſt know from the General, Martial, or Major-General, whether the Regiment be to march in the Van-guard, Battail, or Reer. He ought to have ſome knowledge or information of the Country, whether it be long or ſtreight, thereby judging how to order his marching ſo, as he may not be diſturbed by the enemies Horſe, or Artillery. Being troubled with Baggage, if there be any difficult paſſage, he ought to be there preſent to prevent ſuch diſorders as may happen; giving directions for their placing and marching, as they may not be any hinderance to

the

the Regiment, putting them in order again before the Regiment shall enter into their Quarters; at which time he may give license to the Captains and their Enfigns to take their lodgings, excepting only those who are appointed for Guardians, who must enter the *Corps du guard*, and place their Sentinels until such time as they shall be relieved by others.

Now if a Regiment be to be quartered or lodged either in the Field, or under shelter; if in the Field, he must cause it to be barricado'd, or intrenched by the Waggons, or other defences of the Field; after which he is to place his *Corps du guard* round about the Quarters, and the Sentinels at so near a distance, that they may hear one the other speak, being about 80, or 100 paces off from the *Corps du guard*, being placed double, a Pike and a Musket, and five paces from them, other single Sentinels are to be placed, which are called *Perdues*. And in case of *Alarm*, the Sentinel *Perdue* shall retreat to the double Sentinels, and in case of necessity, all together, having given fire, are to retreat to the *Corps du guard*. He must likewise at divers hours of the night visit the *Corps du guard*, and if an *Alarm* be given in the Field, he is to betake himself to the *Alarm*-place of the Regiment, and there to form his Battalion, and to send men to double the Guards on that part where the *Alarm* was given, and to give notice thereof to his Colonel, or other Superior Officer, if they be present, of what passeth. The Enfigns ought not to retreat, unless their Colonel or he give leave: no Order at any time ought to be altered, but by him, in respect he giveth none but such as he receiveth from the Colonel. It is his duty to speak for Ammunition, as Powder, Bullets, Match; and for Victuals, if there shall be any want in the Regiment, which provisions ought to be delivered unto him, and he to see it equally distributed unto the Companies according unto the proportion given out. And likewise he is to give Order what proportion or number of workmen, or commanded men, shall be drawn forth to work.

If under shelter, then he is to view the place, both within and without, appointing the places for the *Corps du guards* and Sentinels, and the way of the Rounders, that it be free. It will be expedient for him to chuse the *Alarm*-place, whither the Companies upon the Alarum given are to repair, being the Rendezvous for the whole Regiment; being careful to place sufficient Guards, both upon the Walls, and about the Gates, for their more security. Which being ended, he may give leave to the Captains to go to their Lodgings, and several Quarters, there to remain until they shall be called upon Duties; for the due performance whereof, he is to cause them to cast Lots, whereby they may know what part of the Walls may fall to their turn. He is to command the Captains to enter the Guards about ten or eleven a clock in the morning; he is likewise to open and shut the Gates, at the rising or setting of the Sun, and to place the Watches upon the Walls presently upon the shutting of the Gates, and to relieve them upon the opening thereof.

And as he doth receive his directions for marching, imbattelling, viewing of ground, and placing of Guards, from the Serjeant-Major-General, or Serjeant-Major of that Brigade: so he is to deliver them over to the Captains and Officers of that Regiment, and to call upon them to whom it appertains, to see them duly executed. In the presence of his Colonel, and Lieutenant-Colonel, he is to be an assistant unto them, in seeing all orders and directions duly performed; and in their absence, he hath the same authority and command as they. He ought after he hath received the Word and Orders from the Serjeant-Major-General, or Serjeant-Major of the Brigade, he presently delivers them to his Colonel and Lieutenant-Colonel; and afterwards to the Serjeants of every Company, drawn in a Ring, according to the Seniority of their Captains, which are to come, and attend upon him for the same. In the absence of his Superiour Officers, he giveth the Word himself; every night he is to visit all the Guards of the Regiment, commanding them duly to keep the turns of their Watches and Marches, seeing that one Captains Company perform not more duty than another, to the end, that both the honour and labour may be equally divided among

so

ſo he may exerciſe the whole Regiment, being thereunto required by his Colonel, or Lieut. Colonel, in all their Diſtances, Facings, Doublings, Wheelings, and Falſe firings; or in their abſence, of himſelf he hath full power ſo to do. To conclude, he ought to be well grounded in all *Military Affairs*, and to be both wiſe and valiant.

Of a Lieutenant-Colonel.

HE that is a Lieutenant-Colonel to a Regiment, hath a very honourable place, having power and command over all the Regiment in the abſence of his Colonel, and may alſo at ſuch time exerciſe the Regiment in all the Military Motions, and is to lead the Regiment upon the head thereof: but when his Colonel is preſent, he bringeth up the Reer, if they march in one Diviſion; but if in two, in ſome places he leadeth the ſecond, as his Colonel doth the firſt; or if in three, as formerly is ſhewen, he commands the Van-guard, the Colonel the Battail, and the Major the Reer-guard. His place is not of ſo great pains and toyl as the Majors is; therefore he ought in the drawing up of the Regiment to be helpful and aſſiſting unto him in that particular, and in all others where he ſhall think fit. To conclude, the greateſt affairs of the Regiment being carried forth by the Major, there is the leſs remaining to be ſpoken concerning him, but that he ſee all things duly obſerved throughout the Regiment, according unto ſuch orders received from thoſe which are above him.

Of a Colonel.

IT concerneth every Colonel to take care that his Companies be full and compleat (if it may be) that they be well provided of Arms, and to take cognizance what Exerciſes are continually performed by them, communicating Orders, and commanding all Officers of his Regiment what is to be performed by each Company reſpectively, whenſoever they ſhall happen to be upon their March.

In the Head of his Regiment is his moſt honourable and proper place, and there he ought to be moſt frequent. He is to be ſubſervient to the Lord General, Lord Martial, and Serjeant-Major-General of the Field, to whom he is to pay like reſpect and obſervance as he himſelf expecteth, (and that juſtly) from all inferiors to him. For from thoſe his ſuperior Officers, by him are received in charge all ſuch Orders as refer to the place of *Alarms*, *Marchings*, *Imbattellings*, *Guards*, or *Convoys*. Furthermore, it is requiſite that every Colonel ſhould acquaint himſelf at leaſt once every week, how and in what manner the Souldiers of his Regiment have deported themſelves in their ſeveral Quarters, by a due and ſtrict examination of the qualities of all ſuch offences as have occurred, and been committed by the ſeveral and Diſtinct Souldiers under his command, hereby preparing every ſeveral miſdemeanor for a readier hearing before a *Council of War*, or *Court-Martial*; and this is eaſily effected by convening the Captains, or other Officers under them, at ſuch convenient times as may ſuit with his occaſions; every Colonel being bound to make his appearance at each *Council of War*, as Aſſiſtant to the Lord Martial, and Preſident of the ſaid Council, for the hearing and determining of all ſuch propoſitions and matters in queſtion relating to the Army.

In all matters of Advice and Counſel, but more eſpecially when any Straragem, Siege, or intended Battail is in agitation to be put in action, the Colonel ever as one of the primary Field-Officers is ſummoned to conſult with the General, and with all freedom to deliver his opinion in all things that ſhall be there diſcuſſed, for the beſt advantage (as he ſhall conceive) for the deſigns in hand, how weighty and important ſoever, and to be ready to go upon any ſuch ſervice as ſhall be caſt into his charge to be executed by the major part of the ſaid Council, and to expreſs his obedience to his General, although it be a ſervice that correſpond not with his own opinion at the firſt, but being cleared by the larger number to be more conducing to the good of the Deſign, couragiouſly to undertake it, and faithfully to perform it.

In the quartering of his own Regiment, which is always ordered for Quarter in two grand Diviſions, regard is to be had that his own Lodgings be ever taken up in the moſt equal place between his grand Diviſions, that ſo he may with more facility and celerity diſpenſe and import his commands to either Party.

What commands ſoever ſhall deſcend unto him in charge from his ſuperior Officers, as relating to the Guards, diſpoſing of Marchings, appointing Imbattellings, ordering of Quarters, &c. he is carefully to ſee executed. He muſt do juſtice unto all without partiality, ſo far as he exceed not his proper Authority, & at all times to be diligent in ſuppreſſing of Mutinies, even in their firſt growth, by a diſcreet puniſhment of the principal offenders, for prevention of further miſchief and inconvenience.

Of Guides.

MAps, with the right uſe and knowledge of them, are great helps towards the finding out of the beſt and moſt convenient ways. Skilful and expert Inhabitants of the Countrey, are moſt proper to be elected for Guides; and it is neceſſary, for their better encouragement, and the Armies ſudden and neceſſary uſe of them, to have them liſted in Souldiers pay. For the finding out of the fitteſt and ableſt perſons for this employment, it is moſt eſpecially the duty of the Waggon-Maſters, who are to ſee and enquire certainly, that they be men known and practiſed in all poſſible By-paths, Croſs-ways, &c. That they be able to give an accompt of the diſtance of places, of the evenneſs and ſtraightneſs of them, whether they be plain or crooked, hilly or ſtony, and difficult for paſſage; what Rivers, Hedges, Ditches and Bridges lye in the way, and which way (if there ſhall be ſeveral ways) is the ſafeſt and ſhorteſt, which the nearer or farther to or from the Enemies Quarters, which more probable for their approaches, as likewiſe for Quarter; what Forrage, what Water is to be had, and how convenient the way is for Baggage. If it ſhall happen that theſe Guides may be choſen partly out of the Souldiers, and partly from the Country-men, and ſo any ſcruple, jar, or difference happen in opinion, ſuch Officers and others as are beſt skill'd in thoſe parts and places, are either to reconcile the difference, or from the moſt probable intelligence, to conclude upon the moſt convenient paſſages. In reſpect of the danger and great hazards, if not utter ruine, that the Guides ſometimes do, and often may draw the Souldiers into by treachery and falſe play, they are many times cauſed to ride haltered about the neck, to put them in mind of capital puniſhment, if they ſhall miſlead the party they guide; but in caſe they diſcharge their truſt faithfully and ably, they ought to be as well rewarded for their encouragement, as otherwiſe to be puniſhed for the terrour of others.

Of Scouts.

AN active Enemy is always watchful, and diligent to apprehend every opportunity that may make for his advantage, and therefore it concerns every Commander by way of *Counter-mine*, as it were, to be careful that he rightly and fully inform himſelf of their ways and courſes, for prevention of his own danger, in caſe of ſudden aſſaults, and the better infeſting of his enemy. And to this end, he muſt make choice of ſuch as are approved for their valour and fidelity, diſcretion and vigilancy, not probable to be corrupted with gain, or daunted through fear. Theſe men are not only to take direct, plain, or high ways, but alſo by private and unſuſpected paſſages, and ſcouring as they ſcout all places whatſoever that are acceſſible; and when they have made diligent obſervation in all places, to inform of nothing but what they can give the ocular proof of, leſt by their errour and miſtake, the whole Army poſſibly may be led into an irreparable ruine; and whoſoever is the Conduct or Officer of theſe Scouts (for one, and an able one they muſt have always with them) muſt be exceeding careful of his reputation, that he inform of nothing more then what he can juſtifie from his own eyes or ears; and if he inform further, to inform them alſo, that that information is but from report, that it may be conſidered of accordingly, and his repute preſerved intire.

Of Spies.

OF all men, theſe are at all times neceſſary for an Army, and in all Armies of all men they will deſerve to be moſt certainly & liberally rewarded, to the intent that they may at all times cheerfully and faithfully undertake any imployment of the greateſt truſt, hazard, or danger. And he that will make choice of able and truſty men in this kind, muſt after diligent obſervation, and weighing of their diſpoſitions

and

and courage, ſelect them out of his own Souldiers, who under pretence of ſome diſcontent for want of pay, &c. may thereby with leſs ſuſpition receive entertainment from the enemy, and (if it be poſſible) to be lifted with the Horſe, whereby they may gain the fairer opportunities in Field or Garriſon, to give certain intelligence of all Deſigns and Occurrences in the enemies Quarters.

Before their departure from you, let them take their ſeveral inſtructions (for the more you have, the better, if they be deſign'd for ſeveral places, and unknown unto each other) both for times & places of conveyance, which places muſt be ſtrictly obſerved, & duly ſearched for ſuch informations, as your *Spies* ſhall convey thither; and thither let your anſwers & advices be reconveyed for their further inſtruction.

Sometimes there may ariſe matters of ſuch importance and conſequence, that it will not only be convenient to certifie by Letter, but moſt neceſſary to make appearance in perſon, and there to conſult and adviſe together, if perhaps the enemy ſhall be reſolved to fall upon ſome of the oppoſite Quarters ſuddainly, &c.

For Curſary Spies, and preſent Intelligence, the people of meaneſt rank and quality are the fitteſt Inſtruments; as common Peaſants, Pedlars, Sellers of Strong-waters, or Tobacco, and the like, who may paſs unſuſpected, and with more ſecurity effect your purpoſe.

There are yet another ſort of Spies of another nature, who are denominated double, who being choſen to this Office upon great experience of their truſt and conſtancy, may in ſome caſes be allowed to inform the enemy aright, in ſome ſuch affairs of yours, as may not be prejudicial to you, but to inſinuate and win belief upon the contrary party; and hereupon let them ſecure themſelves into the private ſervice of ſome of their Prime Officers, whence they ſhall (as being better acquainted) more eaſily diſcover, and more certainly inform of the enemies proceedings and intentions.

CHAP. XXIV.

Of Military Watches.

HOw neceſſary theſe Watches are in all Armies, is evident to all men; the grand and chiefeſt care whereof, for order and direction, reſteth in the Serjeant-Major, who iſſueth out ſuch precepts therein to the Captains or Companies, as he himſelf before received from his ſuperior Officer; & according to the ſaid precepts received, whether it be in Garriſon or Field, the work and duty required is to be performed either by Squadrons or ful Companies, having reſpect unto the ſtrength or weakneſs of the place to be guarded, and in ſuch places as are moſt likely for the Enemy to make his approaches in, and that there they be careful to fortifie the Guard above other places of leſs concernment; which muſt be obſerved by the Major, in ſurveying the Guards, and Guard-places, in his walking of the grand Round, and ſo, according as his diſcretion ſhall ſee fit, to take from the ſtronger places of Guard ſuch Souldiers as may ſupply the defects of the weaker.

The appointment of particular Guards unto particular Captains, is in the power of the *Major*; or otherwiſe, he commandeth the *Serjeant* of each *Company* to attend him at his Quarters at any hour of the day, as he ſhall think fit, where every one that is to do duty upon the Guard that night, taketh his lot in order, (which lots are ſhuffled together in an Hat) which directeth him upon what Guard to attend that night. This being done, all the Serjeants that have their direction for the duty of the Guard, are to make a Ring, or Circle, according to their degrees in Seniority. To the Senior of all which Company of Serjeants, the Major giveth the Word privately in his ear, who after the ſame manner paſſeth it to the next, and ſo from man to man unto the youngeſt, who whiſpers it in the ear of his Major, who ſends it back again in the former manner for ſecurities ſake, until it come to the ſenior Serjeant again, who then leaves it in the ear of his Major, which preventeth all miſtakes for each particular Company.

The Guards being thus ſet in order, the Officers relieved ought to inform the Officers of the Relievers, of all the ſeveral duties of their ſeveral Guards, &c.

Every Commander in Chief of that particular Squadron which he is appointed unto, leadeth up his own Squadron from the Parade to their appointed Guard, to which when they approach, the Officer in Chief delivers the Word to the Corporal, or his Lanſpaſſadoe, and they to their Superior Officers.

The manner of relieving is by planting a guard of Pikes next to the Relievers, and adjoyning to them in the Rear a guard of Musketiers, through whom the Relievers are to pass, and the Relieved to march back to their Quarters. After all things thus set in order, the Captain of the Guard in person by strict injunction commandeth every man to his duty, from which no man either Officer or other is to depart without an especial license, and in all Alarms to stand close and quietly to their Arms, expecting further instruction and command what they are to do. And all this time, and constantly, a Sentinel is appointed to guard the entrance into the Main-Guard.

Every Officer and Souldier in a Regiment is worthy of Honor, Pay, and Encouragement, according to his Merit and Seniority; and to this end there ought to be a perfect List of the names and number of all particular Souldiers and Officers in every Squadron; which List or Catalogue is to remain in the hands of the several Corporals or Lanspassadoes; which Corporals are diligently to see what defects there are of all several necessaries in their *Corps du guard*, and to be careful that they be continually supplied; which he must do by information to his Major, and (in case of his absence or neglect) to his Captain, who may inform the Governor, that all wants of Fire, Ammunition, or Lights be made good, and compleated.

The Corporals according to order and precept given to them, are to dispose of the several Sentinels, as well Pikes as Musketiers, and to have an especial care that they keep their Muskets prim'd and laden, and their Match cockt and lighted, with their Pan guarded; which must be observed by their often visiting the several Sentinels, to see that all things be in due order, and with silence, to the end that the Sentinels may always be heard, as often as occasion is offered.

The Office of every Sentinel after he is placed upon his duty, and in his due posture (according as is above declared) is to enquire of every passenger, or other that shall but stir, *Who goes there?* yea, though it be the Captain himself: and howsoever the remotest Sentinel from the *Corps du guard*, is to permit him with his Retinue to pass; yet he is bound to have an eye upon them, till he approach the nearest Sentinel to the *Corps*, who upon the like demand, is answered, *The Captain of the Watch*; which latter Sentinel commands him to stand, and therefore with a loud voice calls forth his Corporal, the Sentinel not stirring from his place or posture, until the Corporal with his Sword drawn shall approach with a Guard of Musketiers, who are to be all arm'd, and appointed, as the Sentinels, ready to present; whereupon the Corporal with one only Musketier advancing, and perceiving him to be the Captain of the Watch indeed, is to give him the Word in his ear, having respectively cast down the point of his Sword; afterward receiving further instructions from him, he conducts him to his furthest Sentinel. But if it shall appear that he be not the Captain, or the Corporal knowing him not justly to be so, by a just suspition, he may then detain him (although he shal give him the Word) and then he shall further demand the Word of some other attending him, from whom having received it, he may more safely permit them to pass; but of all others whatsoever that shall attempt a passage, he is to receive the Word from them, and not deliver it to them.

The Captain himself having done the duty in person of passing the first Round, upon his return, he is to send forth others upon the like duty, such as he shall out of his discretion chuse from his Main-guard, and may most confide in, to whom he is to impart the Word at their setting forth upon the duty, and not before, with strict admonitions, and full instructions what they are to do, and what way to take.

Now if he shall be supplyed with men enough upon his own Guard, he may at the same time command out several Rounders to be taken several wayes; who are diligently to observe their directions given them, and to be very vigilant in the observation of all things in their passage, both by the eye and the ear, and to admonish the Sentinels (in case of neglect) that all things be more carefully lookt unto in their duty. And of these Rounders likewise (as before) the foremost Sentinel demands, *Who goes there?* When being answered satisfactorily, as by the name of the *Round*, or *Friends*, he permits them passage to the neerest Sentinel, who

who having ſtopt them there, takes a further accompt, what, and who they are: Which is done by calling forth his Corporal, who placing the point of his Sword at one of their breſts, takes the Word privatly, and ſo paſſes them by conduct to the furtheſt Sentinel. But if there ſhall happen a miſtake in the Word, the Corporal is either to ſecure them with himſelf, or by Guard to tranſfer them to the Main-guard.

Such as ſhall walk the Round, are to take a ſtrict accompt of all they meet, what, and who they are; and in caſe of deficiency of anſwering juſtly on the one ſide, or ſuſpition of the other, they are to ſecure and guard them to the Captain of the Watch.

Now (laying aſide thoſe Quirries which ſome do make between Rounders and Counter-Rounders, if they meet, who ſhall give or take the Word; the beſt and ſafeſt courſe is for them all, that before the Word be either given or taken, they go together to the nereſt *Corps du Guard*, and there to give the Word; after which they are to paſs upon their duty again; and ſo having ſcoured the Round, and returning to the Captain of the Watch, he taketh accompt of them of the things that they have done and obſerved in their duty and courſe upon the Round, and thus the Captain ſtill ſupplies the Rounds ſucceſſively by ſuch others as he ſhall take by ſeniority, and diſpoſe off for the like ſervice.

Furthermore, that all diſorders, irregularities, and ſuch perſons as ſhall cauſe the ſame in a Town or Garriſon, may be found out and rectified, and that all dangerous accidents by fire or otherwiſe may be prevented; the Captain of the Watch commandeth out a Guard of Firelocks or Muſketiers, to view the Streets, and all ſuſpitious and irregular perſons as they take, they are to bring to the Main-Guard of this Guard, which is always conducted by a Serjeant, and is called the *Patrouille*; and if they happen to be Muſketiers, and not Firelocks; then they are to be every one provided of ſuch an inſtrument as may cover the lighted Matches, and keep them from diſcovery. From theſe alſo, as from the Rounders, the Captain of the Watch takes full accompt of all their paſſages and obſervations on their duty.

When at any time any ſudden approach ſhall be made, or any Enemy diſcovered, the Sentinel (who is to be firm & conſtant to his Place and Poſture, till he ſhall be relieved) forthwith by firing gives the Alarm, and immediately ſeconds it by crying with a loud voice, *Arm, Arm*. When the Alarm is thus given, the other two Diviſions immediately led by their Officers, are orderly to march up to the Captain of the Main-Guard, to the intent that all Guards of the Garriſon may with expedition be made good; and it is neceſſary that theſe inſtructions be given them indeed by the Serjeant-Major, when he ſhall give the Word to the Minor-Serjeants, who muſt likewiſe inform their chief Officers of it, and from them the Souldiers are to be charged and acquainted therewith, that ſo upon all occaſions they may not be ignorant of this part of their duty, but ready to perform it.

The duty of a Sentinel, is to ſtand in the Place and Poſture, a full hour, and no more; at which time the Corporal, or (in caſe of his abſence) his Lanſpaſſadoe is to relieve him, and not onely him, but all the Sentinels that are out upon duty, relieving the farthеſt Sentinel firſt (who falls in the Reer of the reſt) and ſo all the others backward in the like Order, and then conducts the relieved Sentinels back to the Guard again.

At an early hour of the morning appointed for beating up the Revally, the two Sentinels next unto the Guard are to retreat into it.

At the time appointed in the morning for opening of the Gates, the Serjeant-Major attended with a ſufficient Guard, repairs to the Governour, or place elſewhere allotted, and there receives the Keys; which being done, he is to unlock firſt that Gate which is moſt remote from danger of the Enemy, and the reſt in order anſwerable: but if it happen to be in place and time of imminent danger, the Major commandeth forth a party of Souldiers conducted by an able Officer to go firſt, and make diligent ſearch for diſcovering of Ambuſcadoes, which may happen to be in any cloſe ſuſpected places, as Lanes, By-ways, Hedges, ruinous

Cottages, Churches, Pits, or Hollow-trees, Woods, Gardens, and all such-like Inclosures; at which time he openeth not the Main-ports, but only the Wickets. And except upon command to the contrary, which is not usual, both the Guards and the Watches at the Gates are to be kept night and day, and all persons upon them to continue upon their duty until they shall be relieved by order.

Upon the discharging of the Watch, to the end that every Officer and Souldier may have notice to make speedy repair to their several Guards, each several Drum first beats a Troop, and afterwards a March in the Main-guard. Hereupon, it is to be supposed the Relievers are advanced toward the Main-Guard, where the relieved are to be drawn off, and to make a stand, expecting till the Relievers shall come up; which being done, the relieved then are to troop homeward; and after that they have attended and seen their Colours lodged, they are to disband, and not before.

And now, further to satisfie the expectation of the Lovers of the *Art Military*, it shall not seem unseasonable here to declare somewhat concerning the manner of Field-Watches, or *Vigils de Campe*, denoted unto us by the Expert and Ancients, under these three Notions. The first are *Castra temporanea, aleager ad placitum*, pitcht onely for the present, and may perhaps alter and change it's Station in a day, or an hour, according to the pleasure and judgement of the General, and Commanders in chief. Secondly, there are *Castra*, a select or constant Camp, so called, because of their intentions of continuance in the besieging of a Castle, or Town, &c. until they shall have taken the same, or by some other necessity, or further advantage, forced to raise their Seige. The third and last, called *Castra*, Such a Camp as is pitcht before or neer some Rivers side, to oppose and frustrate the Incursions of the Enemy, who otherwise might this way break in for the infesting or taking of a Country. Now concerning such Watches or Guards, which shall relate unto several Camps, both in regard of the several and most convenient places for securing the Camps by Sentinels and *Perdues*, they are to be primarily appointed and ordered according to the discretion & command of the Masters of the Field, whether Generals, or Majors of Brigades; & afterwards the Serjeant-Majors & Captains of Regiments, according to their commands and relieved order, are to design them for the aforesaid place.

To enlarge the several Arguments and Disputes that might further arise in point of Field-duties relating thereunto, would be too tedious, and to little purpose, in regard that whosoever shall but diligently observe what hath before been set down concerning the duty of Watches in Garrison and Fortresses, may sufficiently be able to apprehend and perform all manner of Duties that shall concern this Field-service, provided that he be careful to adhere to the directions of the Field-Officers in all points, and diligent to observe the manner of managing of all things according to their instructions. And therefore to avoid prolixity and fruitless disputes, I refer the Reader to what hath been above related.

CHAP. XXV.

The ordering of a private Company unto a Funeral-occasion.

WHen any Commander or Souldier of worth shall be deceased, a private Captain that would shew respect and honour by marching along with his Company attending the Corps to the place of burial, must order his Souldiers after this manner.

They being summon'd by beat of the Drum, to meet at their usual place of Rendezvous, they may be drawn up according to the usual manner, having a Van-guard, Battail and Reer-guard: being thus ordered, and each of the Souldiers having either in his Hat a black Feather or Ribbin; the Captain may draw them off, and order them to their Long-march; moving them away in an orderly manner unto the place of him that is deceased, and there make Alt. After which he may command the Musketiers in the Van to open to the right and left outward to such convenient distance as the Pikes may move up between them, and take possession of their first ground; and those Musketiers may face about, and move down cleer of the Pikes, and after close their Files inward to Order, and face to their Leader.

Now being in two Divisions, let them so continue with their Arms ordered, until

until ſuch time as they ſhall perceive the Corps to be brought forth into the Street; then the Captain may face them all about, and move them ſome three Pikes length before the Corps; after which he may command his Muſketteirs to perform their Funeral-Poſture, which is to have their Muskets under their left Arm, with the But-end upward, their Reſts likewiſe on that ſide trailing. After which the Pikes are to face again to their firſt Front, and to lay the narrow end of their Pikes down upon the ground; after facing about to the left, and bringing up the But-end of their Pikes on their right ſide, conforming themſelves with the Muſketteirs in their Funeral-Poſtures. In the next place, the Enſign ſtrips his Colours off from the Staff, and ties them about his right Waſt; putting a black Ribbon towards the very end of his Staff, he after faceth to the Body of Pikes, ſtanding in the Reer of them, and trailing his Staff in the ſame Poſture. Next followeth the Captain, having in his hand a Half-pike or Leading-ſtaff, conforming himſelf likewiſe to his Funeral-Poſture. Thus being all ready to march, and rightly faced toward that place where the Corps are to be interred, are after this manner following to lead and to bring up.

The firſt Diviſion of Muſketteirs which was the Reer-guard, is led by the Lieutenant; the next Diviſion of Muſketteirs, that was formerly the Van-guard, is led by the ſecond Serjeant; the Body of Pikes, is led by the eldeſt Serjeant, he trailing a Half-pike upon the head of them; the Enſign bringing it up, and the Captain twelve foot ſhort of him bringing up the Reer of the whole Company. And after him the Miniſters marching juſt before the Coffin; & in the Reer, & next unto it, the neereſt kindred, and after them thoſe that are invited to the Funeral.

Having thus ſtated the manner and order of the Military Part, with all others belonging thereunto, for any ordinary Funeral-occaſion; I ſhall in the next place proceed to ſhew their Order upon the March, and how each Arms ought to be diſpoſed before the Corps enter into the Church, with the reſt of the Train.

All perſons being ordered as before expreſſed, the Drums being covered with Black-bays, and placed betwixt the ſecond and third Ranks in each Diviſion; and all being ready to move, the Drums may begin to beat their Funeral-March, and the Lieutenant leading them away, with the But-end of his Pattiſon upward and comported; the reſt following, and marching in a leaſurable and ſlow way along together, until they come within a hundred foot of the Church-door, or place where the Corps are to be interred, there making Alt. After which, let the Muſketteirs in their Ranks File to the right and left, not advancing ground; and face in oppoſition, making a Guard for the reſt to paſs through, and reſting their Muskets, or putting the But-end thereof to the ground, with the Barrel towards them (which is a conformity to the Pikes being ordered.) In the mean time, let the Pikes advance their Arms, and immediately after move forward betwixt the Guard of Muſketteirs, and let their Ranks afterward file to the right and left, making alſo a Guard, their Pikes being ordered, and they as the reſt, facing in oppoſition. Then let the Captain, who brings up the Reer of all his whole Body, move forward with the reſt to the Church-door; then falling off in reſpect of ordering his Company, the reſt of the Train Marching into the Church.

After which the Captain may cauſe them all to face to the Church, or to their Leader; he ſtanding then before the Church-door, commanding them to Rank again as they were. After every Leader may draw off his File, and ſet their Arms apart in each File by themſelves, and go in to hear part of the Sermon, if there ſhould be any ſuch order before-hand from their Captain, placing Sentinels to look to their Arms. And when Sermon is almoſt done, they ought to go forth of the Church, and draw forth the Files by ſome little warning of Drums, to be in readineſs to anſwer ſuch directions as they ſhall receive from their Captain; who may, if he have conveniency of room, draw all his Muſketteirs into a Ring, and the Pikes in like manner on the outſide of them; and as ſoon as the Souldiers have notice (being all ready and preſented) that the Body is laid down in the grave, they may upon warning of the Drum, give one volley of ſhot all together, and after make ready again, performing the ſame twice over more. After which, the Enſign may put his Colours upon his Staff, and fuel them up; then the Pikes may be drawn up again into one Body, and the Muſketteirs into another; and

falling

falling in the Reer of the Pikes, they may troop away. And a little before the place of lodging the Colours, they may make Alt, and the Muskettiers may sleeve up by the outside of the Pikes from the Reer, filing to the right and left, making a Guard for the Colours and Pikes to march through them; and being cleer, and the Colours lodged, they may face about again to the right, and give another volley of shot: but if there should be such a streight of ground, that the Muskettiers cannot be drawn into a Ring; then they must be otherwise disposed of, by making them into two Ranks, the one on the one side of the Street, and the other on the other side, facing them either in opposition, or in an oblique manner: if in opposition, they must present very low, and give fire three times all together as before, with one volley after another; if oblique, the one Rank is to be faced towards the upper end of the Street, and the other towards the lower end, and so may fire with less danger to each other; the Pikes to be filed away to the right and left, behind the Muskettiers before they were thus faced. And again, where they have not length of ground to contrive the Muskettiers into two single Ranks, they may fire all together as they stand at Order, mounting up the Muzzles of their Muskets into the Air, without offending each other. Therefore according to the conveniency of the ground, it must be the discretion of every Commander to order his men accordingly to perform his three volleys of shot in the most gracefullest way; which being ended, they may all return to their Quarters. And thus much may suffice for satisfaction to any Commander in ordering his single Company to any Funeral-occasion, marching along of it self.

CHAP. XXVI.

The ordering of a Regiment to a Funeral-occasion.

WHen Companies are to march in a Regimental-way, care must be had that the Regiment be first drawn up according to this Rule. The Pikes to be in one Body, and the Muskettiers equally divided to flank that Body; after which let the Major make his Divisions, appointing the places of every Captain and Lieutenant, where they shall lead, and where they shall bring up. After that they may move away towards the place or lodging of him that is to be interred, and there make Alt, opening the Van-guard of Muskettiers, and facing them to the Reer; then let the Body of Pikes and them interchange ground, that the Pikes may march next the Hearse, in manner as before expresst of a private Company, whose smaller Bodies take Rule from the greater. Then let the Lieutenant-Colonel lead the Regiment, and the Colonel bring it up; and so in like manner in every Division, the Bringers-up are to lead, and the Leaders to bring up. All Officers and their Arms being thus reverst, the Front becomes the Reer, and the Reer the Front, they must move slowly away; and before the Corps pass into the Church, there must be ground reserv'd, that after the Muskettiers have first made a Guard, the Pikes may move through them, and may also in like manner file in their Ranks as the Muskettiers did, joyning to them, and making a Guard in like manner of each Arms. After which the whole Train may pass through in an orderly manner into the Church; the Souldiers in the mean time attending without until Sermon be passed over. And being all in a readiness, they may give three several Peals, or Volleys of shot, according to such warnings as shall be given them. After which the Souldiers being ranked again as they were, if they have conveniency of ground, the Major may cause the Captains to draw off their Companies, and troop home to their several Quarters, according to their best conveniency. But if they have not room, it will be most properest for the Major to command the Muskettiers to stand, and first to rank the Pikes again as they were. Then let the Drums beat a Troop upon the head of the Pikes in the Reer of the Colours; and let the Ensigns and Pikes first troop away; through the Guard of the Muskettiers; who being cleer of them, and being led by the Colonel and other Officers there appointed, the Muskettiers may also rank again in like manner, and fall in the Reer of the Pikes, following them until they come unto a convenient place or ground for the Captains drawing off their Companies, as they shall receive order from the Colonel, Lieutenant-Colonel or Major. And here I will conclude my Discourse concerning the Exercising of the Infantry in all their Military Motions and Exercises.

FINIS.

The Postures of the Musket to be performed without the Rest.

The Musket lying on the ground, with Bandeliers and Match, the first Word of Command will be,

Stand to your Arms.
Take up your Bandeliers.
Put on your Bandeliers.

Take up your *Match*.
Place your *Match*.

Take up your *Musket*, letting the *Butt*-end rest upon the Ground.

Rest your *Musket* in your left hand, bringing the *Butt*-end to your right side.

Poyse your *Musket*.
Shoulder your *Musket*.

Unshoulder your *Musket* and Poyse.
Ballance your *Musket* in your left hand with the Barrel upwards.

Open / Clear / Prime / Shut — your Pan.

Cast off your loose Corns.
Blow off your loose Corns, and bring about your *Musket* to your left side, carrying the Barrel downwards.

Ballance your *Musket* in your left hand.

Find out your *Charge*.
Open your *Charge*.
Charge with Powder.

Draw forth your Scowring-stick.
Turn, and shorten to an inch.

Charge with Bullet.
Put your Scowring-stick in your *Musket*.
Ram home your Charge.

Draw forth your Scowring-stick.
Turn, and shorten him to a handful.
Return your Scowring-stick.

Bring forward your *Musket* & Poyse.
Ballance your *Musket* in your left hand, with your Barrel upward.

Draw forth your *Match*.
Blow your Coal.

Cock / File — your *Match*.

Guard your Pan,
Blow the Ashes from your Coal.

Open your Pan.
Present upon your left hand.
Give fire Brest-high.

Dismount your *Musket*, holding him still in your left hand.
Uncock, and return your *Match*.

Clear your Pan.
Shut your Pan.

Set the *Butt*-end of your *Musket* to the ground.

Lay down your *Musket*.
Lay down your *Match*.

Take off your Bandeliers.
Lay down your Bandeliers.

An Advertisement to the Souldiery of the Nation.

WHereas this Book in the several Tracts thereof, with much variety doth set forth at large, as to their several kinds and changes, all your Military Motions and Postures, which may not only serve to give light to the unexperienced, and lead them by the hand into the Military Gardens of Honour, and o-

ther places, where they are trained up, until by degrees they arrive unto perfection; but may delight and confirm the moſt able and moſt knowing Souldiers, whilſt here they read over thoſe ſeveral forms, in which heretofore they ſtood, when in ſo many Battails, with ſuch admirable ſucceſs they have both oppoſed and overcome their Enemies. And whereas even from hence may be extracted many excellent Directions and Rudiments of War, which may incourage and fully inable all active and gallant Spirits in this City of *London* to perform ſuch Commands, and to follow thoſe Conducts to which they ſhall be diſciplined by thoſe exquiſite and moſt expert Souldiers, who ſhall train them up, either in the new Artillery, or any other ground of ſuch Honorable Imployment, and hereby be ſo fitted and furniſhed with all directions, that the performance of them ſhall render them moſt acceptable: yet I cannot but confeſs, that through the uſual variety of this moſt Noble Profeſſion, proceeding from the great plenty which theſe times afford thereof (the exerciſe of Arms being every where ſo frequently ſhown) that the moſt plain and ordinary Rules, though far more uſeful, are not ſo well reliſhed, many men looking more in ſuch your publick Trainings after novelty and delight, then ſolidity; which was purpoſely contrived by the Authors of it only for variety, and for drawing of one another to the love of Arms, and not for any prejudice to the Fundamentals of War, on which the Ruine or the Safety of the Kingdom and Commonwealth of the World depends. If peradventure it be alleadged, that he who can perform things of difficulty, will be more apt to carry on things of more facility: It may be ſpeedily anſwered, that the plain Rudiments and Principles of War, being of greateſt uſe and importance, and practiſed in all Armies, both in this and other Nations, they are by no means to be neglected or omitted, but to be preſerved and eſteemed in that high manner which they do deſerve; for the ability in the performance of them, will no doubt more readily prefer a man, and render him more capable of any imployment, then the practice of any uſeleſs or impertinent things in War. Add unto this, that the more eaſie and plain a man is in his command, the more readily it is received by the Souldiers, and more promptly obeyed; for new coined, and Seſquipedalian words of Command do ſo puzzle and torment the apprehenſions with directions and expoſitions to have them underſtood, that not only they oftentimes tranſcend the reach of thoſe that are to give them; but they do much amaze and confound the capacities of thoſe who are to be led and ordered by them. I do the rather make mention of this in this place, that a diſcreet care be taken, that no man make himſelf ridiculous in his undertakings or Commands; but that he may be able to give an abſolute account of any Branch, which in the whole Body of the Art Military ſhall be propounded to him, to give ſatisfaction therein to any judicious Souldier, as concerning the uſe, purpoſe, and property of it; for otherwiſe it would ſignifie nothing at all. But when a man being required thereunto can render a ſufficient reaſon for what he doth, or ſhall voluntarily give it himſelf, as to this or that management of any ſervice in War, it will very much both content him, and inform them who ſhall be under his Command, and give them a juſt encouragement to proceed in it: but if he ſhould fail in this point of Knowledge and Judgment, there is but little benefit to be expected from his Conduct; for it were far better that a man did but a little in a Souldierly way, which is proper, and carrying good approbation to men of underſtanding, then to ſpin forth a long thred with new expreſſions and inventions, that are of no uſe or profit, but tend rather unto laughter, and to the loſs of time, and the offence of many, and to the bringing of a general contempt upon the Art.

And although there be many Rules which may be ſufficient forms to direct, and to teach to be expert in War, and doubtleſs are of great concernment to them who do both the Theorick and the Practick part; yet nevertheleſs there is no rule, but at ſome time or other doth admit of ſome exception, there being eſpecially ſo many groſs events in War, that no Commander can poſitively tie himſelf up to any Rule, for occaſion do vary to ſeveral places, that the chiefeſt Rule a man can walk by, is his Eye, and his Intelligence, wherein accordingly he

must

must accommodate himself to encounter his Enemies. And although a Commander should be qualified with much Knowledge, Courage and Faithfulness, the only accomplishments of a true Souldier; yet they are to be attended with diligence; for in all his undertakings and performances, delays being always dangerous, it is usually said, *That which is soonest done, and well done, is best done.* But above all, he is to have an eye to order, which is the very life of an Army. And in acting against an Enemy, great care is to be taken not to puzzle the Souldiers, by confounding their understandings, which may occasion their utter overthrow. And this makes me to reflect on what hath been mentioned heretofore. Let every Commander that truly delights in Military exercises, study to be exact in all plain things, and practice the Souldiers much in the exercise thereof; for this is the only use, and is altogether practised and observed in the Field. If a man will be curious in new fancies, there are stratagems enough to be found out, in which he may exercise himself with much variety, to delight the curious, and find much matter in them to be highly valued, and esteemed. But this is to be carried on in a plain way, the study whereof would ask some time; and it is not easily obtained by ordinary capacities, which should content themselves to learn of such who are of higher abilities. And on this account the Art would be more highly prized, and not only bring more Honour to the Professors thereof, but even the Learners themselves would become more capable of good preferment abroad, and our Military Gardens and Meetings would much more flourish, and be beheld with more delight and satisfaction, not only by the Souldiers themselves, but all other Spectators whatsoever.

I do not desire to be mis-understood by this Discourse, that herein I should go about to startle any ingenious Souldier, or dissuade him from any thing that shall be new to his Invention, which is proper: I shall rather incourage him, and be glad to understand of him what Reason he can give for every thing he doth, and of what use it may be unto the Publick, and then it will admit of no controulment. But vacant seasons may be used for variety and delight, in making experiments of wit, fancy, and ingenuity; provided they do not dwell too much upon them. But the substantial and solid things of War are above all things to be precisely regarded, without which an Army, though of the most valiant men, will be exposed to the greatest dangers, and fall into a most certain Ruine.

I should here humbly offer my Advice to the most eminent Meetings in the Artillery and Military Gardens, in the latter of which I was heretofore a Member, and still am a true Lover, and honourer both of that, and all other places like unto it: My advice is, that on their days of publick Meeting, they would have chiefly before their eyes the main Grounds and Principles in the Art of War, which (through permission) I am perswaded, would cause greater appearances, and make their Ground to flourish more then ever; to the Honour of our Nation, and the increase of experienced and able Commanders, if ever this Commonwealth should stand in further need of them. And because the Ambition of some doth strive to aim at higher things in their thoughts then what is practised abroad, I have thought good to set down the plain way of exercising a Company, as usually it is practised in the Army, our Companies consisting of one hundred men, two parts being Musketiers, and a third Pikes, the depth of our Files being always six deep in the Armies of *England*, *Scotland*, and *Ireland*: the Company being drawn up abrest, the Exercise is as followeth, they standing in their closest Order in Ranks and Files.

First, *Command.* Open Ranks backwards to	Order.
Command. Files open to the Right to your	
Command. Ranks open backward to open	Order.
Command. Files open to the left to open	
Command. Ranks open backward to double	Distance.
Command. Files open outward to double	
Command. Ranks close forward to open	Order.
Command. Files close inward to open	

Com-

Command. Ranks close forward to your } Order.
Command. Files close to the left to your }

Command. Face to the Right }
Command. Face to the Left }
Command. Face to the Rear } as you were.
Command Face to the Front }

Command. Face to the Center }
Command. Face to Front and Rear. }
Command. Face to the Right and Left outward. } as you were.
Command. Face to the Right and left inward }

Ranks and Files being at Open Order.
Ranks to the Right Double.
Files to the Left Double.
Ranks to the Left Double.
Files to the Right Double.

Command. Half-files Double your Front to the Right.
Command. Files Double your Depth to the Left.
Command. Half-files Double your Front to the Left.
Command. Files Double your Depth to the Right.
Command. Bringers-up Double your Front to the Right.
Command. Files Double your Depth to the Left, every man falling behind his Bringer-up.
Direction. Bringers-up Double your Front to the Left.
Files double your Depth to the Right, every man placing himself behind his Bringer-up.
Command. Double your Ranks to the Right or Left intire } as you were.
Command. Half-files double your Front to the Right intire.
Command. Right Half-ranks double intire the depth of your left Half-ranks.
Command. Half-files double your Front to the Left intire.
Command. Left Half-ranks double intire the depth of your Right half-ranks.
Direction. The same may be done to the Rear.
Command. Files to the Right hand Counter-march, and maintain Ground.
Command. Files to the Left hand Counter-march, and maintain Ground.
Direction. The same may be done in Ranks, as also both in Ranks and Files, either maintaining, gaining, or losing ground; of these in the Army we use but little.
Command. Wheel your Battle to the Right.
Command. Wheel your Battle to the Left.
Command. Wheel your Battle to the Right about.
Command. Wheel your Battle to the Left about.
Command. Files, file to the Right or Left.
Command. Ranks, file to the Right and Left.

First, The Musketiers being on both flanks, first firing, let the first Rank stand and fire, every Rank passing through before his Leader, after standing and fire, till all have fired over twice, or four times, the Pikes moving slowly in the mean time; they will upon a stand be reduced as at first.

Secondly, Bring all the Musketiers before the Pikes, then let them fire in the Front, falling off, and flank the Pikes upon the Right. Fire upon the right flank, the body marching, and the Musketiers to pass on the left flank: after the Pikes may charge to the right, the body moving again. Let the Musketiers fire on the left flank, and fall in the Reer of the Pikes, who may after charge their Pikes on the left. The body marching, the Musketiers may fire in the Reer, and fall off to the Right and Left, and flank the Pikes as at the first; the body facing about, the Pikes may charge to the Reer. We usually fire in the Front sometimes two ranks standing, the rest passing by turns; then standing after they have gained the ground before their Leaders, do fire, till all have fired twice: other times three Ranks fire together; the first kneels down, the second stoops, the third stands upright; then falling down, the three last Ranks pass through, and do the like. This being done twice, reduces them all as at first, the Pikes moving slowly; this being the usual way of exercising our Companies in the Army.

Rich. Elton, Lieut. Col. *FINIS.*

A SUPPLEMENT TO THE COMPLEAT BODY OF The Art Military.

A SUPPLEMENT TO THE COMPLEAT BODY OF The Art Military.

THE PUBLISHER To the READER.

HAving now an opportunity of reprinting the preceding Treatise of Military Discipline, written by Lieutenant-Colonel Richard Elton, containing the Discipline and Exercise of Foot-companies, Regiments, Brigades, &c. I thought it not convenient to let the Infantry March into the Field of the [World] any more, without the Cavalry, nor they without their Train of Artillery: I have therefore endeavoured to make good the words of the Title, namely [The Compleat Body of the Art Military] by adding the following Treatises: wherefore, to the Infantry here is added Cavalry, and Instructions for them, both in Posture and Motion; and for both, here is provided Quarters; and for the securing of the Quarters, we have surrounded them with Intrenchments, Redoubts, Bulwarks, Hanworks, &c. and for the defending and maintaining of these Works, we have brought hither our Great Artillery.

The additional Treatises in brief are these:

1. The Names, Offices, Duties and Qualifications of all Officers belonging to an Army, from the General to the Private Souldier.

2. The manner of Enrolling, Arming and Exercising of the Cavalry, both in Postures and Motions.

3. The manner of the Marching of an Army, both Horse and

Foot, *with its* Train of Artillery, Bag *and* Baggage, *and all other necessaries thereunto belonging.*

4. *The order of* Designing, Measuring *and* laying out *the* Quarters *for the* Encamping *of an* Army, *either of* Horse *or* Foot, *or both*; *together with the* Artillery, *and all requisites*; *with* Orders *for* Watching, *and other Orders to be observed in the* Quarters.

5. *The manner of* Fortifying *and securing of these* Quarters, *by* Intrenchments, *&c. and how to Erect a* Fort *of any number of sides from four to ten, with their several* Ramparts, Bulwarks, Parapets, *and all other the appurtenances thereunto relating.*

6. *There is added some part of the* Gunners Art, *namely, so much thereof as is necessary for a* Souldier *in general to know, and in case of necessity, to put in practice*; *with the making and use of the two most material and serviceable* Fireworks, *namely, the* Petard *and* Granado.

Other things I could have added, but I (with the advice and probation of my Military *acquaintance) deemed these sufficient: and as the Book is Entituled,* The Compleat Body of the Art Military; *so I am perswaded that he that can attain to perfection in what is here delivered, may be accounted a* Compleat Souldier: *And that all Practitioners in the* Art Military *may attain to be such, is the hearty wish of*

W. L.

A SUPPLEMENT TO THE COMPLEAT BODY OF The Art Military.

How the Officers of an Army in general ought to be qualified.

IN every Souldier (especially a Commander) these essencial qualities are required, *viz.* Knowledge, Experience, Valour and Dexterity; of which, how many are there that take upon them the profession of a Souldier, that hardly know what any of the Words mean; but think their patrimony a sufficient Commission for them, to take a Command upon them, they wanting Knowledge how to manage the men under their Command; Experience in the Art Military being a stranger to them. But certainly, if such men did but seriously consider how various and changeable the state of a Souldier is, that in a moment he may loose that honour and reputation he hath been many years obtaining, and seen the ignominie and disgrace which some have come unto by their miscarriages, they would doubtless be very cautious, and not run headlong into an imployment of such importance.

But he that hath had experience by being under command for a time, and arrived to the degree of a Captain gradually, as from a Corporal to a Quartermaster, thence to a Cornet, and so to a Lieutenant; he is then well prepared for a Captains charge: for having passed these inferior Offices, depresseth those vehement passions which by nature otherwise are apt to arise in young men, which in a Commander are dangerous: Besides, his accustoming himself to the former employments, maketh him Valorous; so that if he be suddenly assailed, he can recollect himself without astonishment; and to the forementioned Qualifications adde this, his accustoming himself to hardship, as to Watch, Travel, Labour, endure Hunger and cold, &c.

His chief end must be Honour; to attain which, he must be vigilant, and let no opportunity slip to attempt any brave exploit or stratagem. And for that end he will be always observing his Enemy, and contriving how to circumvent him in his designs; knowing that in War no material matter can be effected without vigilancie and danger. But let him not always trust to his own judgement, but advise with his Officers also; and upon any such enterprize let him take to his assistance such of his Souldiers as he sees deserve well, and quit himself at such a time of the debauched part of his Souldiery. He must always aspire to higher degrees

grees of Honour. Let him hate Covetousness: for nothing more will continue his Souldiers good affections towards him then Liberality. Gaming let him detest; and instead of gorgeous Apparel, let him delight in good Arms and Horses. Let [illegible] be enemies to him, which his Souldiers perceiving, will [illegible] to reform themselves by his Example.

But above all things let him set before his eyes the fear of God, deporting himself internally and externally blameless. Thus by good Example of the Commander, the commanded will be reformed.

Having given you an account how every Commander in general ought to be qualified, I will now shew you the Office, Duty, and Qualification of every Commander in particular. And

I. *Of the General of the Horse.*

THe General of the Horse was wont to supply the place of Lieutenant-General of the Army, and in the absence of the Lord General to command the whole Army. It is true, that the Lord Marshal, forasmuch as he giveth the Orders (according to the opinions of some) used to have the superiority of Command; whence it is, that the Lord General absenting himself from the Army, used to take along with him either the General of Horse, or the Lord Marshal, to avoid contention between them.

He must be a man of Experience and Valour, having in charge the nerves of the principal Forces, and upon whom the success of many designs and actions depend, they being usually executed by the Cavalry, where the charging of the Enemy orderly usually giveth Victory; and the disorderly charging, disturbs oft-times the whole Army. Witness that Battle at *Gembloers* described by *Meteren*, where the Infantry were overthrown by their own Horse. He is to take particular notice not only of the Officers, but the private Souldiers also, rewarding them when vigilant, and upon some signal act advancing them to higher preferment, and punishing Delinquents and such as are deficient in their endeavours: by which means the good will love, and the bad fear him. He is to see the Cavalry be furnished with all necessaries, and be always in good equipage. A Troop being to march, he is to see that they be provided with Naggs, for the preservation of the Souldiers Horses; for with them they must go to forrage after their March, and presently enter into Guard or Quarter without rest, to refresh their Horses. The Captains are not to absent themselves from their Companies, nor to place or displace Officers without his leave and approbation. He hath his particular Officers apart; and in that which concerneth the Cavalry, neither Lord Marshal nor General himself dispose of any thing without his advice. When he passeth through the Quarters either of the Cavalry or Infantry, his Trumpets are to sound, but not where the Lord General is present, or where he lodgeth. When he commandeth in the Army (in absence of the Lord General) upon occasion of fight, his place is in the Battle, that he may the better give Order to all. Usually he hath a Company to lodge with him, to serve him as his Guard, and six or more of his Company attending on him. He should not resolve upon any enterprize, unless he consider of all that might happen, and propound to himself greater difficulties in the action then in reality there be, and so prepare remedies surpassing the said difficulties, it being a singular benefit to be able to foresee (with good judgement) those things which might succeed in the uncertain and variable accidents of War. As *Sertorius* saith, *A good Commander should rather look behind him then before him.*

II. *Of the Lieutenant-General of Horse.*

THe Charge of the Lieutenant-General of the Horse is of great importance, and must therefore be supplied by a Souldier of known Experience and Valour: careful and vigilant he must be; he marcheth and lodgeth for the most

part

part with the Cavalry; he ought to be well versed in the ways of the Country, that he may either meet or avoid his Enemy as occasion shall require. He must be always busied about his Enemies motion, considering with himself from what place they may shew themselves, with what number, whether Infantry or Cavalry; in what time they may probably come upon him, and where to place himself to advantage to prevent them.

He must be circumspect and wary in the choice of the place appointed for Quarters, in preparing good Guards, causing the High-ways to be cleared, and by-ones discovered, placing men on those places where he supposes the Enemy may make head; sending forth Scouts continually, and placing Sentinels, omitting no diligence to secure the Quarter where the Cavalry findeth it self to be exposed to most danger, especially if they be lodged without Infantry. He must be sure to have Spies in and about his Enemies Quarters. He must look that the Captains wrong not their Souldiers, but that he see them well armed, and kept in good Order, and that they and his Officers observe good Orders and Discipline. As he ought to be severe in punishing, so he must be ready and willing to hear his Souldiers just complaints, and relieve them. He must not suffer any extortion to be used by himself or others, by which the Country is ruined, and the Souldiery hated: for too great liberty of the Souldiers produceth bad effects.

He ought to be knowing in the command of the Infantry; for upon occasion of sending a good part of the Cavalry to several places, he hath the charge not only of the Horse, but of the Foot also: And in the absence of the General, the Orders from the Lord General or Lord Marshal come to him, and to him are all reports made of the occurrences of the Cavalry and Army. He may suspend a Captain of his command, upon just cause; but cannot restore him again without order from the General, who must first give notice thereof to the Lord General. When he passeth the Quarters of Cavalry, the Trumpets sound; but not in the presence of the General, or in his Quarters. When the General of Horse commands the whole Army, and therefore takes his place in the Battle, the Lieutenant-General placeth himself in the Van-guard of the Cavalry, where otherwise the General useth to be.

III. *Of the Commissary-General.*

HE ought to be a good and experienced Souldier; for that in the absence of the Lieutenant-General he is to have the command. He must reconcile Differences which at any time arise among the Souldiers, as having most to do with the Souldiery. He is to keep Lists of the Guards, Convoys and other services, and is to distribute the Orders. Every evening he is to go and receive the Orders and the Word, and having given it to the General and Lieutenant-General, he is to give it to the Quartermaster-General, for him farther to distribute. He is upon all occasions of singular use, and entrusted with the Execution of the Orders. In appointing the places or lodgings in several Exploits, he must be free from partiality; and such as at one time have cause of discontent, he must make them amends the next; that so he may see it was of necessity, not of partiality. His place being of great importance, ought therefore to be supplied by one knowing and experienced.

IV. *Of the Quartermaster-General.*

THe Office of the Quartermaster-General is to appoint the Lodgings or Quarterings; wherefore he must be well acquainted with the Countrey, with the Towns and Villages about it, not only by Maps (which in some measure will inform him) but by his own experience, that he may the better know where to place the *Corps-du-gards* and Sentinels, and visit them by day and night, and order what ways to secure them: and is to keep a List of all the Guards, Convoys, Cavalcadoes (or exploits by Horse.) He must shew the Allarm-place to the particular

ticular Quarter-maſters when they receive the Word of him in the Evening. He muſt be very cautious in giving in his reports true; and if any Order for haſte be delivered him by mouth, he muſt not truſt it to others, but muſt himſelf deliver it.

V. *Of the Captain.*

A Captain ought to be a man Sober, Continent, and modeſt in his Apparel, aiming rather at good Arms and Horſes, then gorgeous Apparel; to ſee his Souldiers punctual in their reſpective Duties, and often calling them to exerciſe. Let him be generous, and not given to Gaming, leſt the Souldiers pay by that means be diminiſhed, which will overthrow his credit. He is diligently to obſerve the Orders he receives; and to be punctually ready with his Troop where appointed, himſelf being firſt on Horſback, ſeeing his Troop compleat and full before he march. He ought to know every Souldier in his Troop by name, that upon any Exploit he may draw forth ſuch as he diſcerns moſt fit for the buſineſs he hath in agitation. The Captains taking notice of a Souldier does very much animate and encourage him. He muſt cherish his well-deſerving Souldiers, and caſhier the idle and debauched. Let him always have 2 or 3 of his Souldiers well skilled in the Countrey, for they may ſerve him as Guides, for that thoſe of the adjacent Towns or Villages are not always to be had, nor is it at all times ſafe to intruſt them: to theſe Souldiers he is to contribute ſomething extraordinary beſides their pay.

Out of his Troop he is to chuſe his Lieutenant, Cornet, &c. impartially by their merit, and not for favour or affection; by which he ſhall be beloved of his Souldiers, and not be forced to alter his choice by the Generals Order.

In the abſence of the Captain, the Lieutenant commands the Troop.

VI. *Of the Lieutenant.*

THe Lieutenant of a Troop ought to be an experienced Souldier, having attained thereunto by the experience he attained in being a Corporal and Cornet, from which by deſert he attained to be a Lieutenant. In the Captains abſence he commands the Troop. He muſt be diligent to ſee the Souldiers do their duties, and ſee that their Horſes and Arms be in good caſe. He is to bring up the Reer of the Troop; and ſee the Souldiers keep Rank, File, and Diſtance orderly after the Captain and Cornet, and to permit none to depart from the Body or Troop. In fight he is to be ſtill in the Reer with his Sword drawn, encouraging the Souldiers, and cutting, if not killing ſuch as ſhall preſume to flinch. He is to keep a Liſt of the names and ſirnames of the Souldiers in his Troop, and know the ſufficiency of each Souldier, that he may make uſe of them accordingly.

The Troop being to go to Guard, when neer, the Lieutenant is to go before to the Lieutenant that is to be relieved, and take notice of the *Corps-du-guard*, and receive information from him, when and where the Sentinels are to be placed, what ways to clear, and all other things neceſſary; and he muſt viſit the Sentinels often both by night and day, he firſt himſelf having placed them. If the Troop be lodged in a Village, the Billets muſt be ſigned by the Quartermaſter of the Troop, and diſtributed to the Souldiers before the Cornets lodging, where the Alto is made to attend the ſaid Billets; ſo that in caſe of an Allarm, the Souldiers may know whither to repair. If they ſtay longer then a day in one place, the Lieutenant is to viſit the houſes to ſee that the Souldiers keep good orders; and being to go away, to bid them be careful to put out their Fires. If they go to be lodged in a Town or Fort, and there to keep Garriſon, the Lieutenant is to accommodate their Lodgings according to their degrees and deſerts; and whereſoever they lodge longer then a day, he muſt write the name of the Souldiers upon the ſaid Billets, that if the Souldier commit any Miſdemeanor, he may be the readier diſcovered and puniſhed.

When

When the Troop is to March, and the Trumpets ſound to Horſe, he muſt be firſt mounted, and ſee the Souldiers do the ſame with all ſpeed; and finding any lingering, either out of idleneſs, or an intent to Plunder, ſeverely to chaſtiſe them. He ought to have knowledge of the ways: And if the Troop be charged by the Enemy, himſelf with ſome of the moſt experienced Souldiers, and beſt mounted in the Troop, are to ſtay behind.

VII. *Of the Corner.*

IN the abſence of the Captain and Lieutenant, the Cornet is to command the Troops, but in the Captains preſence upon a March, his place is in the Front before the firſt Rank, but behind the Captain: in his charging of an Enemy, he is to charge with the Captain, and endeavour to break his Standard upon the Enemy; and being broken, and falling to the ground, he is not to regard taking it up again, his honour lying much in the breaking of his Standard in chaſe either of Horſe or Foot: But if the Enemy ſhould take the Corners Standard unbroken, it were to him a great diſgrace. And this is contrary to the practice of an Enſign in the Infantry, the preſerving of whoſe Colours is ever eſteemed his greateſt glory; as is evident in the Example of one *Jaques Marteni*, who, when moſt of his Souldiers had forſaken him, he fought ſo long as he could; and finding himſelf over-powred, wound himſelf up in his Colours and dyed.

The Cornet of Cuiraſſiers in march hath his place at the head of the Troop, and preſenteth himſelf in the Alarm-place; but in fight, in the midſt of the Troop, having two third parts of the Souldiers behind him. [And this is the place of his marching in theſe times, which does moſt agree with the manner of marching of the Infantry, where the Enſign marches before the diviſion of Pikes.] The Souldiers in the Front-diviſion of the Troop, muſt be thoſe beſt armed, and the moſt couragious. He muſt keep a Liſt of the Troop, and ſend ſo many to the Guard, as the Captain or Lieutenant ſhall appoint. Once every day, he is at the Lord-Generals paſſing by the Troop to do obeyſance to him, by inclining his body and Cornet towards the ground.

VIII. *Of the particular Quarter-Maſters.*

THe Quarter-Maſters duty is, (when all the Troops are lodged together) to accompany the Quarter-Maſter-General in his laying out of the general Quarters; but if they are to be lodged in ſeveral places, ſome of the particular Quarter-maſters accompany the Lieutenant-General, others the Commiſſary-General; and if a Captain command the Quarters, then the particular Quarter-Maſter maketh the Quarter. There is much truſt repoſed in him, as the diſtributing of the Word and the Billets; and therefore ought to be honeſt and true to his charge. When he goes with the Quarter-Maſter-General to make the Quarters or Lodgings, he muſt be very diligent, taking with him two or three of his Souldiers, which are to return to their Troop, as guides to conduct the reſt to their Quarters.

IX. *Of the Corporals.*

THe Corporal is to aſſiſt his Lieutenant in placing the Sentinels; the Harquebuſiers are to diſcover and ſcoure the ways, and to officiate as forerunners or Scouts, under the charge of one of their Corporals, who muſt be an experienced perſon in reſpect of the ways. If any place of importance be to be guarded, a Corporal with his Squadron is ſent thither; he muſt be capable of good literature, for that he muſt keep a particular Liſt of his Squadron.

X. *Of the Trumpeters.*

A Trumpeter ought to be a politick, discreet and cunning person; for that the delivery of Embassies to and from the Enemy, are by him performed. In going upon any such, he ought to have a vigilant eye upon their Works, Sentinels, and other things that lye in his passage, and privately conceal them till his return. And in his discourse with his adversary, very cautious and catching, or circumventing him, by trapping him in his parley: Besides this, he must sound all the sounds of the Trumpet; as the Bontezelle, that is, Set on the Saddle; the Cheval, which is, Mount on Horse-back; the Standard, that is, Repair to your Colours. One Trumpet must always lodge with the Cornet, (for which the Captain must give allowance) and he must always have his Trumpet about him upon a sudden Alarm.

XI. *Of the Auditor.*

THe Auditor ought to be a man of great integrity, and understanding in the Law: In the absence of the Auditor-General, he heareth and judgeth the causes of the Cavalry, and maketh report thereof to his General, or in his absence, to the Lieutenant-General; without whose order he cannot execute any of his sentences. He is to keep neer the person of the General or Lieutenant-General, who are to see him respected. He is to take notice of the prizes of Victuals brought to the Quarters of Horse, that they be sold at reasonable rates; and to see that the Victuals suffer no extortion by the Provost-Marshal, or his Officers.

In the States Army, and at this time with us, the Horse and Foot have but one Auditor-General, who passeth no sentence himself; but it is done by a Council of War, in which every Captain hath a Vote.

XII. *Of the Provost-Marshal.*

THe Provost-Marshal ought to be an honest man; for that he is to look to the Weights and Measures, and to protect the Victuallers and Sutlers from the insolencies of the Souldiers. Himself, or one of his men, must always be in the Market-place, and is to inform himself at what rates the Sutlers buy their Victual, that the Commissary and Auditor may rate them accordingly. He must see the Orders published in the Horse-quarter strictly observed, and he must cleer those Quarters of vagrants and idle fellows. He must always carry his Truncheon in his hand; and having the same, it is death for any Souldier to lay hands on him. If he be to take a prisoner, he is not to enter the Quarter without leave of the Chief, who is to cause the Delinquent to be delivered up to him; but if the Delinquent offer to make escape, he may then enter the Quarter by his own Authority. In marching, he is to cleer the Ways, and to prevent the straggling Souldiers of Pillaging.

CON-

CONCERNING The Enrolling, Arming, and Exercising OF THE CAVALRY.

ALl things must be presupposed in a Souldier to be enrolled into the the Cavalry, which are common to him with the Infantry; as soundness of Body, vigour of Members, of fitting Age, between 20 and 40. a Resolution to addict himself to that Profession, and a Desire to learn it; a vertuous emulation of Advancement by Merit, due Obedience to his Superiours, and a strict observation of Military Discipline; above all, the fear of God, which will direct him to follow Virtue, and abhor Vices: with these general Qualifications he ought to be endowed; and as to the Profession he hath now undertaken, these particular Faculties are necessary. He ought to be active, nimble, and to know well what belongs to a Horse; he must be curious and careful to keep his Horse and Arms in good order. He must wear a Scarf of his Princes or Generals Colours, and not put it off though he go out of his Quarter, whether alone or in Company, by which means (besides the Ornament) they will (by the thoughts of whose Badge it is) forbear many unfitting Words and Actions, they being subject by that to be discovered.

I. *Of the Arming of the Cuirassier.*

THe Cuirassier is to be armed in this manner. His Horse being about 15 hand high, strong, swift, and well managed. His Arms, a close Casque, or Headpiece, Gorget, Brest, Pistol and Caliver-proof, the Back, Poldrons, Vanbraces, two Gauntlets, Taffers, Cuissets, Culets, or Guard *de vain*, all fitting to his Body. A good Sword, very stiffe and sharp pointed, with Girdle and Hangers so fastned upon his Cuirass, as he may readily draw it; a Buff-Coat with long skirts, to wear between his Armour and his Cloaths.

He must have two Cases with good Fire-lock-Pistols hanging at his Saddle, the Barrel being 18 Inches long, and the bore fitting for Bullets of 20 or 24 in the pound to rowl in. He is to have a Boy and a spare Nag to carry his spare Arms and Oat-sack, and to get him Forrage. His Saddle and Bit must be strong, made after the best manner; he must wear his Scarf, and must have his Bridle made with a Chain, to prevent cutting.

II. *Of managing of the Horse and Arms.*

CConcerning the Horse (supposing him to be of sufficient stature and strength, nimble of joynts, and sure of foot) he must of necessity be made fit for ser-

vice, ſo that you may have him to be ready at command, to pace, trot, gallop, to run in full carreer; alſo to advance, ſtop, retire, and turn readily to either hand, and all with alacrity and obedience. Now to bring him to this ready turning, he is to be ridden the Ring, and Figure of 8. firſt in a large, then in a narrower compaſs. Firſt upon his pace, then upon the trot, and ſo to the gallop and carreer. He may be taught theſe things by uſing the Hand, Leg, and Voyce: for the Hand (obſerving not to move the Arm, only the Wriſt) if you would have him to face to the Left, a little motion of the little Finger on that Rein, and a touch of the left Leg (without uſing the Spur) doth it. If to face or turn to the Left about, then a little harder. If you would have him to Trot, move both your Legs a little forward; for the gallop, more forward; and for the carreer, to yerk them moſt forward, and to move the Body a little forward alſo with it. After every motion performed, it were good to keep him ſome ſmall time in that motion: As when you bid him ſtand, to ſtand a while, &c. Alſo it were not amiſs (after every thing well performed) to give him ſome Bread or Graſs for a reward. For the Voyce, you may uſe the Words, Advance, Hold, Run, or the like: but becauſe the Voyce cannot always be heard, it were therefore beſt to uſe him moſt to the motion of the Hand and Leg. It is alſo very neceſſary, that you teach him to go ſide-ways; this he may be brought unto by laying his Provender ſomwhat far from him in the Manger, and keeping him from turning his head towards it. You muſt uſe him to the ſmell of Gun-powder, the ſight of Fire and Armor, the hearing of Shots, Drums, and Trumpets; all by degrees, and with diſcretion. When he is at his Oats, you may fire a little Gun-powder at a good diſtance from him, and ſo neerer by degrees: Afterwards a Piſtol at a diſtance, and ſo neerer by degrees; and in like manner may a Drum or Trumpet be uſed. He may ſometimes be dreſſed in Armor, and eat his Oats upon a Drum-head. It will be uſeful ſometimes to cauſe two Muſketiers, at convenient diſtance from you, to fire at each other, and thereupon to ride up cloſe to him. Alſo to ride him upon a compleat Armor upon a ſtake, and overthrow it, and trample upon it; by which means he will grow bold, not fearing to attempt any Object. You may uſe him to mountanous and uneven Ways, and teach him to Leap, Swim, &c.

Of Exerciſing the Cuiraſſier.

BEfore I ſpeak of the particular Poſtures belonging to the exerciſing of the Cuiraſſier, I will begin with this neceſſary preparative to Poſture, *viz.*

Command. 1. *To Horſe.*

Direction. Both Reins hanging in a looſe poſture, over the Horſe-neck, and upon the Pummel of the Saddle, the Horſman is firſt to take the end of the Reins, above the Button, in his right Hand, and with the Thumb and two firſt Fingers of that Hand, to draw them to an even length. Then putting the little finger of his left Hand between both Reins, under the Button, with the other three fingers of the ſame Hand, on the farther Rein, and the Thumb on the nether ſide of the Button, to graſp both Reins, that ſo (before he endeavour to mount) he may have his Horſe-head in ballance and at command; then graſping the Pummel of the Saddle with his left hand, and ſtanding with his full body cloſe to the Horſe-ſide, and juſt between the Bolſter and Cantle of the Saddle (always on the nere ſide of the Horſe) with the help of his right Hand, he ſhall put the left Foot into the left Stirrup, and with his right Hand taking faſt hold on the higheſt part of the Cantle behind, he ſhall (by the help of both Hands) gently (but ſtrongly, and in an upright poſture, without inclining his body to either hand) raiſe himſelf until he may ſtand perpendicular upon his left Foot, and

then

then casting over his right-leg, place himself in the Saddle. He being now mounted, his Postures are as follow:

Command. 2. *Uncap your Pistols.*

Direction. Turn down the Caps of your Pistol-cases (or Holsters) with your right-hand.

Command. 3. *Draw your Pistol.*

Direction. Draw your Pistol out of the Case with your right-hand, (always the left Pistol first) mounting the Muzzle of it.

Command. 4. *Order your Pistol.*

Direction. Sink your Pistol into your Bridle-hand, and remove your right-hand towards the Muzzle, and rest the But-end upon the right Thigh.

Command. 5. *Span your Pistol.*

Direction. Sink your Pistol into your bridle-hand, and take your Spanner in your right-hand, and put it upon the Axle-tree, winding it about till it stick, and return your Spanner to its place.

Command. 6. *Prime your Pistol.*

Direction. Holding your Pistol in your bridle-hand, (as when you Span'd it) take your Priming-box in your right-hand, pressing the Spring with your fore-finger to open the Box, put Powder into the Pan.

Command. 7. *Shut your Pan.*

Direction. Press in the Pan-pin with your Thumb, and shut it.

Command. 8. *Cast about your Pistol.*

Direction. With your bridle-hand cast about your Pistol, and hold it on your left side with the Muzzle upwards.

Command. 9. *Gage your Flasque.*

Direction. Take your Flasque in your right-hand, and with your fore-finger pull back the Spring; then turn the mouth of the Flasque downwards, and let go the Spring.

Command. 10. *Lade your Pistol.*

Direction. Press down the Spring which openeth the Flasque with your fore-finger, and bringing the mouth thereof to the Muzzle of the Pistol, turn the Powder into the Barrel.

Command. 11. *Draw your Rammer.*

Direction. Draw your Rammer with your right-hand turned, and hold it with the head downwards.

Command. 12. *Lade with Bullet, and ram home.*

Direction. Hold the Rammer-head in your right-hand, and take the Bullet out of your mouth with your thumb and fore-finger, and put it into the Muzzle of your Pistol, and your Rammer after it, and so ram home.

Command. 13. *Return your Rammer.*

Direction. Draw forth your Rammer with your right-hand, and return it to its place.

Command. 14. *Pull down your Cock.*

Direction. Bring your Pistol towards your right side with your bridle-hand; and resting the But-end upon your thigh, with your right-hand pull down the Cock.

Command. 15. *Recover your Pistol.*

Direction. Take your Pistol into your right-hand, and mount the Muzzle.

Com-

Command. 16. *Preſent and give Fire.*

Direction. Your Piſtol being in your right-hand, with your fore-finger upon the Tricker, incline the Muzzle thereof towards your Mark (with a fixed eye, and by degrees) on the right ſide of your Horſe-head, turning your right-hand, ſo that the Piſtols Lock may be upwards; having obtained your Mark, draw the Tricker and give Fire.

Command. 17. *Return your Piſtol.*

Direction. Return your Piſtol, and with your right-hand put it into your Caſe.

Concerning the Snaphans Piſtol, thoſe Poſtures wherein it differeth from the Fire-lock Piſtol, are theſe.

Command. 18. *Bend your Cock.*

Direction. Hold your Piſtol in your Bridle-hand, and with your right hand bend your Cock.

Command. 19. *Guard your Cock.*

Direction. Pull down the Back-lock with your right hand, it will ſecure the Cock from going off.

Command. 20. *Order your Hammer.*

Direction. Draw down the Hammer upon the Pan, with your right hand.

Command. 21. *Free your Cock.*

Direction. Thruſt back the Back-lock with your right thumb, thereby to give the Cock liberty.

For the more eaſie and ſpeeding lading of the Piſtol, for the gaining of time, and avoiding the carrying of either Flask or Touch-box, there is an invention of a Spanner or Key, which contains ſix Charges of Powder at the leaſt, and priming Powder ſufficient for thoſe Charges, and for the Cartouches wherewith the Piſtol-caſes be furniſhed; which the Cuiraſſier will find to be of very good uſe.

The Cartouches are made of white Paper, cut into convenient breadth and length, and rowled upon the Rammer or other ſmall round ſtick; the edge being paſted down, and the Rammer drawn out, one end of the Paper is to be doubled in, to keep the Powder from falling out: theſe Cartouches are to be made ſo big, as to fill neerly the bore of the Piſtol, and of length to contain as much Powder as the Piſtol requires for a Charge. When the Powder is in, tie it with thred, and then put in the Bullet alſo, tying that alſo; theſe the Souldier may make at ſpare hours, and have them always by him. When he uſes his Cartouches, he muſt bite off the Paper at the head of it, and ſo put it into the Barrel of the Piſtol with the Bullet upwards, and then ram it home: theſe being beforehand prepared, it will much expedite the work of lading his Piſtol.

The Cuiraſſier being well mounted, and throughly exerciſed in his Poſtures, the next thing he ſhould apply himſelf unto is, to be a good Marksman; to attain which, he muſt be frequently ſhooting at Marks on Horſback, having ſuch ſet upon a Tree, ſome higher and ſome lower.

The Cuiraſſier being armed Piſtol-proof, he muſt not give fire but at a very neer diſtance, being careful to make his Bullet do execution: the principal place of advantage to aim at is, the lower part of the belly of his Enemy, his arm-pits, or his neck. Some are of opinion, that it is not fitting for a Cuiraſſier to give fire, till he have his Piſtol under his Adverſaries Armor, or againſt ſome unarmed places; and if he miſs of an opportunity of hitting the man, he may aim at the head or breſt of his Horſe. He is commonly to give the charge upon a Trot, and ſeldome galloppeth, but upon a purſuit. Having ſpent both his Piſtols, and having no opportunity to load again, he muſt then betake himſelf to the laſt refuge, his Sword, placing the Pummel of it upon his right thigh, and with his

right

right hand to direct the point thereof by his eye, raising it higher or lower as occasion serveth, aiming at his Enemies Neck, Arm-pits, Eye, or about the Pummel of the Saddle at his Belly, &c. but being past his Enemy, he is to make a back-blow at him, aiming to cut the buckle of his Poldron, thereby disarming one of his Arms, &c.

Of Exercising the Harquebusier and Carbine.

NOwithstanding there be some difference between the Harquebusier and Carbine in their Horse, their Arming, and their Piece; yet in regard the Harquebus differeth nothing from the Carbine in length, only in the Bore, the manner of using them is one and the same.

In Marching he is to carry his Carbine hanging at his Belt by his right side, or else to order it upon his right thigh. In Fight he is to strive to gain the left side of his Enemy (contrary to the Curaſſier) because that in preſenting he is to reſt his Carbine on his bridle-hand, placing the butt-end on the right side of his Breast neer his Shoulder. He must exerciſe himself, that he may uſe his Carbine with exactneſs and dexterity, and be exquiſite in shooting at Marks.

For the manner of handling the Harquebus or Carbine, the directions before delivered may serve for sufficient Inſtruction; but forasmuch (as now adays) our Carbines are made with Snaphans, and somewhat differ from the former, I will set down the order of handling of it in the several words of Command.

Postures for the Snaphans-Carbine.

1. Order your Carbine.
2. Sink your Carbine into your Bridle-hand.
3. Bend your Cock.
4. Guard your Cock.
5. Prime.
6. Shut your Pan.
7. Caſt about your Carbine.
8. Guard your Flaſque.
9. Lade your Carbine.
10. Draw your Rammer.
11. Shorten your Rammer.
12. Lade with Bullet, and ram home.
13. Withdraw your Rammer.
14. Shorten your Rammer.
15. Return your Rammer.
16. Recover your Carbine.
17. Order your Hammer.
18. Free your Cock.
19. Preſent.
20. Give fire.

He is to uſe his Sword in all reſpects as the Curaſſier.

Of

Of Exerciſing the Dragoon.

THe Dragoon is of ſpecial uſe and ſervice to aſſiſt the Cavalry as Infantry; for there be many conſiderable Exploits which cannot be effected by the Cavalry alone.

The Muskettier muſt therefore exerciſe himſelf to give fire on Horsback. When they come to guard a Paſſage, or do other the like ſervice, they are to alight, and to demean themſelves as Infantry; and being alighted to do their ſervice, every of them is to caſt his Bridle over the neck of his Sides-mans Horſe, in the ſame order as they marched, keeping them ſo together, by ſome purpoſely appointed to attend them.

Of Exerciſing the Cavalry in their Motions.

THe Horſman being ſufficiently inſtructed in the managing of his Horſe, and in the uſe of his particular Arms; it is time now that he be taught how to demean himſelf being joyned in a Body.

The Horſe being to be exerciſed, is to be drawn up into a Body, not by Ranks (as in the Infantry) but by Files, and thoſe of 5 deep, according to moſt Authors; or of 6 deep, according to others, that of 5 being a number not diviſible by 2, ſo that in doubling of Ranks, or Half-files, or the like, there will always remain an odd Rank. Others would have them (eſpecially the Harquebuſiers) to be 8 in File, making the Troop to conſiſt of 64 Men; being drawn up into a ſquare Body. Being thus put into Battelia, the firſt thing they are to be inſtructed in, is Diſtance; and herein there is a diſagreement among Authors; Some making Cloſe order to be 2 paces; Open order 4 paces, and ſo forward to a triple, quadruple Diſtance proportionable. Others make but two kinds of Diſtances; Cloſe order, which is 3 foot; and Open order, which is 6 foot. And here a difference is to be obſerved between the manner of taking the Diſtance of the Cavalry, and that of the Infantry; for in the Foot, the Diſtance is taken from the Center, or middle of the Souldiers Body, which here cannot be underſtood but only of the ſpace of Ground between Horſe and Horſe. But the beſt and lateſt Authors are of opinion, that the Cavalry being to be exerciſed in their Motions, ſhould be at their Diſtance of 6 foot or Open order, ſtanding right in their Ranks and Files.

The Motions which belong to the Exerciſing of the Cavalry are principally four, *viz.*

1. *Facings.*
2. *Doublings.*
3. *Countermarches.*
4. *Wheelings.*

And here note, that in the exerciſing of the Cavalry we uſe to this day the ſame words that the *Grecians* and *Romans* did of old: for a File the *Romans* called *Verſus* and *Decuria*; a Rank, *Jugum*; a File-leader, *Ducanus*; (becauſe their *Decuria* or File conſiſted of 10) a Bringer-up they termed *Tergi-ducor*; a Leader (being every odd man in a File) *Phraſtes*; a Follower (which is every even number) *Subſtes*; a Side-man, *Aſtes*.

Their *Diſtances* alſo were the ſame with ours; their two *Cubits* (every *Cubit* being a Foot and a half of our Meaſure) agrees with our three Foot; their four *Cubits*, our ſix Foot: and ſo increaſing upon occaſion.

They ordered their Horſe-troops at ſix Foot Diſtance between File and File in March, and three Foot in fight.

In

In all the motions, we also retain the same words of Command which they used.

Facing, they called *Declinatio*: to those { Right, *Hastam.* / Left, *Scutum.*

Facing about, *Immutatio.*

Doubling by { Ranks, / Files. } *Duplicandi duo genera* { *juge.* / *versus.*

Their *Countermarches* the same which we use.

Evolutio { *Chorica*, / *Macedonica*, / *Laconica*, } *per* { *Decuries*, / *Scutum.*

Wheelings, the same with us, *Conversio ad* { *Hastam.* / *Scutum.*

Reversio est conversionis restitutio. Inflexio, Wheeling about.

The use of *Facings* is to make the Troop perfect to be suddenly prepared for a Charge, on either Flank or in the Reer.

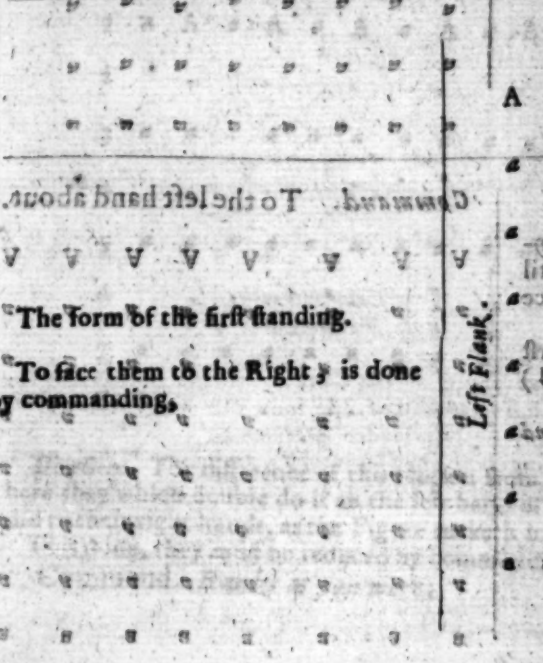
Doubling of Ranks, or doubling by Half-files, or by Bringers up, is used upon occasion of strengthning of the Front.

Doubling of Files, or doubling by Half-ranks, serveth to strengthen the Flanks.

Countermarches serve either to reduce the File-leaders into the place of Bringers-up, and so have the best men ready to receive the charge of the Enemy in the Reer; or to bring one Flank into the place of the other, or Front and Reer, or either Flank, into the middle of the Body.

The use of *Wheelings* is to bring the Front to be ready to receive the Charge of the Enemy, on either Flank or Reer.

For the better information and satisfaction, and for the ease apprehending of what hath been said, those several *Motions* are here following represented in Figures, by a Troop of Harquebusiers of 64 men; and in every Figure, the File-leaders are represented by this kind of A. the Bringers up by this kind of a. and the rest of the Body by this kind of a.



The form of the first standing.

To face them to the Right, is done by commanding,

Command. To the right hand.

Direction. This is done by turning (all at one and the same time) to the right hand.

The Front is where the right Flank was.

To reduce them to their first form, the word is,

Command. *As you were.*

Direction. It is performed by turning to the left hand.

From thence to face them to the left, the Word is,

Command. To the left hand.

Direction. It is performed by turning to the left.

From hence they are to be reduced, by saying,

Command. *As you were.*

Direction. It is performed by turning to the right.

Now to face them to the Rear, though it be proper first to do it by the right hand, yet for the more ready way, I would say,

Command. To the left hand about.

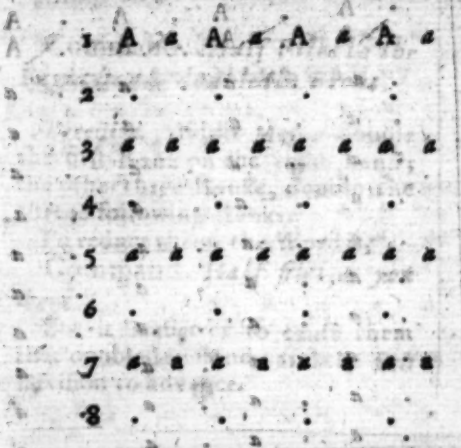
Direction. It is done by turning towards the left hand, until their faces front to that place which was before the Rear.

To reduce them to their first form (as that must be observed) the word is,

Command. *To the right hand about as you were.*

Command.

Command. *Ranks to the right double.*



The uſe hereof hath been ſhewed before; but to perform it, this is the *Direction.* Every other Rank, that is, every even Rank, is to paſs into the odd upon the right hand of his Leader, the ſecond Rank into the firſt, and ſo ſucceſſively.

To reduce them, the Word is

Command. *Ranks as you were.*

Direction. It is beſt done by cauſing thoſe Ranks which doubled to ſtand, and thoſe that ſtood to advance.

Command. *Ranks to the left double.*

Direction. The difference of this Motion from the former is nothing, but that here they which double do it to the left hand of their Leaders, which before they did to their right hands, as the Figure maketh it plain.

This done, they muſt be reduced by commanding,

Command. *Ranks as you were.*

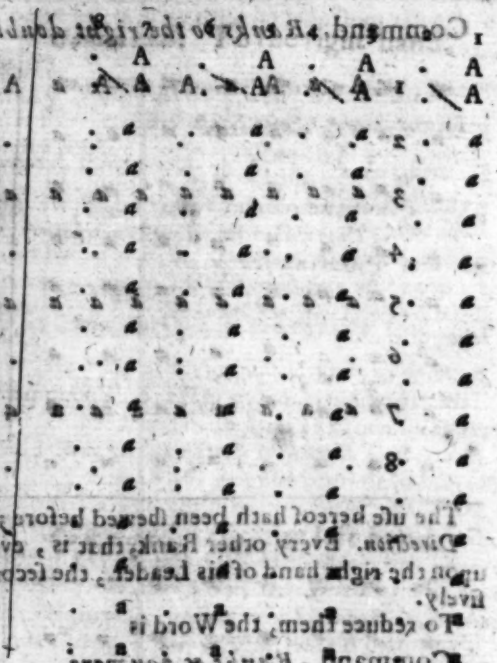
Command. *Files to the Right Double.*

Direction. Let the second File pass into the First (every man behinde his side-man) accounting from the right hand, the fourth into the third, and so the rest; which must be done through the whole Company at one instant.

But because the first Rank of the Troop is as the edge, and the Files are for the most part appointed but five deep, there seemeth no great necessity of doubling Files.

To reduce them, the Word is,

Command. *Files to the left as you were.*

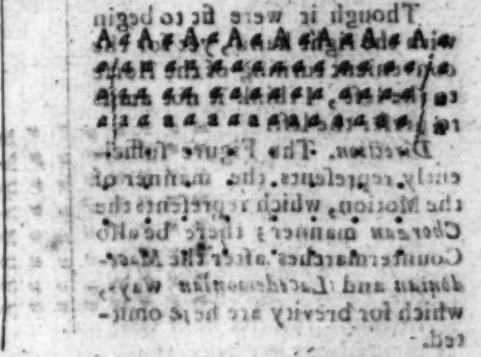


Command *Files to the left double.*

Direction. The Difference between this and the former Motion, is the difference of hands only. And by this means, those Files which stood before, must move now; and they which moved before, now stand; as appears by the Figure. They are reduced by commanding,

Command. *Files as you were*, or, *Ranks to the Right double.*

Command. *Half Files to the Right hand, double the Front.*



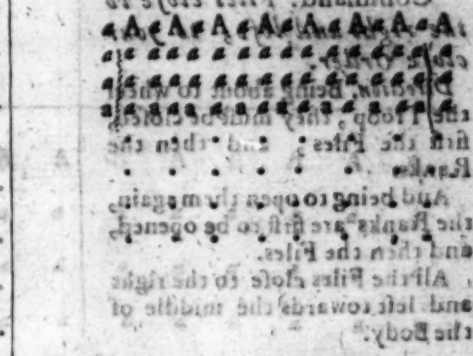
Direction. Middle Men, double the first Rank on the right hand; the other three Ranks, double the three following Ranks.

To reduce them, the Word is,

Command. *Half-files, as you were.*

But it is better to cause them that doubled to stand, and the first Division to advance.

Command. *Half Files to the Left hand, double the Front.*

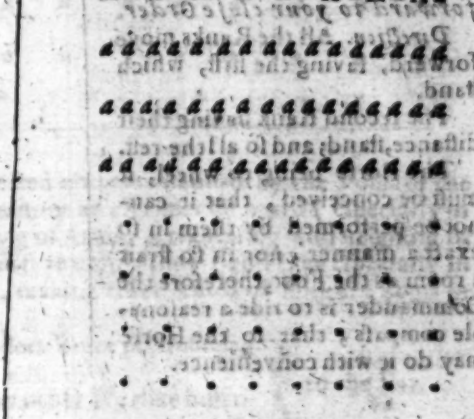


Direction. This Motion differs from the former, in the hand only.

There is also doubling of Ranks by the Half-Files entire to the right or left, or both by Division; but because the Files (especially of Guirasiers) are seldome above five deep, the doubling of Ranks, Half-files, &c. is little used.

The reducing of them, is shewed in the former Motion.

Command. *Bringers-up, to the right hand double the Front.*



Direction. The last Rank must pass into the first, and so successively every one by the right hand of his Leader, as in the figure.

It is of goood use, but troublesome for the Horse to perform (especially in the reducing) so it may be used or omitted as shall be thought fit.

To reduce them,

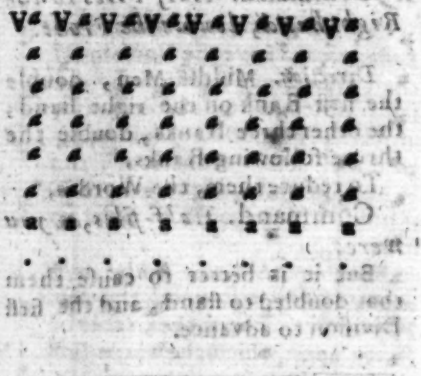
Command. *Bringers-up, as you were.*

Command.

Command. *Files to the Left hand Countermarch.*

Though it were fit to begin with the right hand, yet for the convenient turning of the Horſe to the left, I think it not amiſs to prefer the left.

Direction. The Figure ſufficiently repreſents the manner of the Motion, which repreſents the *Choraan* manner; there be alſo Countermarches after the *Macedonian* and *Lacedemonian* ways, which for brevity are here omitted.

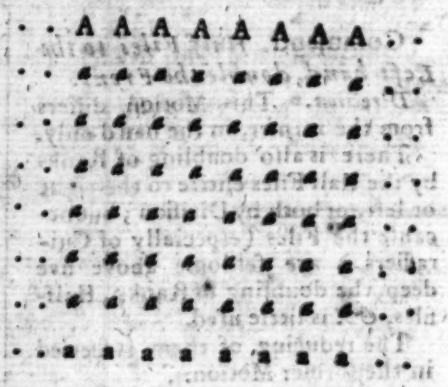


Command. *Files cloſe to the right and left, to your cloſe Order.*

Direction. Being about to wheel the Troop, they muſt be cloſed, firſt the Files, and then the Ranks.

And being to open them again, the Ranks are firſt to be opened, and then the Files.

All the Files cloſe to the right and left towards the middle of the Body.

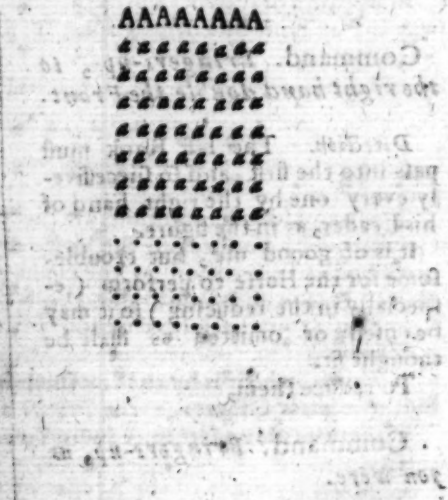


Command, *Ranks cloſe forward to your cloſe Order.*

Direction. All the Ranks move forward, ſaving the firſt, which ſtand.

The ſecond Rank having their diſtance, ſtand; and ſo all the reſt.

The Horſe being to wheel, it muſt be conceived, that it cannot be performed by them in ſo exact a manner, nor in ſo ſtrait a room as the Foot, therefore the Commander is to ride a reaſonable compaſs, that ſo the Horſe may do it with convenience.



Command.

Command. *To the left hand Wheel.*

Certain Authors, as *Melzo* and *Basta*, would have the Horse in all their Wheelings, to do it by the left (which is the readier way, unless the ground or other hinderance will not permit it) the Wheeling to the Right, is here omitted, which should in order go first.

Direction. All the Body must move to the left upon the left File-leader, who is the Center or Hinge upon which the whole Body turneth.

To reduce them,

Command. *Wheel as you were.*

There is also Wheeling to the Right or Left about, Wheeling Wings into the Front, *&c.*

To reduce them into their first Order,

Direction. First the Ranks are to be opened, then the Files, which bringeth them to their first form.

In opening of Ranks, the only way is, to do it by opening forward.

These and such like Motions are directed and commanded by the Voice of the Commander; but because the Voice cannot at all times be heard (especially in gross bodies) by reason of the clashing of Armor, trampling and neighing of Horses, tumultuous sounds, and noise of the Multitude (and that especially in fight) Antiquity hath invented helps, making three kinds of Military Signs or Directions:

1. *Vocal*, which is by the Commanders Voice pronounced by the inferior Officers,
2. *Semivocal*, by Drum, Trumpet, or other Warlike instrument, } to the Ear.
3. *Mute*, By Signs to the Eye; as by the Enfign, Standard, *&c.*

The Cavalry therefore must be taught distinctly to know the Sounds of the Trumpet, as when to clap on their Saddles, when to mount, when to repair to their

their Cornet, when to Troop away, when to give a Charge, when to retreat, when to attend the Watch, and the like. All which being the louder Voice of the Commander, they muſt perfectly obſerve and obey.

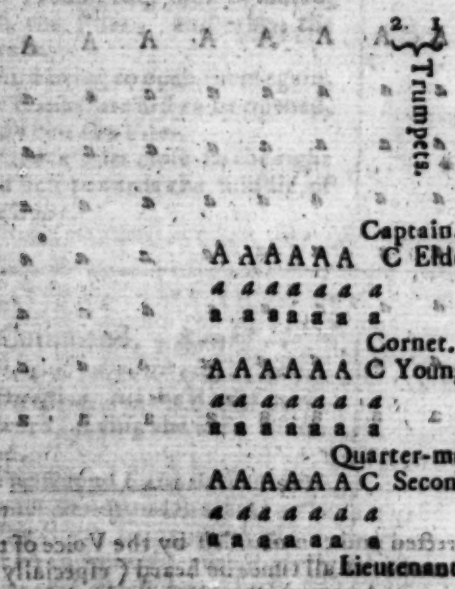
Notwithſtanding I have here propounded a Troop of 64 Horſe to be exerciſed in their Motions, and thoſe of eight in File, yet the general opinion is, that a Troop ought not to be deeper then five in File, though the Troop do conſiſt of 100 Horſe.

Every Troop muſt be furniſhed with

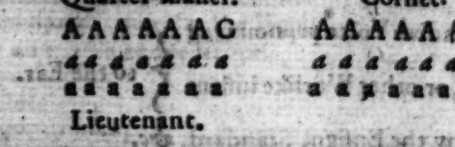
A Captain. A Quarter-maſter. A Sadler.
A Lieutenant. Three Corporals. A Chyrurgeon.
A Cornet. Two Trumpeters. A Farrier.
A Clerk.

When the Troop is to March, they are to be divided into three equal parts, according to the number of Corporals; which parts are called Squadrons, and diſtinguiſhed by theſe Names, The Captains, Lieutenants, and Cornets Squadron. The firſt Squadron is to be led by the Captain, the ſecond by the Cornet, the third by the eldeſt Corporal: the Lieutenant and Quarter-maſter are to march in the Reer.

The manner how a Troop of 60 Horſe, beſides Officers, ſhould March into the Field to be Exerciſed, as it is in uſe at this day.



When they are drawn up to Exerciſe they ſtand thus.



Let this ſuffice for their particular Marching and Drawing up into Battalia: as for their Marching in groſs, we ſhall next come to ſpeak of that.

Con-

Concerning
The MARCHING of an ARMY
Both
HORSE & FOOT,
With the
Train of Artillery, Baggage, *&c.*
Exemplified in an Army of 22000 *Foot, and* 5000 *Horse.*
With the manner how the Prince of *Orange* Marched to beſiege *Groll.*

The Marching of an Army.

I Come now to let you ſee an Army of 22000. Foot, and 5000 Horſe, with thirty pieces of Ordnance, to wit, eight Half cannon, ſix Quarter-cannon, and ſixteen Field-pieces, march in a Country where they may be charged either in Front or Reer; then ſhall I give you ſome rules for paſſing of Straits and Rivers: And laſtly, I will ſhew you the form and Order that the Prince of *Orange* obſerved in ſome of his Marches.

You are to obſerve, that the Army is to be divided into Van-guard, Battail and Reer; and becauſe the Van is the moſt honourable place, they change every day, ſo that he that hath the Van this day, hath the Reer to morrow; and he that had the Battle, marcheth in the Van; ſo likewiſe he that had the Reer the firſt day, marcheth in the Van the third day: and this Order doth the Regiment in every *Tertie* alſo follow.

Being thus divided, they are all upon Order given by the General to ſtand ranged in Battalia, either in their ſeveral Quarters, or in ſome place of Arms appointed for the whole Army; and ſtanding ſo in readineſs, Command being given to March,

There ſhall firſt ſet forwards 500 Horſe, in one or more Troops, as occaſion ſhall require, to diſcover and cleer all the Paſſage that the Army is to march by; they ſhall advance an Engliſh Mile or more, according to the Quality of the Country, before the Army, and ſend a Corporal out of every Troop, which beſt knows the Country, with fifteen or ſixteen Horſe, to ſearch and ſcoure all ſuſpected ways; thoſe Corporals ſhall alſo advance as much before their Troops, as their Troops are before the Army, or thereabouts, according as the Country

is opened or covered, and always keep three or four Horſe a Muſquet ſhot before them, to prevent any ſudden ſurpriſe; and if they diſcover any Enemies, they are preſently to ſend a Horſe-man to advertiſe their Troops, and they likewiſe to give notice to the Army.

They muſt alſo diligently inform themſelves, as neer as poſſibly they can with the ſtrength of the Enemy, and ſtill ſend Meſſengers with advertiſement; by whom they ſhall alſo receive Order, how they ſhall retire or diſpoſe of themſelves.

After them ſhall follow 1000 with Fire-locks and Half-pikes, divided into ſeveral Troops, as well to ſuccour the ſaid Horſe, as to guard the Ordnance of the Van-guard that follow; and they ſhall alſo ſend fifty men on either Flank, with ſufficient Officers to diſcover and keep off ſmall parties.

Then ſhall march two Companies of Pioniers, to even the way for the Artillery; and with them one Waggon with Materials, and an other with Victuals.

Next eight Field-pieces all ready charged, and attended by two Gentlemen, four Gunners, two Waggons loaden with Powder, two with Bullets, and one Conductor.

Then three Quarter-cannon likewiſe charged, and attended by one Gentleman, two Gunners, one Waggon loaden with Powder, one with Bullets, and one Conductor.

After them four Half-cannon upon their Carrages, attended by two Gentlemen, four Canoniers, four Waggons loaden with Powder, four with Bullets, one with a Bucks head, and other Inſtruments neceſſary to mount and diſmount the Peeces, and two Conductors.

Next ſhall follow 2000 Horſe, marching in a good diſtance by Regiments or Troops, and in good Order.

After them the Van-guard of Foot conſiſting of 7000, and marching orderly by Regiments, at their appointed diſtances.

There ſhall follow them half the Ammunition and Victuals for the Army; then the Generals and Chief Officers Waggon; and laſtly, the particular Waggons belonging to the Van-guard, and half of that which belongs to the battail, marching, and taking place in the ſame Order, as do the Regiments they belong unto in their ſeveral Bodies.

Then ſhall march the Battail, conſiſting likewiſe of 7000 Foot, followed with the reſt of the Ammunition, Vivers and baggage of the Battail; and alſo with that which belongs to the Reer.

After them ſhall march in well ordered Diviſions, the Reer of the Foot conſiſting of 6000 Foot, and next 2000 Horſe, as aforeſaid.

Then (in the ſame order as is mentioned in the Van-guard) ſhall march four Half-cannons, three Quarter-cannon, and eight Field-pieces accompliſhed with their appurtenances, as Powder, Bullets, neceſſary Inſtruments, and ſufficient perſons to manage and attend them.

Next them 1000 Fire-locks to guard the Ordnance, and ſuccour the Forlorn-hope of the Reer, as is aforeſaid.

Laſtly, (to cloſe up the Army) ſhall march 500 Horſe, obſerving the ſame Order as is preſcribed them in the Van-guard.

Many there are that diſlike the placing the baggage among the Troops, eſpecially when the Army is to paſs any narrow way or ſtraits, becauſe the Waggons take up ſo much ground, and ſeparate the Troops ſo far, that upon occaſion they will not be able to ſuccour each other; and it is certain, that an Army thus divided may eaſily be affronted: But there is no General ſo ill advertiſed, being to paſs a ſtrait, that hath not intelligence where his Enemy attends for him, whether it be in Front or Reer: And if his Enemy waits for him a head, he can let his baggage come in the Reer, next after the Reer of the Foot. If he follow him, he may place his baggage before the Van-guard of the Foot, ever taking care to appoint a ſufficient guard to attend it: and in an open Country,

where

where the Troops may march in Battalia, the Waggons may well march between the Troops, placing themselves likewise in Ranks, and making a Front as large as the Body they follow; so shall they take up but little ground, and be no trouble at all: and there they are out of danger, which otherwise they will be subject to, if an Enemy be neer, and strong in Horse.

The Order that the Prince of Orange *Marched in, going to besiege* Groll.

First marched the Horse belonging to the Van-guard.

After them two Companies of Pioniers, with two Waggons loaden with Victuals, and one with Quarter-poles.

Next the Enginiers and Quarter-masters a Horse-back.

Then followed the Guards, and after them three Field-pieces of six pound Bullet, and six Chambred-pieces of twelve pound Bullet, with all things belonging to them, upon nineteen Waggons; five for the Field-pieces, and fourteen for the Chambred-pieces.

Next came the Van-guard of Foot, consisting of six Regiments, and followed by three Waggons loaden with 3000 pound of Powder, one with 1000 pound of Match, and one with 1000 pound of Musquet-bullets, and upon them sixty or seventy empty bags to deal out the Powder.

Then followed a Lieutenant with fifty men taken out of the Van-guard to guard the Waggons.

Next marched the Battail of Foot, consisting of four Regiments, and after them (as before) three Waggons with 3000 pound of Powder, and one with 1000 pound of Match, and one with 1000 pound of Musquet-bullets, with empty bags, as aforesaid.

After them followed the Reer-guard of the Foot.

Then the Waggons belonging to his Highness, the States, and all the Officers of the Army, as also of the Foot-voluntiers.

Next the Ammunition, Materials, and other necessaries belonging to the Army, upon 485 Waggons, under the Command of Commissary *Martien*, followed by four Troops of Horse.

Then the Ammunition and necessaries belonging to the Artillery, under Commissary *Beckbout*.

After followed the rest of the Artillery, to wit, twelve Half-cannon, six Chambred-pieces of twenty four pound Bullet, twenty four Drakes of six pound Bullet, and twenty four of three pound.

Next came the Officers and Train belonging to the Artillery.

After them, one Company of Pioniers with fifty Fire-locks, and one Waggon loaden with Victuals; then the Commissary of the Vivers with 100 Waggons, loaden with bread and provision.

After him eight Troops of Horse, followed with one Waggon, loaden with 1000 pound of Powder, and one with 1000 pound of Match, as also empty Bags to deal the Powder.

Then a Lieutenant with a Guard, as is aforesaid.

And last of all, six Troops of Horse.

Note, that his Highness in place of this Lieutenant and his Guard, doth usually appoint a Regiment of Foot to come in the Reer to guard the Waggons.

How to pass a strait.

When you come to any Passage or Strait, Let your Van-Guard make a Halt, until the rest of the Army be come up and drawn in order of Battle, and then divide the Troops, and fit them to the bredth of the place you are to pass through, and let every Troop when it is passed, put it self into the same order it was in before it came to the Strait, and advance so far forwards, as that the Troops that follow may have room likewise to draw in order, and then stand until all the Army be come thorow. If the passage be Woody where no discovery can be made, send not above twenty or thirty Horse before, for discovery of the Passage in Front, but let the rest of the Horse of the Van-guard march between the Van-guard and Battle of Foot, until they be past the Strait.

The manner of passing a River.

If you be to pass a River, and that the Enemy be not at the Passage, but on his way to hinder you; First, draw your Army in Battalia, and plant some pieces of Artillery in places most advantageous, to succour your Troops in their passage; and if you find that he is stronger then you in Foot, let your Horse pass first over, and chuse a fit place to stand neer the way that the Enemy is to come, and let them send some light-Horse before to discover: then let your Van-guard of Foot with some Field-pieces follow, and find a place to stand in Battalia; after it let the Battle march, and place it self on the left hand of the Van-guard, then the Reer-guard, which shall likewise take the left hand of the Battle, each with their Field-pieces belonging to them.

The Troops being past, the rest of the Ordnance with their Train shall follow, then the baggage of the great Officers; and lastly, the baggage of the Troops in the order of March.

But if your Enemies chief strength consist in Horse, then shall you send no more Horse over then shall be fit for discovery; but let the Van-guard of the Foot pass first, and after it the Horse belonging to the Van-guard, which shall place themselves in Battalia on the right hand of the Foot; then shall follow the Battle, which must stand on the left hand of the Van-guard; after it the Horse of the Battle, which shall cover the Flank of the Battle, until the Foot of the Reer-guard be come up, and then they shall edge to the left hand, and leave room for the Reer to come in between them and the Battle, and stand on the left Wing, which is their due place; then shall follow the Horse of the Reer, which must be divided indifferently between the two Wings; and last of all shall march the Artillery, Ammunition and baggage in the order aforesaid.

If you be to pass a River, and have an Enemy at your back, when you have made your Bridge, send over eight or ten Pieces, and place them in places most convenient to annoy your Enemy, if he offer to come to trouble you, and then cast up a Horn-work, or fair half Moon upon the side you are on, and place therein five or six Field-pieces; then let the rest of your Ordnance be drawn over, and planted likewise on the other side in places most commodious for the advantage aforesaid. After them shall follow your Ammunition and baggage; then the Horse; and lastly, the Foot in good order, bringing with them the Pieces left in the Works, which shall pass safely under the Command of the Ordnance planted on the other side, and break up the bridge after them.

Having thus far proceeded, I should in the next place let you see a List of the Ammunitions, Materials, and other Warlike provisions, which the Prince of *Orange* takes with him in Shipping when he goes to the Field; as also what he takes

takes out of it to be carried upon Waggons, when he marcheth by Land, with the Waggons thereto necessary. But since I have first spoken of the marching of an Army with eight half-Cannon, six quarter-Cannon, and sixteen Field-pieces; I will set down what Ammunition and other things are needful to march with them, allowing every half-Cannon to shoot an 150 shot, every quarter-Cannon 100, and every Field-piece 80.

A List of Ammunition and other necessaries to March with eight half-Cannon, six quarter-Cannon, and sixteen Field-pieces, allowing every half-Cannon 150 Shot, every quarter-Cannon 100. and every Field-piece 80. with the number of Waggons thereto needful.

			Waggons
Bullets for half-Cannon	1200	whereof 40 upon a Waggon	30
Bullets for quarter-Cannon	600	upon each waggon 80	8
Bullets for the Field-pieces	1280	upon each waggon 160	8
Powder	24000		24
Boxes for Cartridges	160	upon each waggon 40	4
Capravens, or great Joysts	30	upon each waggon 10	3
Small Joysts	40	upon each waggon 20	2
Oaken planks for bedding	60	upon each waggon 10	6
Deal or Firr-planks	100	upon each waggon 25	4
Spars of all sorts	100	upon each waggon 50	2
Two Bucks-heads or Gins with the appurtenances belonging to them, to mount and dismount the Pieces			2
For Hurdles			2
For spare Ladles, Rammers, Spunges and Leavers			2
For Traces, Lines to draw Ordnance, and Collars for Horses			1
For the preparation for Ropes			1
For the Harness-maker and his Tools			1
For Spades, Shovels, Axes, Hatchets, Chopping-knives and Mattocks			3
For Lanthorns, Candles, Lamps, Tucks, Greace, and other like necessaries			1

Waggons for the Officers.

For the General of the Artillery	3
For the Lieutenant-General	2
For the Controuler	2
For the Commissary	1
For 12 Gentlemen of the Ordnance	4
For the Mr. Gunner	1
For the Commissary of the drawing Horses	1
For every Engineer	1
For each Captain of the Pioniers	1
For the Mr. Smith	1
For each Mr. Carpenter	2
For the Fire-workers each one	1
For the Captain of the Cannoniers	1
For the Bridge-Master	1
For the Mr. Petardier	1
For the Maker of Cannon-baskets	1

For

	Waggons.
For the Battery-Master	1
For the Quarter-Master	1
For the Provost	1

A List of Ammunition and such Warlike necessaries as the Prince of Orange takes with him in Shipping when he goes to the Field.

	lb.
Powder for Muskets	50000
Bullets for Muskets	50000
Match	80000
Hair-cloaths to cover the Powder	60
Woodden-hammers to open the Powder-barrels	12
Ladles to melt the Lead in	12
Moulds for Musket-bullets with 12 holes	12
Pincers to cut off the tayls of the bullets	6

Arms and other necessaries.

Muskets spare	300
Bandeliers	300
Rests	100
Scowring-sticks for Muskets	100
Pipes to hide light Matches in	3000
Half-Pikes	300
Long Pikes	2000
Lope-staves	100
Quarter-staves	200
Crooked Iron-shovels with long Poles to them to cast the earth forwards in a Gallery	12
Iron-shovels like the former with shorter Poles to cast up earth to cover the Gallery	12
Great Iron-hammers	8
Great Pincers	8
Hatchets with hammers at one end, some great some small	20
Iron-bars, some forked at the end	30
Sythes compleat	25
Dragges to draw things out of Water	25
Small dragges with Iron-chains to them of three fathom long, and an iron Wing thereto	12

Nails of all sorts.

Double Spikes	4000
Single Spikes	24000
Nayls of seven Inches	10000
Nayls of six Inches	10000
Nayls of five Inches	10000
Double middle-nayls	40000
Single middle nayls	70000
Nayls for Doors	30000
Lat-nayls	60000
Broad-headed-nayls	30000

Wood-

Wood-work.

Oaken-planks	100
Deals	6000
Sparrs	3000
Gapravens or great Joysts	3000
Firr-balks of 10 Ells	800
Balks of 12 Ells	600
Balks of 16 Ells	400
Small Sparrs	1200
Masts of 40, 50, and 60 foot long	100

Arms and other necessaries.

Compleat Arms	200
Arms of proof	100
Head-pieces of proof	100
Targets of proof	100
Haspels compleat	50
Rings to shut the Haspels together	25
Haspel-staves by provision	15000
Long Palisadoes	2000
Short Palisadoes	6000
Wooden beetles to drive the Palisadoes	200
Pinns for Palisadoes	10000
Nagers to boar holes for the Pinns in Palisadoes	30
Iron-hammers to beat the pinns into the Palisadoes	50
Nagers to search for Mines, some great some small	18
Ladders of all sorts	150
Foot Angles	60
Ice Spurs	6000

Instruments of all sorts necessary to work withal.

Carrs for one Horse, with all things necessary for Carr and Horse	100
Crew-waggons compleat	6000
Spare wheels for Crew-waggons	300
Spindles or Axels spare	1000
Cloven Deals to repair the Crew-waggons	200
Small Nayls for the same purpose	1000
Hand-barrows to carry Sodds	150
Shippers-hooks long and short	150
Spades to dig sods with	300
Pitch-forks with two and three forks	150
Other Spades	10000
Shovels	2000
Mattocks	1000
Pike-Axes	600
Great Axes	1200
Hachets	800
Chopping-knives	600
Pursnets with Iron-hoopes and long Poles to them to dragg Mud out of Motes	39

Other Necessaries.

Foursquare Baskets	4000
Round baskets	3000
Hurdles	1000
Great Blocks drawn up with Pullies to drive in great Palisadoes	2
Small blocks for the same use	10
Beese-bridges of ten foot long	50

Small

Small Lines to make cordage	*lib.* 4000
Great Packs to wind up timber	20
Buckets to carry water to quench fire	3000
Lanthorns as well of lattin as horn	40
Secret Lanthorns	12
Candles	*lib.* 400
Pans to burn Lamp-oyl in	25
Turks	6000
Torches	25
Pitch	*tun* 6
Tarr	*tun* 4
Hurds	*lib.* 400
Fire-panns	200
Unsleckt Lime in Tunns	*last* 1
Lines of 200 fathom long to draw up the Ammunition-Ships, when the Wind is contrary,	60
Canvas blindes of 150 foot long	2
Ship-windlaces of all sorts good store.	

A List of what his Highness takes out of this to carry upon Waggons, when he marcheth by Land; with the number of Waggons thereto necessary, allowing every Waggon to carry 1000 *weight.*

		Waggons.
Powder	20000	20
Bullets	20000	20
Match	15000	15
Muskets compleat	100	2
Pikes	300	3
Loop-staves	100	2
Spades	4000	18
Shovels	1000	4
Mattocks	400	2
Pike-Axes	100	1
Great Axes	400	2
Hatchets and chopping-knives	400	1
Deals	200	20
Capravens or great Joysts	200	3
Small Joysts	100	1
Crew-waggons compleat	100	4
Hand-barrows	25	1
Beese-bridges	10	5
Quarter-staves	100	2
Fire-Spars of all sorts	200	1
Pieces of beese-bridges with their appurtenances	10	5
A quantity of all sorts of Nails		1
Lanthorns	10	
Dark Lanthorns	4	2
Candles	*lib.* 100	
Lamps	6	

One Commissioner, with 24 Conductors, each mounted and armed with a Sword and a Case of Pistols.

The Commissioner that hath the Charge and oversight of these necessaries, hath for his assistance 24 Conductors or more, according to the number of Waggons, each mounted and armed with a Sword and Case of Pistols.

THE

The ART of Designing, Measuring and Laying out Of the QUARTERS, For the ENCAMPING Of an ARMY In the FIELD.

With ORDERS to be given out in such a QUARTER.

Also ORDERS for

WATCHING,

And other General Observations.

By Capt. THOMAS RUDD, Enginier to K. CHARLES the First.

The Argument.

HAving given you an account of the several Officers belonging to an Army, with their respective Offices, Duties, and Qualifications, with which they ought to be endowed: As also how, and in what manner the Cavalry *is to be* Enrolled, Armed, *and* Exercised *both in his* Postures *and* Motions, *and how a* Troop *or* Company, *and a*

whole Army *both* Horſe *and* Foot, *with* Train of Artillery *and other neceſſaries is to March*? *I think it now time to bring you to a* Quarter, *and therein I ſhall declare,*

I. *What Rules are to be obſerved in the choiſe of the Ground to Quarter in.*

II. *How the Quarter-maſter-General is to deſign the Quarters, the Ground being choſen.*

III. *The Geometrical or Inſtrumental manner of laying out the Quarters in the Field.*

IV. *How the building of the Huts is to be managed, and by whom.*

V. *The manner of ſecuring the Quarters by* Intrenchments, Redoubts, Horn-works, *and other* Fortifications.

The manner of Quartering in the general being thus largely diſcourſed of, I proceed next to the particular Quartering of the Souldiery: Giving you

VI. *Examples of Quartering a Regiment, both after the Old and New way. With the Reaſons which moved the Prince of* Orange *to alter the old Form.*

VII. *I have diſcovered the manner of Quartering the Horſe, giving you an Example of Quartering four Cornets, by which Preſident a whole Regiment or Regiments may be quartered in the like manner.*

VIII. *You have the manner of Quartering of a Foot-Army: and*

IX. *An Example of Quartering of a whole Army both Horſe and Foot: and for an Example have added a Scheme of the Form in which the Prince of* Orange *Quartered his Army both Horſe and Foot, Artillery, Waggons, &c.*

And to bring up the Reer, for the farther ſatisfaction of the Reader, I have added divers Orders *for* Watching, *and other* General Orders *to be obſerved in the* Quarters, *with what elſe is neceſſary for the* Encamping *of an Army, either in part or in whole.*

H

What Rules are to be observed in the choice of the Ground to Quarter in.

IN chusing your Ground for your Quarters, let it as neer as you can be upon high Ground, lest your Enemy being higher, may have an advantage of you by that means.

2. Let it be neer no Woods nor Groves, where your Enemy may lie in ambush, and sally out upon you, and vex you; yet let it not be very far from neither Wood nor Water, they being two as necessary things as can be. But let the Ground be champion, the better to discern your Enemy at a distance; and if possible, neer some River, for the relief of Men and Cattle, and for the cheaper conveying of necessaries for the use of the Souldiery.

3. See that the Ground you quarter upon be not at any time subject to overflow with Water, nor that any Water be let in upon you by Sluses or otherwise.

4. That no boggy, moorish, or unwholsome Grounds be neer your *Quarters*, which may be a means to bring Diseases and Sickness among the Souldiers.

5. That Forrage, Wood, and Straw be neer you, or may be easily conveyed to you.

6. That the *Quarters* be not too neer your Enemy, for fear of their Cannon; nor very far distant, but that timely relief may be given to the approachers.

7. That the Ground be of a competent largeness to contain the number of Companies, Horse, Foot, Artillery, and other necessaries thereunto belonging, with allowance of fit dimensions for every particular.

But it will rarely fall out that any place you can chuse will have all these conveniencies, wherefore gain as many of them as you can, and for the rest you must by industry supply. Wherefore (above all) let the Fortifications and Intrenchments about your *Quarters* be well made and guarded, lest by the neglecting of them you be surprized, and your Enemy hinder your relief.

How the Quarter-master is to design his Quarters when the Ground is chosen.

THis work is not to be done of a sudden, but the Quarter-master knowing the place where the *Quarters* are to be, let him go to his Chamber, and there consult with his List which he is to quarter; namely, how many Regiments of Horse, how many of Foot, what Waggons, what Artillery, and whatsoever else, as Sutlers, *&c.* he is to quarter; also how many Companies there is in each Regiment, and how many men in each Company.

He having collected and gathered them all together in a Note, let him take some pieces of fine past-board, and cut them into pieces 300 foot (by some small Scale) deep, and so broad as to contain the number of men of such a Regiment, either Horse or Foot, he is to quarter, allowing true distance of Ground both for Hut, Passage, Stable, *&c.* and at that length let him cut off his past-board square, and write upon this past-board the Colonels name, and number of men; and thus must he do for every Regiment both of Horse and Foot.

In like manner for the Generals *Quarters* and his Retinue; for the Provost, Quarter-masters, Ministers, Chirurgions, and all others that require single *Quarters*; and likewise for the Waggons and Sutlers. All these must he try out according as he finds their Numbers greater or lesser in his List, and cut his past-boards accordingly, waiting upon them as before.

His past-boards being thus prepared, let him upon a Table, or rather upon a

sheet of Imperial or Royal paper, draw divers occult parallel lines at 50 foot distance for Streets, and spaces of 300 foot for his several Regiments.

By help of these parallel Lines he may lay his past-boards upon this paper, and move them this way and that way, till he have brought them into a Square, or *Parallelogram*, or as regular a form as they will permit.

He having thus disposed them to the best advantage in his judgment, he may draw a Scheme or Plat thereof upon fair Paper or Parchment, writing the name of every Colonel and his number of men upon his particular *Quarter*, with the Generals *Quarters*, Market, Streets, Lanes, &c. making thereof a perfect Map; and adding a Scale thereto, he may measure the distance of any part thereof at pleasure. This being done, he may repair to his General, and shew him his design; which if he approve of, he may proceed to the laying out of the *Quarters* in the Field.

The Past-boards laid together.

How the Quarters are to be laid out in the Field.

THe paper-design being approved on, the Quarter-master-General repairs to the Field, his several Quarter-masters of every Regiment accompanying him, each of them having four staves of nine or ten foot high, painted of the Colour of their Regiment, with a Standard or Banner at the top thereof.

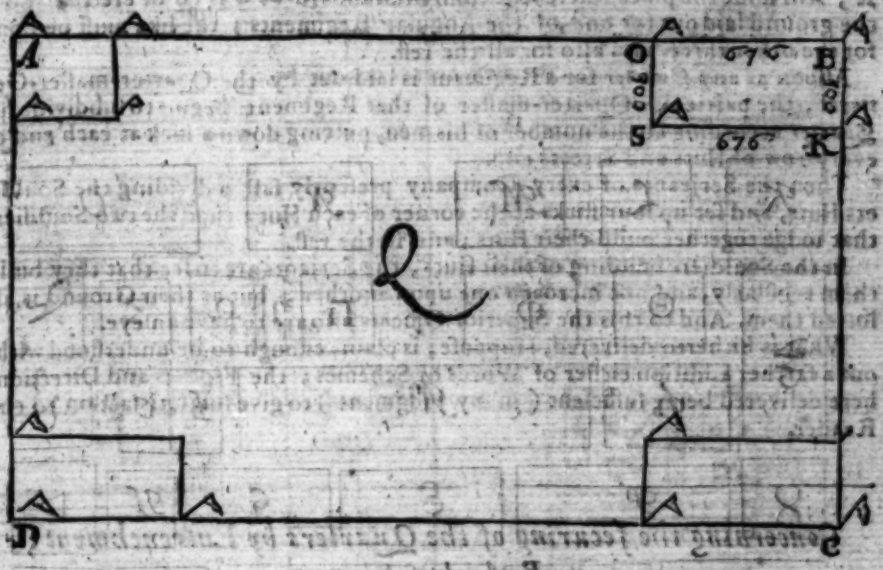
Then the Quarter-master-General coming to the Field with a Surveying Instrument, pitcheth it down at one of the angular points of his *Quarter*, and taking his sight, setteth off a right Angle from the point where his Instrument standeth, and measureth from thence with a Chain, the whole length of his *Quarter*; and at the end of that measure, he setteth up a Standard of the Colour of that Regiment that is to be quartered in that angle of the General Quarters. Likewise from his Instrument at right angles, he measureth out the bredth of his *Quarters*; and at the end of that measure he causeth another Standard to be erected, of the Colour of that Regiment that is to be there quartered:

and

and going to his Instrument, he causeth another Standard to be erected there, of the Colour of the Regiment that is there to be quartered.

Then removing his Instrument from this first place, let him carry it to any of the other Standards, and there place it; laying his Index and sights upon the Diameter thereof, and turning it about till he see his Standard that was set up where his Instrument last stood; then fixing it there, turn the Index to a Right-angle, and looking through the sights, measure out the length or breadth of your *Quarters* that way, and at the end of that measure set up a fourth Standard, of the colour of the Regiment there to be quartered.

The Quarters laid out in the Field.



Example.

Let the Ground made choice of for the *Quarters* be Q; then the Quarter-master coming into the Field, makes choice of the Point *A* for one of the Angles of his *Quarters*; and there erecting of his Instrument, the Index lying upon the Diameter thereof, he directs his sight to *B*; and because the length of his *Quarters* are to be 3000 foot, he causeth so much to be measured out from *A* to *B*; and at the point *B* causeth a Standard to be rected of the Colours of that Regiment which is to be quartered in that Angle. Then going to his Instrument, let him turn the Index about to a right Angle from the line *A B*, and looking through the sights towards *C*, let him cause 1700 foot (the breadth of his *Quarters*) to be laid out upon the ground from *A* to *D*; and at *D*, let them cause another Standard to be erected, of the Colours of the Regiment that is there to be quartered.

This done, let him remove his Instrument from *A* to *D*, and at the place where his Instrument stood, let there be erected another Standard. The Instrument being placed at *D*, and the Index laid upon the Diameter thereof, let him turn the Instrument about, till through the sights he see the Standard at *A*, and then fixing it there, turn the Index about till it be removed a right Angle (or 90 *deg.*) from the Diameter; then looking through the sights, cause 3000 foot to measured from *D* to *C*. Lastly, remove your Instrument to *C*, and laying the Index on the Diameter thereof, turn it about, till through the sights you see the Standard at *D*, and fixing the Instrument there, remove the Index to a right Angle from the Diameter; and then looking through the sights (if you have

per-

performed the former work truly) you shall exactly look upon the Standard which was first erected at *B*, and the distance between *B* and *C* being measured, shall be found to be exactly 1700 foot.

Thus are the four grand Angles of the Quarters found in the Field. Then beginning with any of the Regiments that are to be quartered in any of the Angles, as with that at *B*, look in your Draught, and see how many foot in length is allotted for it, which is 676; then measure that out from *A* to *O*, and set up a Standard there; then see how many foot broad that Quarter is, *viz.* 300, and measure that out from *B* to *K*, and there also set up a Standard. Then the length 676, and the bredth 300, being measured both ways from *K* to *S*, and from *O* to *S*, then erecting a Standard also; these two last Standards at *O* and *K*, will finde the place where the fourth Standard at *S* is to be erected. So is the ground laid out for one of the Angular Regiments; the like must be done for the other three, and also for all the rest.

Assoon as any *Quarter* for a Regiment is laid out by the Quarter-master-General, the particular Quarter-master of that Regiment begins to subdivide his *Quarter* according to the number of his men, putting down a stick at each end of every row of Huts and Streets end.

Then the Serjeants of every Company presently fall a dividing the Souldiers Huts, and set up four sticks at the corner of each Hut: then the two Souldiers that lodge together build their Huts; and so the rest.

In the Souldiers building of their Huts, the Serjants are to see that they build them regularly, and not incroach one upon another, but as their Ground is allotted them. And to this the Superior Officers alsoare to have an eye.

What is hitherto delivered, I suppose, is plain enough to be understood without a farther addition either of Words or Schemes; the Figures and Directions here delivered being sufficient (in my judgment) to give full satisfaction to the Reader.

Concerning the securing of the Quarters by Entrenchment, Redoubts, &c.

THe Quarter-master-General having done his part, and the particular Quarter-masters theirs; the Enginier next is to act his part: who drawing Parallel lines to the out-side of the General Quarters at 206 foot distance, 200 foot being for the Alarm-place, and the six foot for the Parapet.

At this 206 foot distance, the Pioniers dig a Trench or Furrow of about half a foot broad, and so much deep. Without or in this Furrow is the beginning of a Ditch six foot broad, to be digged round about the Quarters, which is to be done by the Foot-Souldiers, it being for their security.

Then the Enginier is to consider how many foot of Ditch there is about the whole *Quarters*, and with that number goes to the Quarter-master-General, and enquires of him the number of the Infantry; and by these two they compute how much of the Ditch each Regiment must dig: thus,

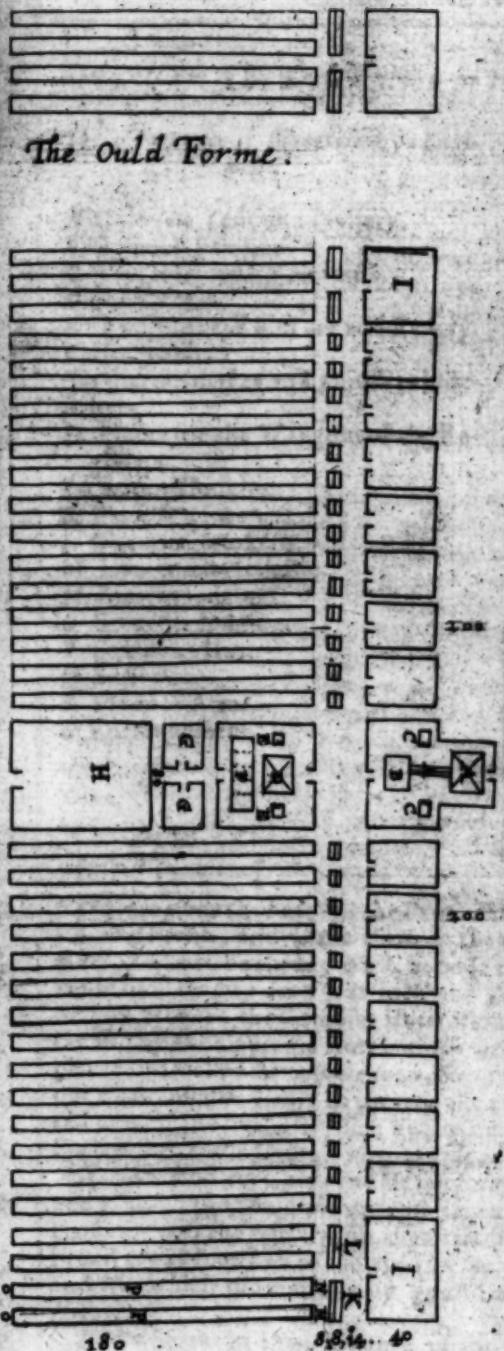
If the number of ditching be 7500 foot, and the number of the Infantry is 8560.

Now suppose one Regiment contain 1320 Souldiers, how much of that Ditch must that Regiment dig?

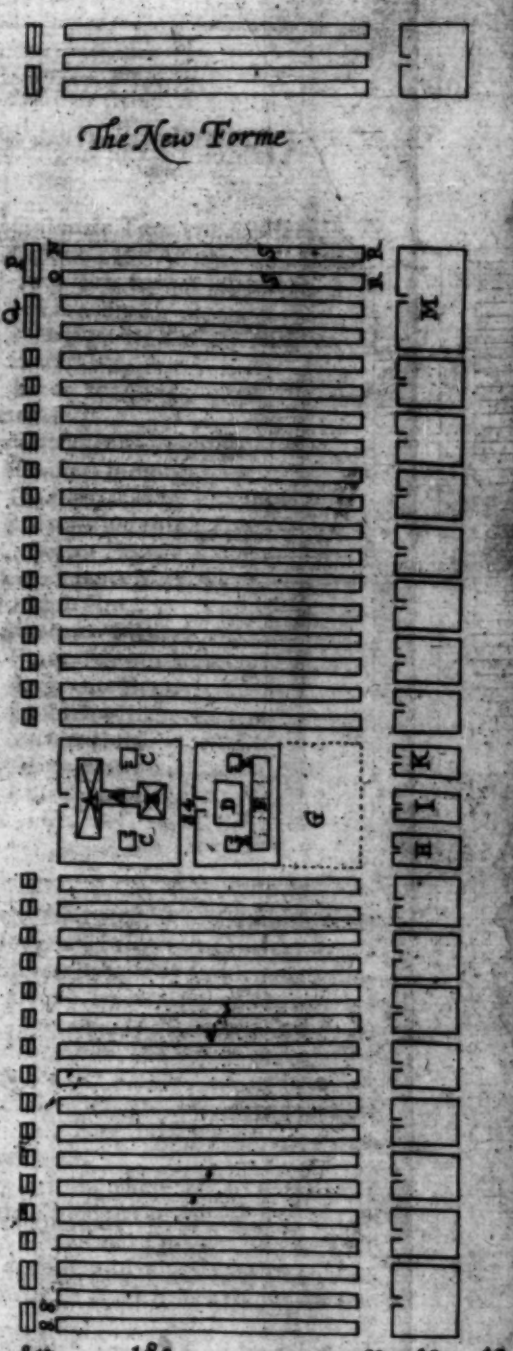
Multiply 1320 by 7500, and it produceth 99100. which being divided by 8560 giveth 1157 and about three quarters, and so many yards must that Regiment dig which hath 1320 men in it.

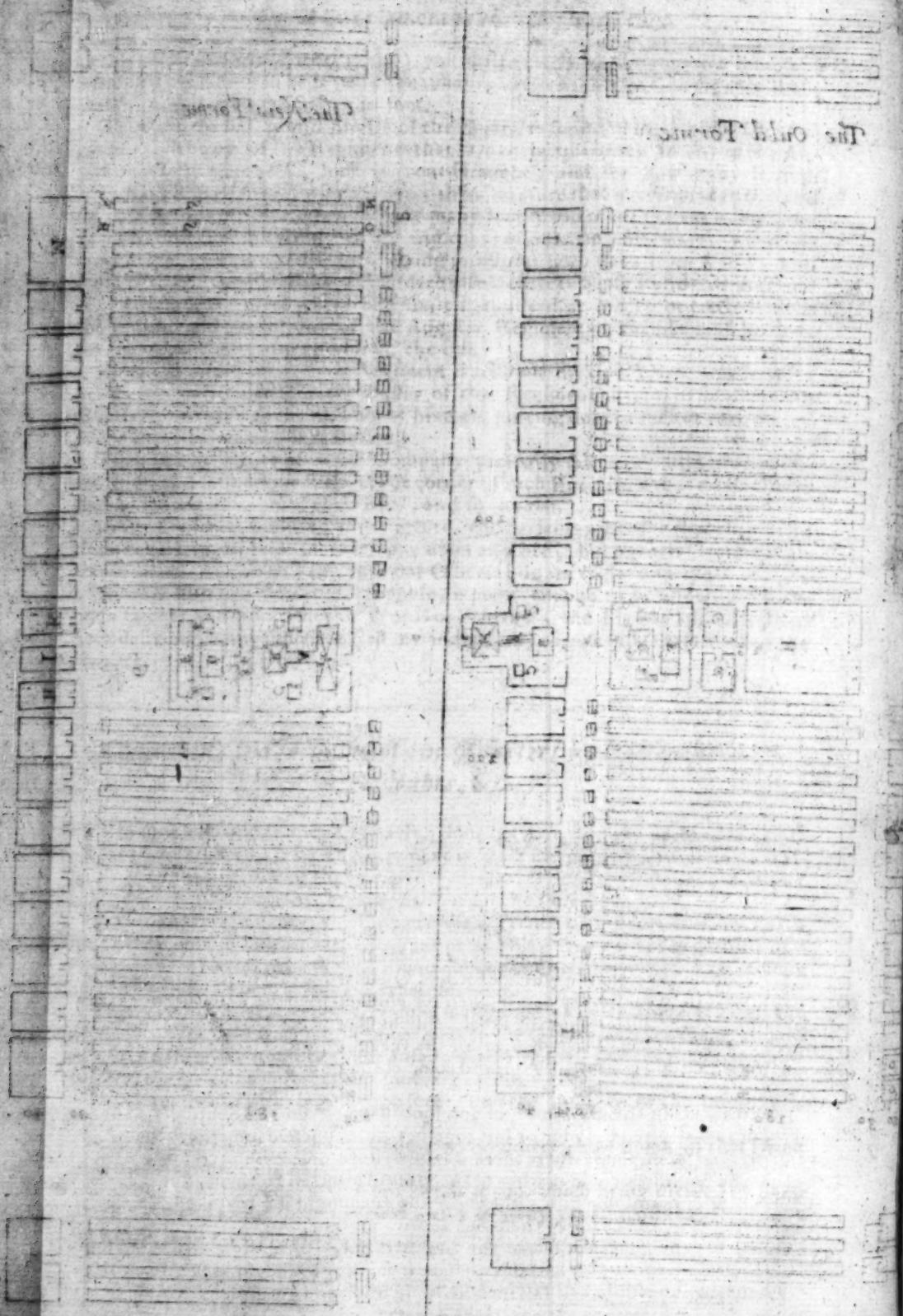
The

The Ould Forme.



The New Forme





The Description of the foregoing Figures.

The old manner of Quartering a Regiment.

A Colonels Tent and Gallery.
B Colonels Pavilion.
C Two Huts for his servants.
D His Kitchin.
E Two Huts for Buttery and Pantry.
F His Stable.
G Quarter-master and Ministers lodgings.
H Places for the Waggons of the Regiment.
I Captains lodging.
K Place for Pikes.
L Place for Muskets.
M Lieutenants lodging.
N Enfigns lodging.
O Servants lodging.
P Souldiers Huts.
Q Sutlers.
R Place of Arms.
S Entrenchment.

The new form of Quartering a Regiment.

A Colonels Tent and Gallery.
B Colonels Pavilion.
C Two Huts for his servants.
D His Kitchin.
E Two Huts for Buttery and Pantry.
F His Stable.
G Place for Waggons of the Regiment.
H Chirurgeons lodging.
I Ministers lodging.
K Quarter-masters lodging.
L Provosts lodging.
M Captains Huts.
N Lieutenants Huts.
O Enfigns Huts.
P Places for Pikes.
Q Places for Muskets.
R Sergeants Huts.
S Souldiers Huts.
T Sutlers Huts.
V Place of Arms.
W Entrenchment.

THe reasons that moved the Prince of *Orange* to remove the Captains from the Front, and place them as they are lodged in this last Quarter in the Reer, I take to be three; First, because the Souldiers upon any sudden occasion, could not readily draw out into the Alarm-place, by reason of the narrow Streets between the Captains Huts. Secondly, because the Colours and Arms lay hid by the Captains Huts, which now stand open in the eye of the Alarm-place, and make a handsome shew, being likewise readier for the Souldiers to draw out in an instant. Lastly to prevent the many insolencies and disorders committed among the Sutlers, which he presumed the Souldiers durst not do, neer the Sutlers suffer, the Captains being lodged so neer them.

You may observe, that in this last form of Quartering, there are 20 foot of the 200 allowed the Souldiers in depth taken off, and added to the Street between the Captains and the Sutlers; for the Street being in the former Quarter but 20 foot broad, was found to be too narrow for the Waggons and Carriages to pass to and fro, which did continually go and come through it with Provisions for the Army.

And whereas in the allowance of 200 foot in depth for the Souldiers, there were but two allotted to lodge or hut together, it happened sometimes that they came to quarter in places where there was small store of Provision to hut withal; so that the Souldiers could neither fit the ground allotted to them, nor make any uniform or handsome huts; therefore it was thought fit to take from them the said 20 foot, and to allow them but 180.

Note, that the Officers must see the Souldiers build formally, and that they make their Beds a foot and half or two foot from the ground, to prevent sickness, which they will be subject to fall into by lying upon the ground.

Note, that when the Regiment is quartered in one Division, the Colonels Company quarters on the right hand, the Lieutenant-Colonels on the left, the Sergeant-Majors next the Colonel, the eldest Captain next him, and so all the rest of the Captains by seniority in order from the right hand.

But if the Regiment be quartered in two Divisions, then the Lieutenant-Colonels Company quarters on the right hand of the second Division, & the Sergeant-Majors in his place, on the left hand of the first, the eldest Captain next the Colonel; the second on the left hand of the second Division, the third next the eldest, the fourth next the Lieutenant-Colonel, the fifth next the third, the sixth next the fourth in the second Division, and so all the rest of the Captains according to this Order: Observing (if it may be) that the youngest Captain be always placed next to him that closeth the left flank of the second Division.

Quartering of Horse.

THe Horse (unless pressed by an Enemy) are always or most commonly quartered in Houses, both for the commodity of Forrage, and that their Horses may stand under covert; which otherwise, by standing three or four nights in rain and cold, would be in danger to be spoiled and made unserviceable.

So careful (saith *Muller*) was the Duke of *Alva* of his Horse, that he not only quartered them in Houses, but made Courts of Guard upon the Avenues and places where they watched, to shelter them from the weather. But seeing they may be sometimes forced to make Huts, I will shew you their manner of Quartering, which is the same as the Foot, but that they have more ground allowed them, especially in bredth: for their main streets are twenty foot broad, and the men have ten foot allowed them; whereas the Foot have but eight foot for either Hut: their Horses are allowed ten foot in bredth, and four in depth: so the ground allowed for 100 Horse, is 300 foot in depth, and 70 in bredth.

The Explanation of the following Figure.

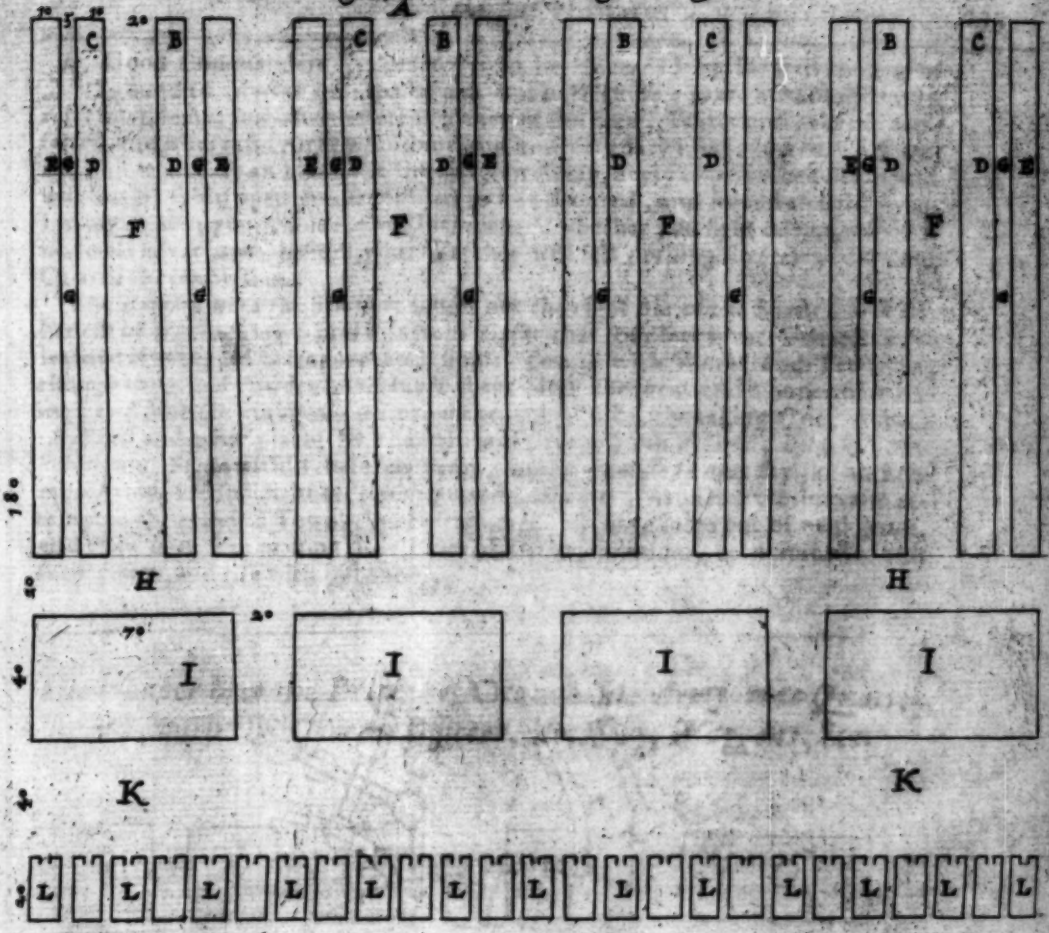
The Quartering of four Troops of Horse.

A Alarm-place.
B Lieutenants lodging.
C Cornets lodging.
D Souldiers Huts.
E Stables.
F Street between the Souldiers Huts.
G Street between the Souldiers and Horses.
H Street between the Captain and Souldiers.
K Captains.
L Street between Captain and Sutlers.
E Sutlers.

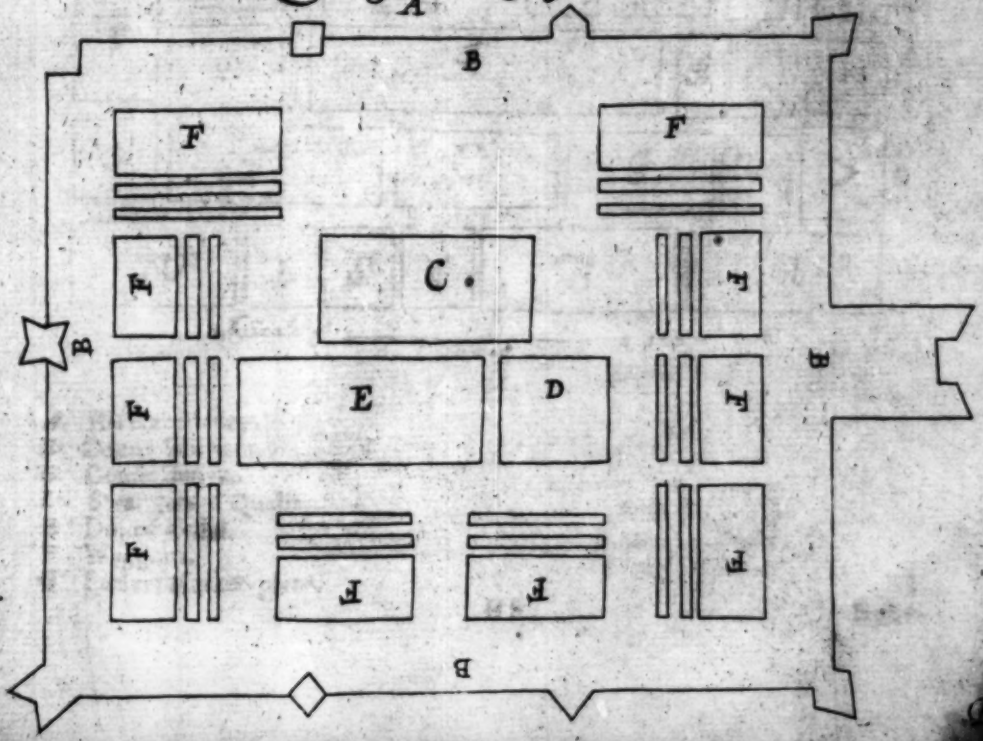
The Quartering of an Army of Foot.

A Alarm-place.
B Entrenchment.
C Generals Pavilions.
D General of the Ordnance his lodging.
E Ammunition and Ordnance.
F Divisions of Foot.

The Quartering of foure Cornets of Horse.



The Quartering of an Army of Foote.



A Good Commanders Judgment is to be discerned by his well chusing of ground to quarter on; for he must not only chuse a place advantageous to resist an Enemy, but where there is plenty of Forrage, Water and other Necessaries, and where the Air is wholsome; and how necessary it is to intrench a Quarter, and what ease and safety it brings to an Army, dayly experience tells us; and whereas by lying open you are subject to be affronted, and forced to fight by an Enemy, it is in your choice being Intrenched, whether you fight or not, which is no small advantage; besides, your Watches will fall nothing so often, nor your Guards so troublesome.

The *Romans* were the first that found out the right use of the Spade, and the benefit of Intrenching; and it is from *Cæsar* that our late great Generals have learned the way to Beleaguer and single Towns with Works and Trenches, though the use of Powder have made them alter the form and manner of working; and how advantageous it its to make such Works, the taking (not to speak of *Alexia* and other places by the Prince of *Orange*) but of *Grol*, *Bolduke*, *Maestricht*, and *Breda* within these few years, in the view, as I may say, of an Enemies Army, are sufficient testimonies: And as divers Armies have in vain attempted the relief of Towns thus beleaguered, so have some out of negligence, and want of care in making their Lines of circumvallation, been forced to quit their design, and rise with dishonour.

The manner how the Prince of Orange *his Army was Quartered, with the General Officers, Artillery, Waggons, &c.*

A His Excellency.
B Count William.
C Count Henry.
D Strangers of Quality.
E Du. of Kessel.
F Waggons.
G Sutlers Market-place.

H	Ryhoven	3	Troops of Horse.
R	John Bax	3	
S	Wagtemeins	3	
T	La. Salle	3	
Y	Stobenbrook	4	
Z	Co. John	3	
Δ	Marquette	3	
Θ	M. Bax	4	
•	Count Henry	3	
Π	Guedent	4	
Ω	Quaet	3	
Σ	Snelling	3	
Ι	Dragoons.		
K	Count Ernest	6	Dutch Companies.
Λ	8 Companies of Frisons.		
Ο	Rob. Hinderson	19	Scotch Companies.
W	Count John Ernest	16	Companies of Wallons.
P	Beghuio	19	French Companies.
Q	Chastillon	19	
L	Hollis	10	English Companies.
M.	Cheek	10	
N.	Cecil	10	
V.	Horatio Vere	15	

Orders to be given out in a Quarter.

1 NO man without leave of his Officer shall go further then Cannon-shot out of the *Quarter*, or lie in the night out of the *Quarter*, upon pain of the Strappado; and if he have done any man hurt, he shall be hanged without mercy.

2. No man shall do hurt to such as are under Neutrality or Safe-guard, upon pain of bodily punishment.

3. No man shall fight within the *Quarter*, draw his Sword, or make any uproar in the night, upon the like pain.

4. No man shall molest any Sutler, or such as bring Provision into the Leaguer, spoil or take any of their Goods from them within or without the Leaguer, upon the like pain.

5. No man shall sell any Booty or Goods in the Leaguer without sound of Drum, and by consent of the Fiscal, and knowledge of the Marshal-General, upon forfeit of the Goods, the one half to the poor, the other to the Marshal.

6. No man shall buy any Goods without sound of Drum, as also notice to be given to the Marshal, upon forfeit of the Goods, and six Gilders in money.

7. No Sutler, Sayler, or any other person, shall buy any Iron, Metal, or any other thing belonging to Bells, Arms, Bullets, Powder, or any thing belonging to Ammunition, or any other forbidden Wares, or take any such thing to pawn, upon forfeit of the same, and also to be openly whipped.

8. No man shall make any Arrest, or go to Law upon any old Action or Debt made before or without the Leaguer.

9. All Prisoners, as well of our own men, as of the Enemy, whether deserving bodily punishment, or otherwise, are to be delivered to the Marshal-General, with true notice of their offences and accusations.

10. All Marshals of Regiments, Admiralty, Artillery, Guards, or others, shall stand under the Marshal-General.

11 No man ſhall ſet any price upon Victuals, or any Leaguer-proviſion within the Leaguer, without the conſent of the Marſhal-General, upon pain of being ſeverely puniſhed.

12. No man ſhall abuſe the Marſhal-General or his ſervants by word or deed, or offer them any violence, upon pain to be hanged without mercy.

13. No man ſhall Suttle in the Leaguer before he hath given up his name to the General of the Victuals and Proviſion, and alſo to the Marſhal, upon pain of ſix guilders.

14. All Sutlers that come into the Leaguer ſhall give notice to the General of the Victuals, or to his Commiſſary, of their Wares; and muſt not Suttle without his Commiſſion upon the like pain.

15. No Sutler ſhall ſet up his Cabbin in any other place then where is appointed by the Marſhal, upon the like pain.

16. No Sutler ſhall buy any Proviſion within the Leaguer, until it be brought to the place appointed for Market, and there prized and taxed, upon forfeiture of half the goods ſo bought or ſold, to the uſe of the Poor and Marſhal aforeſaid.

17. No Sutler ſhall uſe any Weights or Meaſures, but ſuch as are ordained them by the Marſhal-General, upon pain of ſix guilders; and thoſe that are found to uſe falſe Weights or Meaſures, ſhall forfeit their goods, the one half to the poor in general, the other to the poor of the Regiment, and alſo to be ſeverely puniſhed.

18. No Sutler ſhall tap Beer or Wine in the morning before the Sun riſe, or at night after the Warning-Piece goes off, upon pain of forfeiting for every offence three guilders.

19. No man ſhall kill any meat within the Leaguer, but ſhall carry all garbage, and filth thereof without the Leaguer, and there bury it, upon pain of forfeiting of ſix guilders for every default.

20. No man ſhall do his eaſment within the Quarter, but in the place appointed, (which muſt be 100 foot without the Intrenchment, and be marked out by the Marſhals of every Regiment) upon forfeiture of his upper garment.

Orders for Watching.

A Company having the Watch at an Avenue or Trench, the Souldiers ſhall place their Pikes in Battalia a little diſtance from the Parapet, and their Muskets in order upon the Parapet.

No Captain, Officer, or Souldier whatſoever, ſhall abſent himſelf being in health from his Watch.

No Souldier ſhall be ſuffered to hire his duty, or to put one of his fellows to ſtand ſentinel for him: if he do, he is to be puniſhed without favour.

Every Sentinel ſhall ſtand full armed, and not ſtir from his ſtation until his Corporal relieve him, upon the like pain.

The Corporals ſhall inſtruct the Sentinels how they muſt behave themſelves, and be careful to ſet them out at ſuch a diſtance, as they may ſee each other.

A Sergeant-Major, or ſome better qualified Officer, ſhall every night go the Round, and ſee the Watches be well ordered, and the Sentinels duly ſet out, and if he find any defect or fault in the Guards, he ſhall acquaint the Sergeant-Major-General with it, that it may be amended.

When the Round comes, an Officer accompanied with ſome Muſketiers ſhall readily give the Word, and not hold the Round long up.

The Corporal in taking the Word ſhall do the ſame.

Note, That ſome are of Opinion, that the Corporal in the Field ought to give the Word to no man, but take it from all that paſs, to prevent the inconvenience that may happen by giving it to an Enemy, which cunning ſecretly, may pretend to have the Round: and I have known that the Prince of *Orange* hath ordained that the grand Round ſhould give the Word to the Officer that had the Watch.

One of the chief Officers of the Company or Troop ſhall continually keep waking and ſtirring, to keep the men by their Arms; and there muſt be never leſs then the third part of the Company or Troop afoot, to be ready upon all occaſions.

The Officers muſt have a care and ſee that the Sentinels be well and orderly placed, and muſt go themſelves, and often ſend to viſit them.

The Officers muſt be careful to keep all their men upon the Guard, and to puniſh ſuch as go off without leave.

Imbatteling.

OUr modern Warrs ſeldome bring Controverſies to the trial of Battle, for men now make War rather like Foxes then Lyons; yet *Germany* hath of late given us ſome Examples; and neceſſary it is to know in what order an Army may beſt receive, or charge an Enemy. To give you therefore ſome ſatisfaction therein, I will let you ſee divers forms of Imbatteling Foot and Horſe apart and together, as they have been ordered by the Princes of *Orange* and others, whereby you may learn how to range Troops when occaſion doth require. But I beleeve it will not be impertinent firſt to give you ſome obſervations conſiderable before, and when you come to fight; as alſo to ſpeak a little of a Chaſe and Retreat.

Obſervations.

IF you be upon Defence, venture not your Game at a caſt; your Enemy can looſe but his Army, you may looſe your Countrey: have a care that you be not forced to fight: hinder him of Proviſion, by cutting off his Convoys, or burning all before him, that he may gather none in the Countrey; uſe ſome means to call him home by diverſion, or wait upon him in places of advantage, as Straits and narrow Paſſages, when he muſt march in ſmall Diviſions, and draw his Troops into ſuch a length that they cannot eaſily ſuccour each other; then finding opportunity, attach him reſolutely; ſo ſhall you be ſure, if he be not a vigilant and expert Captain to do him an affront. Many Examples there are in Hiſtory, of men that periſhed by preſſing an invading Enemy to fight: the Battails of *Creſſy*, *Poitiers*, and others, are fair warnings to perſwade men not to preſume, or wilfully to hazard all in one day. Had the Cardinal *Infanta* fought with the Prince of *Orange* and the *French* when they were in little *Brabant*, without doubt he had loſt his Country. In a word, if you fight, you ſet your fortune upon the Dice; if you husband your buſineſs warily, the ſtorm will over.

If you be an undertaker, the ſooner you bring your Cauſe to trial, the better you are like to ſpeed; delays are dangerous: for change of Air, Diet, and other inconveniencies, may breed ſickneſs and divers ill humors in your Army: and if your Enemy will not fight, but make a *Fabian* or lingring War, he may put you to your ſhifts; therfore firſt acquaint your ſelf with the ſtrength and quality of your Enemies forces, with the ſtate of his Country, with his own diſpoſition, and the diſpoſition of thoſe that are neereſt about him; and before you declare your ſelf, gain ſome of his great men (if it be poſſible) to take your part: maintain good Spies in his Court.

Foreceaſt all that can further or hinder your deſign, before you undertake it; and let your Cauſe be juſt, leſt you draw the vengeance of God and jealouſie of other Princes upon you. In your preparation, let your firſt care be of the belly: want of Victuals hath been the loſs of many a brave deſign, and the ruine of great Armies. Let your men be well trained, and ſuch as have been uſed to exerciſe and labour (if you can) let them be all of your own Subjects: provide plenty of materials and other neceſſaries for your deſign, and uſe the means to begin your War with ſome notable loſs to your Enemy; ſo ſhall you terrify him, and diſcourage his Allyes and friends from giving him aſſiſtance.

When

When you come to fight, chuſe ground (as neer as you can) to fight upon proper for the number and quality of your men: if you be ſtrong in Horſe, chuſe champion; if your ſtrength be on foot, and that you want Horſe, chuſe uneven, bushy, or incloſed ground, and place ſome Muskettiers in the diſtances between thoſe Troops you have, which may advance, and give fire upon the Enemies Horſe: if they offer to charge, cover one of your Flanks if you can with ſome River, Moraſs, or Wood. Make your Front ſo large, that your Enemy may not be able with his Wings to charge you in Flank. Let your Battalions be ſmall, as of five or ſix hundred at the moſt, which may nimbly move, charge, retire, or ſuccour each other at their pleaſures; for great Bodies are unweildy, and being forced to move, cannot keep their order unleſs the ground be very even; for upon uneven ground, they will either fall foul, or be forced to open; and if an Enemy can then make uſe of his advantage, and charge, they are eaſily broken, and being broken are irrecoverable; whereas ſmall Troops, although they break, may under the favour and ſuccour of their ſeconds, put themſelves again in order, and be able to do good ſervice. Uſe means to draw your Enemy off the ground he hath choſen to ſtand upon; it may to your advange, perhaps bring ſome diſorder in his Troops. Be ſure to have ſtore of Seconds, and always keep ſome Troops in reſerve: rather give, then attend the charge; it will encourage your own men, and diſhearten the Enemy. Charge on that hand you think your ſelf the ſtrongeſt. Let the diſtances between the Battalions, as alſo between the *Terria*'s of your Army, be carefully kept; and get the advantage of Sun and Wind if you can.

Of a Chaſe.

IF your Enemy turn his back and fly, let the third part of your Van-guard, Battail, and Reer, as alſo a third part of both the Wings of Horſe, be appointed for the Chaſe; and let one third part of them ſo appointed chaſe the Enemy disbanded; the reſt following in their order to ſuccour the disbanded Troops, if the Enemy ſhould turn head and make reſiſtance: and let the other two thirds of the Army leiſurely advance in good order to countenance the Troops in Chaſe if occaſion ſhould require. When you would have the Chaſers retire, let the Drums and Trumpets of thoſe Chaſers that keep their order, ſound the Retreat, that the disbanded Chaſers may know where to find their Troops: and if it be night, let the Drums and Trumpets of the reſt of the Army likewiſe ſound. And let there be fires made in divers places in the Army, whereby all the Chaſers may the better find the way to their Quarter.

Of a Retreat.

TO make a good Retreat, is one of the Maſter-pieces of a General; nor is it diſhonorable for him to take the advantage of any time that he finds uſeful for the ſafety of his Army, and good of the Cauſe; although ſome young Souldiers (more hardy then wiſe) think it a diſparagement to retire in the night: but he that will not retire in the night, when reaſon and the benefit of his party doth require, may ſtay and be beaten in the day. Many Examples there are in Hiſtories, of Armies that have been loſt by ſuch gallantry, and their party thereby ruined. There is no experienced General ſo indiſcreet or ill adviſed, as to follow a retiring Enemy with his Groſs in the night, eſpecially if he find him retire in good order; for ſo he may be drawn into Ambuſcadoes, or his enemy may wait for him in places of advantage, and do him an affront, and what knows he when he finds the Retreat made orderly, but his Enemy ſeeks to draw him out purpoſely to intrap him? by this means the party retiring may before day get into a place of ſafety; whereas if he retire by day, his Enemy may ſafely follow him with his whole Army, and paſs upon all advantages, whereof he ſhall find plenty in a well-ordered Army, if he know how to make uſe of them, and take his opportunity. I there-

therefore conclude, that to retire by night, without ſound of Drum, with matches covered, or to uſe any other ſecret way to avoid an Enemy when occaſion doth require, is not diſhonorable, but the duty of a good Captain.

The Order that the Prince of Orange *retired in from* Gelders.

FIrſt, He poſſeſſed a high piece of Gronnd that lay half-way between *Gelders* and *Rhineberk*, to which Town he was reſolved to March; and lodged there 2000 men well intrenched, with ſome pieces of Ordnance: then he made ready three ways for the *Tertia*'s of the Army to march in Front: before the Troops began to march; he ſent away the Baggage and great Ordnance, with ſome part of the Ammunition. An hour before day, or thereabouts, he gave Order that the Army ſhould march, and the three *Tertia*'s drew out of the Quarter, without ſound of Drum, and marched in even Front, about 200 paces diſtant from each other, until they came an Engliſh mile or more from the Quarter; and then Command was given that the Drums ſhould beat. In the Reer of each *Tertia* came ten or twelve Field-pieces, with Ammunition and all other neceſſaries belonging to them. On either Flank marched fixteen Troops of Horſe; and after the Foot, at a large diſtance came the reſt of the Horſe. In this Order did he march from thence to *Rhineberk*, without the ſight of an Enemy, although the Cardinal *Infanta* were lodged within an Engliſh mile or little more of his *Quarter*.

MILITARY-

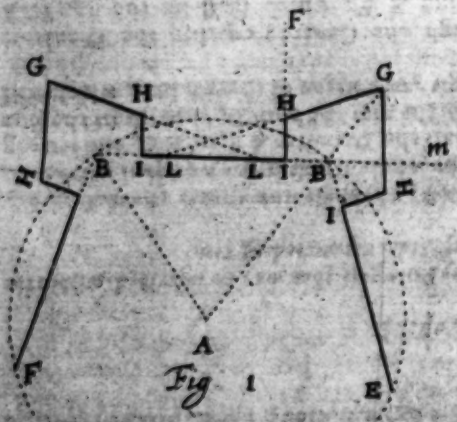


Fig 1

The names of all the severall lines contained in the table pag: 2.
A B. the Semidiameter
B B the Polygon interior
B I the neck or gorge
I H the 1. wing
I L the 2. wing
G H F The angle made between the wing and the face
I B I The angle of the Polygon
H G H the angle of the Bastion
B A B the angle at the center equall to the angle H B I made by the two Polygons
G B H The angle between the capitall line and the Polygon.

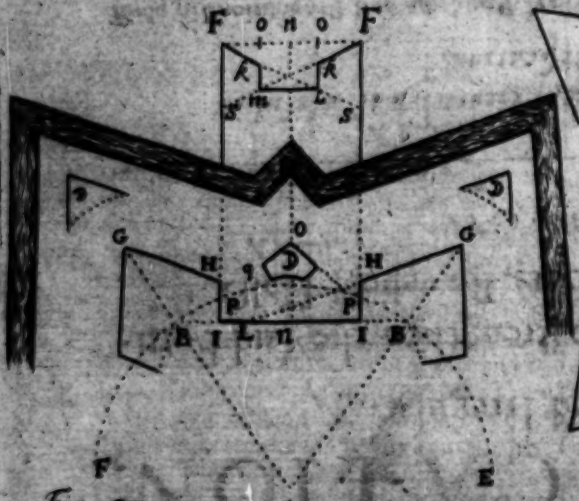


Fig 2

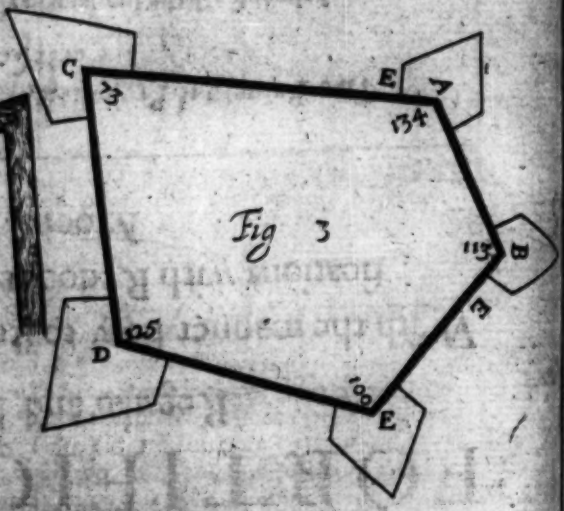


Fig 3

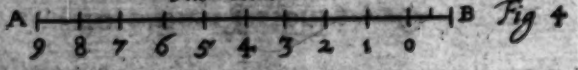
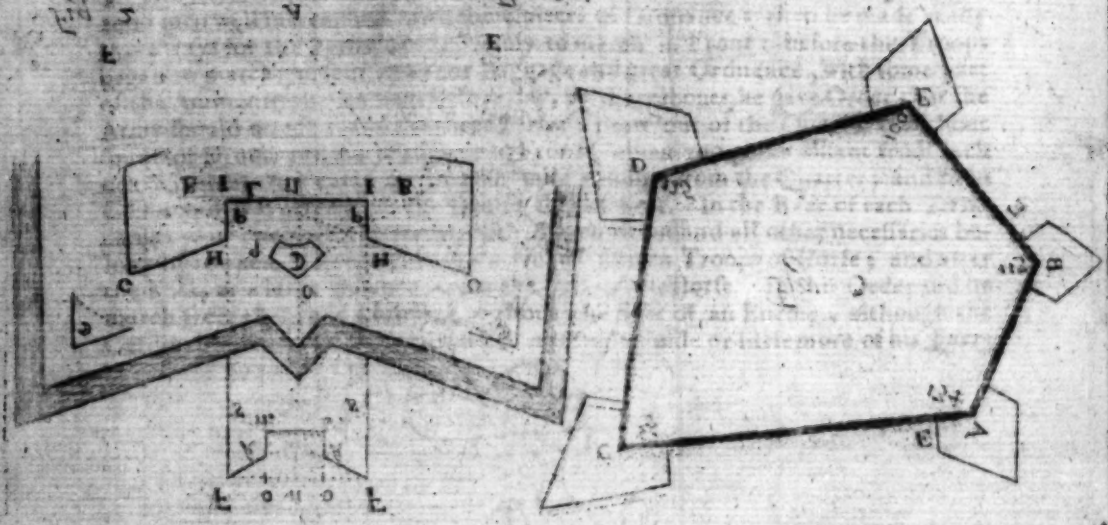


Fig 4

Place this between Pag 238 and 239.



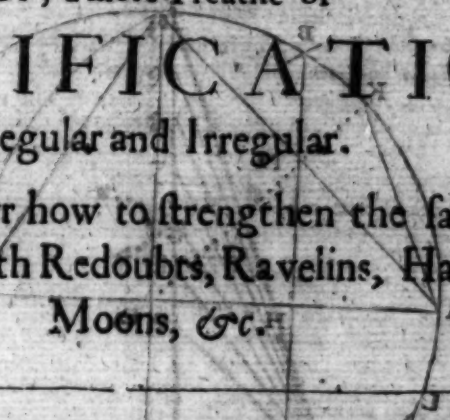
MILITARY ARCHITECT:

Or, a short Treatise of

FORTIFICATION,

Regular and Irregular.

With the manner how to strengthen the said Fortifications with Redoubts, Ravelins, Half-Moons, &c.



Two Principal Propositions Geometrical, useful in Fortification.

ALthough all the fundamental Problems and Propositions in plain Geometry are necessary and useful for an *Enginier*, especially to raise and let fall *Perpendiculars*, draw *Parallels*, divide *Lines* into equal parts, and other proportional parts required to make *Angles* of any quantity, and also to divide them; these are absolutely necessary, for without most of them, few others can be resolved: wherefore supposing him to be so much a Geometrician, I will proceed to these two, necessary in this Art.

Prop. I.

A Circle being given, to find the side of any Polygon *that may be inscribed within the same Circle, the number of Sides not exceeding ten.*

Let the given Circle be *A B C G*. First, through the Centre thereof at *E*, draw the *Diameter A E C*, dividing the whole Circle into two equal parts.

Secondly, Take in your Compasses half the *Diameter A E*, or *E C*, and setting one foot in *A*, with the other foot make the marks *B* and *D*, and draw the line *B D*, which shall be the side of a *Triangle*, or Polygon of three sides, which will be inscribed in that Circle.

Thirdly, Draw the Line *F G* through the Centre, cutting the Diameter *A G* at right Angles. Then draw the line *A F*, which shall be the side of a *Square* or *Polygon* of four sides.

Fourthly, Set one foot of your Compasses in *A*, and extend the other to *F*, drawing the Arch-line *F I*; then draw the right line *F I*, and it shall be the side of a *Pentagon*, or *Polygon* of five sides; these will be inscribed within the given Circle.

Fifth-

Fifthly, Half the Diameter, as *E A*, *E F*, *E C*, or *E G*, are either of them the side of an *Hexagon*, or *Polygon* of six sides.

Sixthly, Half the line *B D*, viz. *H B*, or *H D* is the side of an *Heptagon*, or *Polygon* of seven sides.

Seventhly, Divide the Line *A F* into two equal parts in *M*, and draw the Line *E M K*, cutting the Peripherie of the Circle in *K*. So shall the Line *A K* be the side of an *Octagon*, or *Polygon* of eight sides.

Eighthly, Divide that part of the peripherie of the Circle *D A B* into three equal parts, one third part will reach from *D* to *L*; then draw the Line *D L*, and it shall be the side of a *Nonagon*, or *Polygon* of nine sides.

Ninthly, The Line *E I* is the side of a *Decagon*, or *Polygon* of ten sides, which will be inscribed in this Circle.

Prop. II.

To finde out the length of the Semi-diameter of a Circle, that the side of the Polygon *therein inscribed, shall be in length equal to a right Line given.*

Let the given Line be *A B*. First, Take in your Compasses the length thereof, and setting one foot in *B*, with the other make the small arch *C D*; Then set one foot in *A*, and make the other small arch *E F*, cutting the former in *O*.

Secondly, Divide the Line *A B* into two equal parts in *K*, and draw the Line *K O* at length towards *H*.

Thirdly, With the length of the given Line *A B*, set one foot of the Compasses in *O*, and with the other foot draw the Arch-line *A S B*.

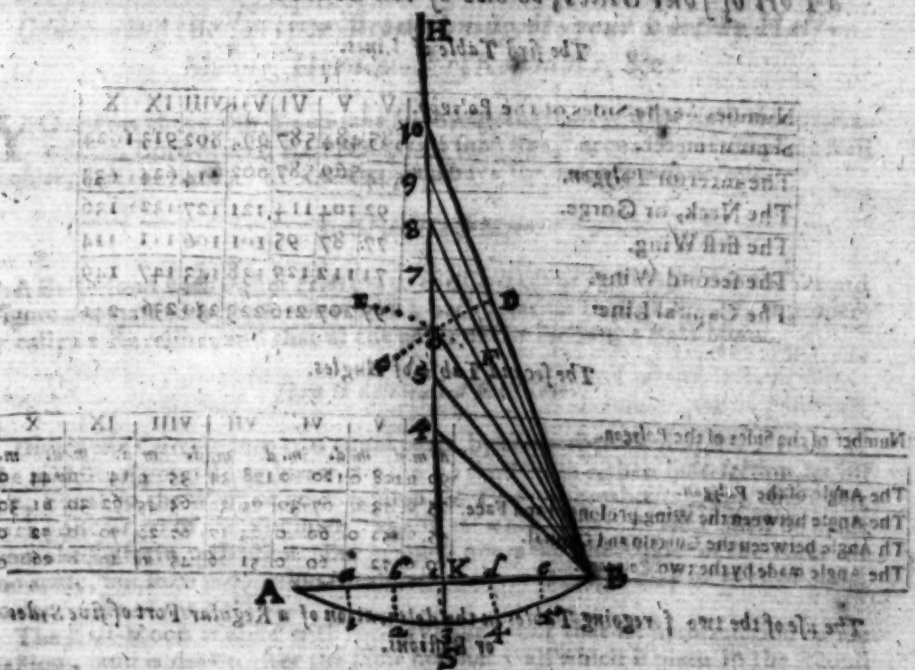
Fourthly, Divide this Arch-line *A S B* into six equal parts, at the points 1, 2, 3, 4, 5. And opening the Compasses from *B* to 1, describe the small Arch 1 *a*; also with the distance *B* 2, describe the Arch 2 *b*, likewise 3 *c*, 4 *d*, and 5 *e*.

Fifthly,

Fifthly, Take with your Compasses the distance from *A* to *a*, and set it upon the Line *H O K*, from *O* to 7, and from *O* to 5.

Sixthly, Take the distance *A b*, and set it from *O* to 4, and from *O* to 8.

Seventhly, Set the distance *A C*, from *O* to 9.



Eighthly, Set the distance *A d* from *O* to 10.

Lastly, Draw the Lines *B* 4, *B* 5, *B* 6, *B* 7, *B* 8, *B* 9, *B* 10, and they shall be the Semi-diameters of so many several Circles, as the given Line *A B* will be inscribed Polygons of 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, and 10 Sides.

If a Circle be described upon the Semi-diameter,	The Line *A B* in that Circle will be the side of
B 4	Square.
B 5	Pentagon.
B 6	Hexagon.
B 7	Heptagon.
B 8	Octogon.
B 9	Nonagon.
B 10	Decagon.

Two useful and necessary Tables, containing the Quantity of all the Lines and Angles in all Regular Fortifications; from a Fort of four Sides, to one of ten Sides.

The first Table of Lines.

Number of the Sides of the *Polygon*.	V	V	VI	VII	VIII	IX	X
Semidiameter.	585	484	587	694	802	913	1024
The interior *Polygon*.	544	569	587	602	614	624	633
The Neck, or Gorge.	92	104	114	121	127	132	136
The first Wing.	77	87	95	101	106	111	114
The second Wing.	71	112	129	138	143	147	149
The Capital Line.	97	207	216	223	230	236	241

The second Table of Angles.

Number of the Sides of the *Polygon*.	V		VI.		VII		VIII		IX		X	
	d.	*m.*	*d.*	*m.*	*d.*	*m.*	*d.*	*m.*	*d.*	*m.*	*d.*	*m.*
The Angle of the *Polygon*.	90	0	108	0	120	0	128	34	135	0	144	0
The Angle between the Wing prolonged and Face.	73	0	73	0	67	30	65	20	63	45	62	30
Th Angle between the Curtain and Capital.	45	0	54	0	60	0	64	17	67	30	70	0
The Angle made by the two Polygons.	90	0	72	0	60	0	51	26	45	0	40	0

The use of the two foregoing Tables in the delineation of a Regular Fort of five Sides or Bastions.

BEing provided of a Scale of equal parts for the setting of your Lines, and likewise of a Line of Chords for the setting of the Angles; both which Scales may be upon one and the same Ruler:

First, Take from your Scale of equal parts 484, which you shall find under *V* in the line of Semi-diameters; and with the length describe the Circle *A F B E*; then take from the same Scale 569, which is under *V* in the Line of the interior *Polygon*, and this will reach in the Circle from *B* to *B*, and will divide it into five equal parts; according to the number of Sides of the Fort.

Secondly, Set off from the Point *B*, *B I*, equal to 104, which shall be the Gorge and Neck: from the point *I* erect two Perpendiculars *I O H*, and *I H* to the line *B B*, making *I H* 87 parts of the Scale, which is in the line under *V*, belonging to the first Wing.

Lastly, Make *B G* 207, which is your Capital Line, and draw *H G*, compleating your Bulwark.

And in this manner may you finish all the several Bastions of this or any other Fort, working according to the Measures belonging to that *Polygon* you are to fortify.

But it may so fall out sometimes, that you cannot readily find the Centre of your Figure, by reason some House or other obstacle may stand in the way, so that you will be troubled to draw the Line *A G*, upon which your Capital line is taken, nor perhaps know what Angle it makes with the *Polygon* interior continued; though in truth that Angle is always equal to half your Angle of Circumference: you may make use of your Table, and find the quantity of the Angle contained between the Wing continued and the Face, namely, the Angle *G H F* in the Figure, which in this Example will be found to be *70 degrees 30 minutes*. This being set off on both sides, you may finish your Bastion without help

help of the Capital Line. This done draw lines parallel to the Face of your Bastion, delineate your Ditch which is to be made round about your fort, as you see in the second Figure, which is the side of a *Pentagon* fortified.

Concerning the farther strengthning of your Fort by Half-Moons, Horn-works, Redoubts, &c.

YOur Fort thus finished, you may farther strengthen it with Half-Moons, Ravelines, Horn-works, Redoubts, and such like, according as the place shall require, and the number of Souldiers you have for defence will permit.

I. *Of the Half-Moon.*

A Half-Moon hath either relation to the Curtain or Bastion, and in the second Figure are marked with ☽; that which hath relation to the Curtain, is properly called a Raveline; and that at the point of the Bastion, a Half-Moon.

How to delineate a Raveline.

Divide the Curtain into two equal parts by the perpendicular *n o*: from *y*, the middle of your Wing, draw *p o*, *p o*; and from *o*, their intersection, set off *n q*, equal to the Wing of your Bastion *H I*, or thereabouts; but this is left to the discretion of the Enginier, as also at what distance they shall be made from the Curtain or Bastion. But he must not make the Angle of the Raveline too acute, but so to proportion the distance, that the Angle may be neer or equal to the Angle of the Bastion.

The Half-Moon is alike with the Raveline, but that it hath relation to the Bastion, and is drawn after the same manner; all which is plain in the second Figure, where the Half-Moons are marked with ☽.

II. *Of the Horn-work.*

The Horn-work is most conveniently defended from the face of your Bastion; which if you intend to do, make *H F* equal, or neer equal to *G L* your line of defence, and draw *F F*, which shall be equal to *I I* your Curtain; and let *M L* the Curtain of your Horn-work be about one third part of *I I*, but somewhat more, *viz.* 130 such parts as your Curtain is 360 or more; if you please to 150; and from *n*, the middle of *F F*, set off *n o*, *n o*, equal to 65 of your Scale, and draw *o m*, *o l*, right Angles at *o*. Then set off the Angles *F K S*, each of them 65 *deg.* as you would have the Angle of your Horn-work contain. Draw the Lines *F S*, and *F S*, and bisect the Angles *S F F*, which shall cut off *F K* equal to *M L*, the Curtain of your Horn-work, of which *k m*, *k l* shall be the Wings.

Of Irregular Fortifications.

TOuching Irregular Fortifications, I can give no new Precept; only in the geueral, it is best, if possible, to reduce them to regular Forms: but if the place will not permit it, take first the Plot of the place, and observe what Angles are made between every two sides thereof.

Then look in the Table, in the cell of the Angles of *Polygons*, and see what *Polygon* the observed Angle comes neerest to, and make that Bastion according to the measures belonging to that *Polygon*, and so of the rest; so shall you have unequal Bastions, but alike defensible. Wherein likewise it is be noted, that if the

two sides of your interior *Polygon* be of unequal length, the Bastion is best framed according to the measures taken upon the shorter side.

Example. Let it be required to draw Bastions to the side of an inordinate *Pentagon*, whose Angles are, as they are marked in the third Figure.

First, I observe 134, the Angle comprehended between two of the sides, comes neerest to the Angle of an *Octagon* in the Cell of the Angles of *Polygons*; I conclude therefore, that Bastion is to be drawn according to the measures belonging to an *Octagon*, taking the measures from the shortest side *A B*.

Now because the measures of the *Polygon* interior belong to an *Octagon*, is 614, you must make a Scale, of which 614 parts shall be equal to *A B*; then set off the Neck or Gorge *A E*, *B E*, 127 such parts, as *A B* is 614; then measure 106 for the Wing. Lastly, because the Center of the Figure is not known, by which the measure of the Capital line should be taken, I take the Angle between the Wing prolonged and the Face, and take off 240 such parts as the Curtain is 360, and so finish the Bastion belonging to the Angle 134

The next Angle 113, which is neerest to a *Hexagon*, therefore that Bastion must be framed from the shorter side, according to the measures of a *Hexagon*; and so must all the Angles be fortified by those measures which come neerest to the Angle comprehended between the sides thereof.

But in all Irregular Fortifications, much is attributed to the judgment of the Enginier, either to increase or diminish the Angles as he finds most convenient, but in such manner as the line of defence may scoure the face of the Bastion, and that one part thereof may defend, and be defended by the other.

It now remains to treat of the manner of making of Ditches about Forts, of the quantity of earth required to make a Fort, with Walls of any determined breadth and height; as also what inclinations they ought to have, both on the inside and the outside; within, of that sloapness, that the Souldiers may (without much difficulty) go up and down; but without, sloaping so little, that they may not be scaled by the Enemy; yet so much, that the foundation may be strong. But this I shall omit for the present, my design not being to write here all necessary to be known in this Art, but only so much as might enable the Ingenious Souldier to be able to fortifie any place in the absence or want of an Enginier.

Some

Some Principles of the

GUNNERS-ART:

Containing ſo much thereof as is abſolutely neceſſary for a compleat Souldier to be acquainted with, and (in caſe of neceſſity) to put in practice.

HE *that will be a compleat Cannonier, muſt have knowledge and skill in the Sciences* Mathematical, *eſpecially in* Arithmetick, *and ſome part of* Geometry; *he muſt be able to* Multiply, Divide, *and work the* Golden Rule *both* Direct *and* Retrograde, *either in* whole Numbers *or* Fractions, *or both. He muſt be ready at the* Extracting *of the* Square *and* Cube Roots, *two of the chief hinges upon which many Queſtions in Gunnery do depend. His skill in* Geometry *muſt be ſo much, as to take all manner of* Heights, Depths, *and* Diſtances, *either* acceſſible *or* inacceſſible, *with many other the like Qualifications.*

But it was not intended to make an abſolute or entire Treatiſe of this Myſterious Art of Gunnery in this place, but to give the curious (and he that deſires to be an accompliſhed) Souldier, ſuch ſatisfaction therein, that in the abſence of the Cannoneer or Gunner, either by ſickneſs, lameneſs, or by being taken away by death, the expert Souldier may take upon him the Command of his Artillery, *to his own Commendations, and for the Honour of the General under whoſe Command ſuch Souldier is.*

In order whereunto, I have laid down ſuch Rules and Directions, that the Souldier may ſafely and commendably attempt the

the management of any Piece of great Artillery againſt his Enemy.

Firſt, I have given you the names of the ſeveral Pieces of Great Artillery now in uſe.

Secondly, Their Diameters, Weights, both of Powder and Shot, their Heights, and Quantity of Powder each of them ſpendeth every Shot.

Thirdly, The proportion of the Carriage to the Gun, and all other its appurtenances.

Fourthly, How to Load his Piece with judgment and ſafety.

Fifthly, How to Diſport his Piece.

Sixthly, To diſcharge his Piece.

Seventhly, To amend his ſecond Shot, his firſt being defective.

Eightly, To ſhoot at his Enemies Quarters in the Night-ſeaſon, and alſo as they paſs by in the Day. With other Warlike Stratagems.

And laſtly, I have declared the making and uſe of the two Deſtroying and Invincible Engines of Fire, the Granado and Petard. The peruſal and practice whereof I leave unto the ingenious Souldier: Bidding him heartily

Farewel.

The names of such Pieces of Artillery as are now most in use.

TO mention the names of Pieces of Artillery particularly relating to several Countreys, would be almost endless; they often changing and giving new names to Pieces upon the least alteration thereof, from some other very neer thereunto. It shall suffice therefore to make mention in this place, only of such as are in use with us, and our neighbouring Nations; and they are chiefly these:

Whole Cannon					
Demi-Cannon	Largest.	Demi-Culvering	Largest.	Minion.	Large.
	Ordinary.		Ordinary.		Ordinary.
			Least size.	Faulcon.	
Culvering	Largest.		Large.	Faulconet.	
	Ordinary.	Saker	Ordinary.	Rabant.	
	Least size.		Least.	Base.	

These are the Pieces which are now most in use, either for Land or Sea-service, the Dimensions and Weight, both of the Pieces themselves, and the appurtenances to them belonging, this following Table doth plainly declare.

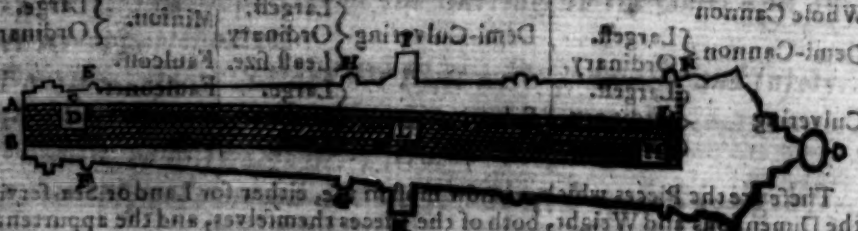
The Names of the Pieces.		Diamet. at the bore in parts.	Weight of the Piece.	Length of the Piece feet. in.	Height of the Shot in parts.	Weight of the Shot lib. ounc.	Weight of Powder lib. ounc.	Length of the Ladle in parts	Breadth of the Ladle in parts
Cannon.		8 0	8000	12 0	7 1/2	58 0	32 8	24 0	24 3/4
Demi-Cannon	Largest.	6 3/4	6000	12 0	6 1/2	36 0	18 0	22 4	12 0
	Ordinary.	6 1/2	5600	10 6	6 1/2	32 0	17 8	22 0	12 0
Culvering	Largest.	5 1/2	4800	10 or 11	5 1/4	20 0	12 8	16 0	10 0
	Ordinary.	5 1/4	4500	12 0	5 0	17 5	11 6	15 0	9 1/2
	Least size.	5 0	4000	12 0	4 3/4	15 fore	10 0	14 1/4	9 0
Demi-Culvering	Largest.	4 3/4	3000	12 or 13	4 1/2	12 11	8 8	13 1/2	8 1/2
	Ordinary	4 1/2	2700	10 0	4 1/4	10 10 1/2	7 4	12 3/4	8 0
	Least size.	4 1/4	2000	9 or 10	4 0	9 0	6 4	12 0	8 0
Saker	Largest.	4 0	1800	9 or 10	3 3/4	7 5	5 0	11 0	7 1/4
	Ordinary.	3 1/2	1500	9 0	3 1/2	6 0	4 0	10 1/2	6 3/4
	Least.	3 1/2	1400	8 0	3 1/4	4 2	3 6	9 1/4	6 1/2
Minion	Large.	3 1/4	1000	8 0	3 0	3 2	3 4	9 0	5 0
	Ordinary.	3 0	750	7 0	2 7/8	3 4	2 8	8 1/2	5 0
Faulcon.		2 3/4	750	7 0	2 5/8	2 8	2 4	8 1/4	4 1/2
Faulconet.		2 1/4	400	6 0	2 1/2	1 5	1 4	7 1/2	0 4
Rabant.		1 1/2	300	5 6	1 3/4	0 8	0 12	4 1/4	2 1/2
Base.		1 1/4	200	4 6	1 1/4	0 5	0 8	4 0	2 0

Having described unto you the Names of all such Pieces of Artillery as are now in use, together with the Quantity of each their Diameters at their Bore in feet and inches; as also their several Weights, their Lengths, the Heights and Weights of their Shots, the Quantity of Powder they spend at each Shot, &c. I shall now proceed to give you the Names and terms of Art belonging to the several parts of any Piece of Ordnance, and also of the Proportion that every Carriage ought to have to the Piece he beareth.

The

The Ichnographical Description and Names belonging to the several parts of a Cannon, or other Piece of Artillery.

Whereas in the following Discourse, there is continual mention made of the several parts of a Piece, which cannot well be defined nor rendred effectual without the Figure thereof represented in Plate; in order whereunto, I have drawn the Figure following, representing the *Ichnography* of a Piece; and to the several parts thereof I have set several letters of the Alphabet directing to the same, by which at one view all will be visible.



A B Represents the *Diameter of the Bore of the Piece*, which is sometimes called *The Diameter of the Concave Cylinder*, sometimes *the Diameter of the Muzzle*, &c.

C D The *Neck*, and *C* the *Frese* of the piece.

E F The *Cornice Ring*.

G H The *Reinforced Ring*.

I and *K* The two *Trunnions* upon which the Piece reseth when it is laid in his Carriage.

L M The *Chamber* of the Piece, which is so much of the *Concave Cylinder*, as contains the *Powder* and *Shot*.

N The *Base Ring*, and also the *Touch-hole*, which must fall just at the end of the *Concave Cylinder*, or *Bore of the Piece*.

O The *Pummel*, sometimes called the *Cascabel*.

A L B M The *Concave Cylinder*.

M O The *Breech of the Piece*.

M N The *thickness of the Metal* at the *Breech*.

The Metal of the Piece which is about the Mouth above *A* and *B*, is called the *Muzzle-Ring*.

Thus much for the Description of the parts of the *Gun*; now for its *Carriage*, &c.

What proportion the several parts of the Carriage ought to bear to the Gun it is to carry, as also of the Rammer, Ladle, Lanade, or Spunge, &c.

Every Carriage ought to be in length once and an half the length of the *Concave Cylinder* of the Piece. The Planks at the fore-end of the Carriage ought to be in depth four Diameters of the Bore of the Piece. At the middle of the Planks, three Diameters and an half; and at the end next the ground, two and an half. And they ought to be in thickness one Diameter.

For the Traverses (or bars of Wood) that joyn these Planks together, the foremost must be three Diameters and an half in length, and must enter one half of a Diameter in length into either of the Cheeks or Planks. That in the middle must

must be four Diameters in length, and entred into the Cheeks as the former. And that at the foot or lower end of the Carriage must be in length five times the Diameter, and entred into the Planks as the former.

The Wheels must be in height one half of the length of the Piece; the Circles must be equal both in breadth and thicknes to one Diameter of the Bore; the Spokes or Arms three times the Diameter. The Cube three Diameters in thickness, and three and an half in length. The Bore of the Cube must be one Diameter, and the length of the Axle-tree eight Diameters and two third parts more.

The Wheels for the Saker and Minnion must be in height the half length of the Piece and a part more. And the Faulcon and Faulconet half the length and a part more.

Of the Ladle.

It is by some taken for a general rule, that the Circumference of a Bullet being divided into five equal parts, that three of those parts must be the breadth of the Ladle.

The bottom of every Ladle must be one Diameter and ½ long, and of such a thickness as may with ease enter into the Bore of the Piece.

Of the Rammer.

The Rammer of every Piece must be made of hard Wood, once and an half the Diameter long; and so thick, as it may with ease enter into the mouth of the Piece. It must be bound at the lower end with a plate of Brass, set on with brass or Copper-nails to strengthen it.

Of the Lanade or Spunge.

The bottome of the Lanade must be one Diameter and ½ parts in length, and ½ parts of a Diameter in thickness, covered with Lambs or Sheeps-skin the Woolside outwards, and made fast to the bottom with small brass Nayls.

The Staff both for the Lanade and Rammer must be one foot longer then the *Cylinder* of the Piece.

To every Piece there must be Corns of several sizes, some great, some small; and also Leavers proportionable to the Piece: the Corns to keep the Piece at any elevation it shall be set to, and the Leavers to move the Piece and Carriage upon the Platform.

Caution.

Before you attempt to charge your Piece, see that the Ground or Platform be level, that the Wheels of your Carriage be of equal height, that the Trunnions of your Gun lie right in the Carriage; If they be not, cause them to be amended, or expect to make no perfect shot.

How to Load any piece of Ordnance both surely and safely.

BEfore you load your Piece, take care to cleanse the Touch-hole, and sweep the Piece clean within with a dry Lanade or Spunge; then (observing the Winde) let your Powder-barrel to windward your Piece, and your Linstock on the contrary. Then filling your Ladle, give it a gentle knock on the foot, that the loose Corns may shake off into the barrel; then put your Ladle into your Piece, and being come to the bottome of the bore, draw it back two fingers breadth, and turn it over; then take it out, and with your Rammer (you

 hand-

standing on the right side of your Piece) ram the Powder close into the Chamber of the Piece, another (in the place of One) holding the Finger or Thumb upon the Touch-hole, that the Powder may not fly out that way: If the Touch-hole be full, it is a sure sign that the Powder is well rammed; and if your Piece be to be charged at twice, you must do thus after each Ladle-ful.

Then take a wisp of Hey or Straw, and thrust it hard into the mouth of the Piece after the Powder, that no loose Corns may remain in the empty part of the *Cylinder*, and remain hard home upon the Powder.

Then again, take a dry Lanade, and cleanse the *Cylinder* of the Piece, that nothing be left in the hollow *Cylinder*, to hinder the Bullets way.

Thirdly, make your Bullet very clean, that neither Earth nor Sand hang upon it, and put it gently into your Piece, and after it a wad of Hey or Straw easily rammed.

And here note, that in doing this you must not stand right before the mouth of your Piece, but on one side, for fear of mischances; and having charged your Piece, you must lay your Ladle, Lanade, Scowrer and Rammer on the right side of your Piece, the Ladle and Lanade their heads towards the mouth, and the Rammer and Scowrer towards the Breech of the Piece.

Your Piece being thus charged, direct her to the intended Mark, and then Prime her; in the doing of which, First, with your Priming-iron enter the Touch-hole, and let your Powder come from the Touch-hole to the Base-ring, for there you may fire safely; for if you fire at the Touch-hole, your Linstock may be forced out of your hand: therefore some use to prime their Gun two or three inches forward off the Touch-hole; for if that be large, the more care must be had in firing.

In firing of any Piece, take your Linstock in your right hand, and coming to the side of your Piece, set forward one Leg, keep your Body upright, and your Arm extended at full length; the cole of your Match being cleared, give fire to the Powder, so shall you perform your work both safely and gracefully.

Another way of Loading a Piece of Artillery.

There is another way used to load Guns, which is by Cartredges; these Cartredges are made, either of Canvas or Paper, rowled upon a Former or Rowler, turned something less then the hollow *Cylinder* of your Piece; these being sewed or pasted, and having bottoms put to them, are filled at spare times (in Garrisons or other places) with a due charge of powder belonging to the Piece for which they were made, and are ready whensoever occasion shall require: one of these being put into the mouth of the Piece, together with the Bullet, and well wadded and rammed, with your priming-iron at the Touch-hole, make a hole through the Cartridge, and then having primed it, you may give fire as before.

How to Dispart any Piece of Ordnance.

There are several ways to dispart a piece of Ordnance; I will mention one or two in lieu of all the rest. ——— Now, to Dispart a piece, is, *To bring the Metal of the Muzzle-ring, equal to that of the Base-ring*; or, it is, *To find the difference of the Metal at the Muzzle and the Base-rings*. To effect which, either of these ways will declare.

First, Take a small straight Stick or Wyer, and put it downright into the Touch-hole of your piece, and even with the top of the Metal of the base-ring; this Stick taken out of the Touch-hole, apply to the bottom of the Metal, at the base of the piece, and that part of the Stick or Wyer which stands above the Metal of the Muzzle-ring, is the true Dispart for that piece.

Secondly, Or take with a small silk or thred the Circumference of the Metal

at

at the base-ring; and also with another silk the Circumference of the Metal at the muzzle-ring. divide either of these lengths into 22 equal parts, and from each of them cut off seven parts; half the difference that is between the length of these two strings, is the true Dispart. This way is in it self exact enough; but I prefer the former far before it, both for ease and exactness, if carefully handled.

How to level your Piece to shoot at any Mark within Point-Blank.

YOur Piece lying upon his Carriage well fixed, the Ground or Platform clean and even, and your Gun cleansed, loaded and wadded, as is before directed, and having dispatted the same as was last taught;

Place the dispart upon the top or upper part of the muzzle-ring of your piece perpendicular or upright, fixing it there with wax or the like: then going to the breech of your Gun, cause one of your Matrosses with a leaver to turn the piece towards the mark: then the carriage there standing, cause him to raise the piece or depress it, till with your eye (at about 2 or 3 foot distance from the breech of your piece) you can see the very top or highest part of the Metal of the base-ring, the very top of your dispart, and the mark you are to shoot at, all three in a right line; which when you have found, cause the piece to be kept there by putting a Coyn under it; and when it is coyned, look again, and see if all be as you before left it; if it be not, cause it to be altered: but if it be you may, prime and give fire.

The first Shot being defective, how to amend it in the second.

A Shot is said to be defective, when it is either over, under, or wide of the mark aimed at: to remedy this, you must observe these few Directions following:

First, If your Shot be right to your Mark, but yet over, it is a sign your Dispart is too short, which you may remedy by placing a dispart upon the muzzle-ring of such a length, that looking by the base-ring and the mark the shot last made, you may see the top of the dispart: with this new dispart level your piece to the mark, prime and give fire, and doubtless your shot will prove good.

Secondly, If your Shot be just under the mark, then look how much the dispart is over the Mark of the Shot last made, and cut it so much shorter, that looking at the breech of the Piece, you see the mark of the last Shot, and the top of the dispart in one right line; then by this dispart level your Gun to the Mark, and give fire.

Thirdly, But if your first Shot had been level with, but yet to the right hand of the Mark; to remedy this, stand at the breech of the piece, looking over the dispart at the mark the last Shot made, and upon that part of the base-ring, which you then look over, set up a pin with a little wax; so this pin will be in a right line with the dispart and Mark of the Shot: then level the piece again, by help of this pin and the dispart, to your assigned Mark, and without Question you will make an effectual shot.

Fourthly, But if your shot be both wide, and too high, or too low, then both the former rules must be applied to regulate it, which reason will best direct how to perform.

And here note, that these defective Shots last spoken of, are not, or may not be in the fault of the Gunner; for let him dispart and level his Gun never so well,

he may make a bad Shot; for, 1. The Wind may alter the Range of the bullet. 2. The irregularity or inequality of the thickneſs of the Metal of the piece may much impede. 3. The uneven lying of the piece in the Carriage; and many other reaſons not here to be enumerated.

To make a good Shot in a dark Night at a Mark that hath been ſhewn you in the Day-time.

MOunt, level, and diſpart your piece at the aſſigned Mark in the day-time, according as hath been before directed; the piece thus remaining, from the bottom of the muzzle-ring, let fall a Line with a plummet at the end thereof having a point; and where the point toucheth the platform, there make a Mark, and take alſo the length of that ſtring, or run a pin through the ſtring in that place; do the like by letting fall the ſame line and plummet from the Breech of the piece, and make a Mark upon the platform as before, and the length of the ſtring. Then (though your Gun be moved out of its place, yet) you may in the darkeſt night (by help of a dark Lanthorn) bring your piece to the former poſition; which being primed and fired, will doubtleſs come neer, if not hit the Mark.

How you may ſhoot at your Enemies Lights in his Quarters in a dark Night.

BRing your piece upon your platform to lie right againſt your Enemies Lights; then take two pieces of lighted match, one ſo much longer then the other, as is the true diſpart of the piece you are to ſhoot with; place the longeſt of them upon the muzzle-ring of your piece, and the ſhorter upon the baſe-ring thereof, and there fix them upright with wax; then elevate or depreſs your Gun, till at a diſtance with your Eye, you eſpy both your Matches and the Enemies Lights all in a right line; which done, prime and give fire.

How you may make a Shot at a party of Horſe or Foot, as they paſs by; as alſo at a Ship Sayling up or down a River.

Your piece being charged, let it be laid in the Carriage at little or no elevation, that it may ſhoot about breſt-high; then diſpart it, and direct it againſt ſome Mark that lies juſt in the way they are to paſs: if the ground they are to paſs be higher then your platform, mount your Gun accordingly; if lower, depreſs it; if level, then as before: your Gun thus prepared, in their paſſage you may give fire at pleaſure: and in the ordering of your Gun for this Stratagem, let it (if poſſible) be parallel with the plain of the Horizon, that ſo it may ſhoot ſhort, eſpecially if the place be ſtony; for the grazing of the bullet among the ſtones, may do more execution then the ſhot it ſelf: but above all, have a ſpecial care you ſhoot not wide nor over.

What hath been ſaid concerning an Enemies paſſing by Land, the like may be done by an Enemies Ship ſayling along a River. For, if you plant your Gun, and direct it to ſome mark, as Tree, Beakon, &c. on the other ſide of the Rivery then when the fore-part of the Ship ſhall come between your ſight and the mark you obſerved, immediately give fire.

And thus much for ſhooting in great Artillery.

The

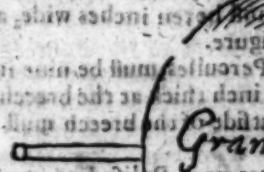
The compoſition, making, and uſe of the two Principal Fire-works belonging to War, *viz.*

THE

GRANADO and PETARD.

I. *Of the Granado.*

OF Granadoes there are ſeveral ſorts; ſome to caſt with mens hands, others to be ſhot out of great Guns, and others ſo large that they require a Mortar-piece on purpoſe for the diſcharging of them.



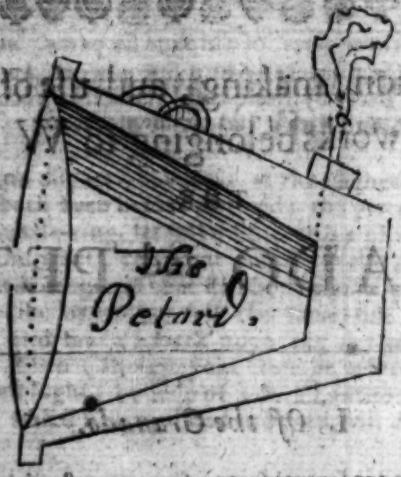
The Shell is made of Copper caſt in form of a Sphere or Globe, allowing half an inch, and ſometimes more (according as the Shell is in bigneſs) for the thickneſs of the Metal, which ought to be caſt very exactly, to be equally thick in all parts. They are to be filled with fine powder; they are to have a pipe ſcrewed into them, which is to be filled with a ſlow compoſition to prime it; the compoſition of which I ſhall ſhew you anon.

These Granadoes are made proportionable to the weight of the bullet belonging to the piece out of which they are to be ſhot; and if they in bigneſs exceed the bore of a Cannon, then they are to be ſhot out of a Mortar-piece.

II. *Of the Petard.*

THeſe Petards are made of Copper and braſs mixed; and their dimenſions are fitted according to the uſe for which they were prepared; there being three

three chief uſes of them, and ſo many ſorts there are, *viz.* Some for blowing up and breaking of bridges. Others, for Gates that have Perculles belonging to them. And the third ſort for ordinary Gates.



1. Thoſe for Bridges are commonly eleven inches long, and at the breech ſeven inches and an half about, and five inches wide within: the Metal at the breech muſt be one inch and a quarter thick, and at the neck half an inch thick, beſides the muzzle-ring. The mouth muſt be ten inches wide, and to the Touch-hole muſt be added a pipe, as in the Figure.

2. The ſecond ſort for Gates with Perculles, muſt be nine inches long, almoſt half an inch thick at the neck, and an inch thick at the breech; the mouth muſt be about ſeven inches wide, and the outſide of the breech muſt be ſix inches wide, and the inſide four inches.

3. The third ſort, which is for Gates and Paliſadoes, muſt be ſeven inches long, one fifth part of an inch thick at the neck, and three quarters of an inch thick at the breech: the mouth muſt be four Inches wide; at the outſide of the breech it muſt be three inches and an half, and at the inſide thereof three inches.

The Charges for theſe Petards are to be of the fineſt powder that can be got, beaten hard into the Petard, yet not to break the Gun; then muſt it be ſtopped cloſe in with a Wooden board of about an Inch thick, juſtly fitted thereunto, with wax melted to ſtop the creviſe about to keep out water. You muſt not charge it up to the top, but leave the breadth of almoſt two inches empty, which muſt be filled up with tow cloſe ſtopped in, and a linnen Cloath bound about the Petards neck to keep it cloſe in.

The Touch-hole muſt be ſtopped with a Cork, and over that a Sear-Cloath to keep it from wet.

The charge for the greater ſort of Petards, is five or ſix pound of powder. Thoſe of the ſecond, from three to four pounds. And for the ſmalleſt, from one pound and an half to one pound.

To

To prime your Petards and Granadoes, use this following Composition.

TAke of fine Powder three parts, of Sulphur six parts, and of Salt-Peter nine parts: beat all of them severally into fine powder, and mix them together, putting to them Oyl of Peter by little and little till it become a paste; dry this leasurely but throughly, and with it lade your pipe.

FINIS.

To prime your Petards and Granadoes, after the following Composition.

TAke of fine Powder three parts, of Sulphur six parts, and of Salt-Peter nine parts: beat all of them severally into fine powder, and mix them together, putting to them Oyl of Peter by little and little till it become a paste; dry this leasurely but throughly, and with it lade your pipe.

The CONTENTS of the Chapters.

The First Book.

Pag.

A Discourse of the Postures, and the handling of Arms. 1

Several reasons why the Pike is the more honorable arms. *ibid.*

The Postures of the Pike. 2

The Postures of the Musket. 3

The postures and charges of the Pike to be performed in a shorter way, all things acted in order, and nothing done twice. 4

The Postures of the Musket collected in a brief way. 5

There is also a conformity of posture with the Musket to those of the Pike, and words of command to be given, as may in many things be received by both arms. *ibid.*

The use of the postures of the Pike. 6

The use of the postures of the Musket, *ibid.*

How a Musketter shall perform the Sentinel-posture. 7

The manner and way to do the Funeral-Posture *ibid.*

The reducement of a Musket from the Funeral-posture. *ibid.*

The Souldiers desire to know every particular place of Dignity, as they stand in rank and file. *ibid.*

Reasons for the places of dignity both in rank and file, for the first four in a file eight deep. 8

Reasons of the place of the second four as they stand in rank and file, the file being eight deep. 9

Other reasons to clear it further to the Souldier. *ibid.*

Reasons given for the last Table of every particular place of Honour and Dignity as they stand. 10

Reasons likewise to be given for the Table 12 abrest, and 12 deep. 11

Brief reasons to be given of the Dignity of the places of a rank ten abrest, and of a file ten deep. *ibid.*

What distance is, and the reasons for the first beginning of the same, with all their several uses. 12

The several sorts of distances which are fit and proper for the Souldier to be exercised in. *ibid.*

Words of command for the opening of ranks and files to all their distances, with their closings again. 13

The use of each particular distance, and at what time to be used. *ibid.*

Directions of the way and manner of drawing up a private Company. 14

Several reasons given for the placing of the Serjeants after this manner. 16

Reasons given for the placing the Serjeants and Drums of lesser Companies. 17

A description of a Body of men throughout, with all their several parts and kinds. 18

Directions to all such as shall desire to exercise a Foot-Company, and admonitions to the Souldiers to be exercised. 20

Of the several kinds of Facings, and their use, with the words of Command to perform the same. 21

The Words of Command for Facings. 23

The varieties of *Doublings*, with their parts and uses. *ib.*

The words of Command for *Intire Doublings* to the *Front*. 24

Divisional *Doublings* to the Front. 26

Intire *Doublings* to the Front by Wheelings. *ibid.*

A divisional *Doubling* to the Front by Wheeling. 27

Pag.

Intire *Doublings* to the right Flank. *ibid.*

Divisional *Doublings* to the right Flank. 30

Intire *Doublings* to the right Flank by Wheeling *ibid.*

A divisional *Doubling* to the right Flank by wheeling 31

Of Inversion and Conversion. 32

The words of Command for Ranks Ranking, and Files ranking to the Front, they being 12 abrest, & 6 deep. 33

Ranks ranking into the Front by Countermarch. 35

Files ranking into the Front by Wheeling. *ibid.*

Ranks ranking, or Files ranking at one and the same time into Front, Reer, and Midst. 36

Of Files ranking into Front, Reer, and Midst. 37

Of Files ranking by Wheeling. *ibid.*

Of Ranks filing, or of Files filing, or of Inversion, with their several sorts and kinds. 38

Ranks wheeling into the Flanks. 40

Of Files filing, or Ranks filing to both Flanks and the Midst at one and the same time. *ibid.*

Of Ranks wheeling to both Flanks 42

Of Ranks wheeling to the midst of Files. *ibid.*

Of Ranks wheeling to both Flanks and into the Midst at one and the same time. *ibid.*

Of Countermarches, with their several sorts. 43

Intire countermarching of Files. 44

Divisional countermarching of Files 45

Intire Countermarches of Ranks. 46

Divisional Countermarches of the right and left half-ranks, 48

Of Wheelings, with their several uses. 49

Intire Wheelings. 50

Divisional Wheelings. *ibid.*

Of Filings either for delight or service, 51

Several brings to be performed with any number of men. 52

The way to make every man in a File six deep, according to succession, a File-leader, by doublings, not using one word of command twice. 56

The way to make every man in a file six deep, File-leader, according to dignity, by a doubling, not using one word of command twice. *ibid.*

The way to make every man in a File eight deep File-leader by succession, and that by doubling, not using one word of command twice. *ibid.*

The way to make every man in a File eight deep, a File-leader according unto dignity by doubling. 57

Figures of Battail to be performed by single Files, with some admonitions to those that shall practise themselves herein. *ibid.*

Military experiment upon a File six deep, branching forth eight several figures of Battail, with their reducement. 58

Words of command to produce the first eight Figures of Battail, with their reducement. 59

Words of command for the second eight Figures of Battail, with their reducement. 60

Words of command for the third eight Figures of Battail, with their reducement. 61

The way to make twelve several Figures of Battail with a File ten deep, with their reducement. 62

Twelve several Figures of Battail with a File twelve deep, with their reducement. 64

The Second Book.

Pag.

Concerning the Artillery and Military Gardens, together with the Private Meetings in and about the City of *London*. 67

The first Exercise of four files six deep. 68

A doubling consisting of 16 in number, every one differing from the other, and not reduced until the last word of Command. *ibid.*

Eight several countermarches, with their reducement. 69

Ten several Wheelings, with their reducement. *ibid.*

Six figures of Battail, with several firings thereunto belonging. 70

The second Exercise with four files six deep. 73

Eighteen several doublings, with their reducements. *ib.*

Twelve several countermarches, with their reducements. 74

Twelve several wheelings, with their reducements. *ib.*

Several plain firings upon this Exercise of 24 men, with figures of Battail belonging to the same. 75

The third Exercise with four files six deep. 79

Thirty several words of Command, of Inversion and Conversion. 80

Next followeth several figures of Battail, with firings upon the same, for the performance whereof 82

The fourth Exercise consisting of four files eight deep. 87

The fifth Exercise with four files eight deep. 93

Thirty several doublings, with their reducement. 94

Plain firings, and figures of Battail. 95

The sixth Exercise with four files eight deep. 99

Thirty doublings by countermarches, with their reducement. *ibid.*

Plain firings, and figures of Battail. 101

The seventh Exercise consisting of 64 men, eight files eight deep. 104

Two and twenty doublings by wheelings, with their reducement. 105

Several firings, and figures of Battail with 64 men. 106

The eighth Exercise consisting of 64 men, eight files eight deep. 110

Several figures of Battail. 112

The ninth Exercise consisting of 64 men, eight files eight deep. 116

Eight several countermarches, with their reducement. 117

Ten several wheelings, with their reducement. *ibid.*

Plain firings, and figures of Battail. 118

The tenth Exercise consisting of 24 files being six deep, according to the first drawing up of a private Company. 122

Eight entire several doublings, with their reducement. *ibid.*

Eight several countermarches, with their reducement. *ibid.*

Eight entire doublings by wheelings, with their reducement. *ibid.*

Plain firings, and figures of Battail. 123

The eleventh Exercise with 24 files six deep. 127

Eight countermarches, with their reducement. *ibid.*

Eight several wheelings with their reducement. 128

Plain firings, and figures of Battail. *ibid.*

The twelfth Exercise consisting of 24 files six deep. 133

A doubling to make every man a File-leader by dignity. *ibid.*

Several wheelings, with their reducements. 134

Plain firings, and figures of Battail. *ibid.*

The Third Book.

Pag.

Concerning the drawing up of Regiments, with their several numbers, forms, manner, and ways. 139

The manner of drawing up a Regiment consisting of six Companies, containing in it a Colonel, a Lieut. Colonel, a Major, and three Captains, every one having 108 men in a Company, and the three Field-officers 144, which makes compleatly up 756 men, whereof two thirds are Musketiers, and one third of Pikes, the Files being six deep. 140

The reasons follow for the placing of the Captains, their Colours, and their Lieutenants, after the manner before set down. 142

More particular reasons for the placing of the Captains and Lieutenants of the first grand Division. *ibid.*

Reasons for the placing of the Officers of the second grand Division. 143

The ordering of a Regiment to the long-march, with the placing of the Officers, and the leading of carriages. 144

The first Exercise of a Regiment in the plainest and easiest way. 146

A second way of Exercising Regiments of the same number of men. 147

Doublings belonging to a Regiment. 149

Four several wheelings, with their Reducement. 150

Countermarches not fit to be used in the exercising of Regiments. *ibid.*

Several firings to be performed upon the former figure, and how to be managed by the several Officers. 152

The manner of drawing up a Regiment consisting of seven Companies, containing in the four Captains, 12 files of Musketiers, and six of Pikes, in each of their particular Companies, and in the three Field-officers 16 files apiece of Musketiers, and eight of Pikes, which amounts to the number of 864 men. 153

The manner of drawing up and placing the Officers of a Regiment consisting of eight Companies, having in it a Col. a Lieut. Col. a Major, and five Captains, their number of men in each Company being equal with the former Regiment, they amount unto 972 men. 158

How to make the figure of a Ring, with its use and service. 160

The manner of drawing up a Regiment consisting of ten Companies, having in it seven Captains, and three Field-Officers, being in each particular Company the former numbers, which in all amount to 1198 men. 162

The manner both of the drawing up, and the order of the Long-march of Col. *Rainsborough* his Regiment, bringing up the Reer of the Foot of the Army under the Command of the Lord General *Fairfax*, at their first marching through the City of *London*, on the seventh of *August* 1647. 164

A third way of drawing up a Regiment of ten Companies, after the manner used amongst the *Swedes*. 165

The way of drawing up a Regiment consisting of 12 Companies, the nine Captains having 18 Files in each Company, and the three Field-officers every one of them 24 files, whereof there are two thirds of Musketiers, and one of Pikes in each particular Company, amounting in all to 1404 men. 168

The manner of drawing up a Regiment according to the *Swedish* Brigade. 169

The manner of drawing up a Brigade or *Tertia*, being a third part of an Army, according to the practise of the *Netherlands*, under the Command of the Prince of *Orange*. 171

How

Pag.

How to draw up an Army of 12 Regiments of Foot and three of Horſe, the Foot amounting unto 11664 men, and the Horſe unto 3000, in all 14664 men. 173

The ſeveral duties belonging to the Foot in a Regiment, as followeth by degrees from a private Souldier unto a Colonel of the ſame: and firſt of a private Souldier, &c. 176

Of Military Watches. 187

The ordering of a private Company unto a Funeral-occaſion. 190

The ordering of a Regiment to a Funeral-occaſion. 192

Laſt of all, the Poſtures of the Musket performed without the Reſt.

The CONTENTS of the SUPPLEMENT.

How the Officers of an Army in general ought to be qualified. 197

Of the General of the Horſe. 198

Of the Lieutenant-General of the Horſe. *ibid.*

Of the Commiſſary-General. 199

Of the Quarter-maſter-General. *ibid.*

Of the Captain. 200

Of the Lieutenant. *ibid.*

Of the Cornet. 201

Of the particular Quarter-maſters. *ibid.*

Of the Corporals. *ibid.*

Of the Trumpetters. 202

Of the Auditor. *ibid.*

Of the Provoſt-Marſhal. *ibid.*

Concerning the Enrolling, Arming, and Exerciſing of the Cavalry. 203

Of the Arming of the Cuiraſſier. *ibid.*

Of the managing of the Horſe and Arms. *ibid.*

Of the Exerciſing of the Cuiraſſier. 204

Of Exerciſing the Harquebuſier and Carbine. 207

Poſtures for the Snaphans-Carbine. *ibid.*

Of Exerciſing the Dragoon. 208

Of Exerciſing the Cavalry in their Motions. *ibid.*

The Marching of an Army. 217

The Order that the Prince of *Orange* marched in to Beſiege *Grel.* 219

How to paſs a Strait. 220

The manner of paſſing a River. *ibid.*

A Liſt of Ammunition and other neceſſaries to march with. 221

A Liſt of Ammunition and Warlike neceſſaries that the Prince of *Orange* takes with him into the Field. 222

What rules are to be obſerved in chuſing Ground to Quarter in. 227

How the Quarter-maſter is to deſign his Quarters when the Ground is choſen. *ibid.*

How the Quarters are to be laid out in the field 228

The ſecuring of Quarters by Entrenchments, Redoubts, &c. 230

Quartering of Horſe. 232

How the Prince of *Orange* his Army was Quartered, with the General Officers, Artillery, Waggons, &c. 233

Orders to be given out in a Quarter. 234

Orders for Watching. 235

Imbatteling. 236

Obſervations. *ibid.*

Of a Chaſe. 237

Of a Retreat. *ibid.*

The Order that the Prince of *Orange* retired in from *Gelders.* 238

A ſhort Treatiſe of Fortification Regular and Irregular, &c. 239

Two principal Propoſitions Geometrical, uſeful in Fortification. *ibid.*

Two uſeful and neceſſary Tables. 242

The ſtrengthning of a Fort by Half-moons, Redoubts, &c. 243

Of the Half-moon. *ibid.*

How to delineate a Raveline. *ibid.*

Of the Horn-work. *ibid.*

Of Irregular Fortifications. *ibid.*

Some Principles of the Gunners art. 245

The names of the Pieces of Artillery moſt in uſe. 247

The Ichnographical Deſcription and names belonging to the ſeveral parts of a Cannon, or other Piece of Artillery. 248

What proportion the Carriage is to bear to the Gun: as alſo of the Rammer, Ladle, Lanade or Spunge, &c. *ibid.*

How to load any Piece of Ordnance both ſurely and ſafely. 249

How to Diſpart any Piece of Ordinance. 250

How to Level a Piece to ſhoot at a Mark within Point-blanck. 251

The firſt Shot being defective, how to mend the ſecond. *ibid.*

To make a ſhot in a dark night at a Mark ſhewn in the day-time. 252

How to ſhoot at the Enemies Lights in a dark night. *ibid.*

How to make a ſhot at a Party of Horſe or Foot as they paſs, or at a Ship ſayling. *ibid.*

The compoſition, making, and uſe of the Granado and Petard. 253

FINIS.